This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

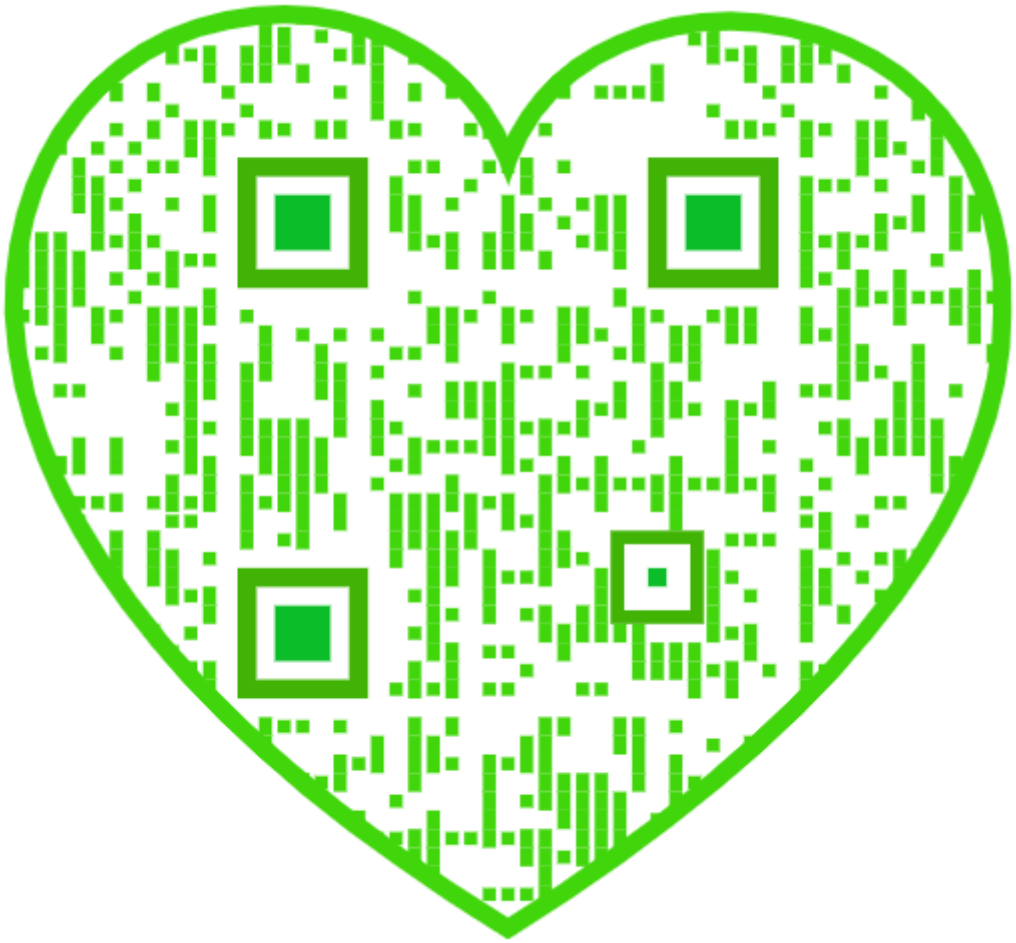
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

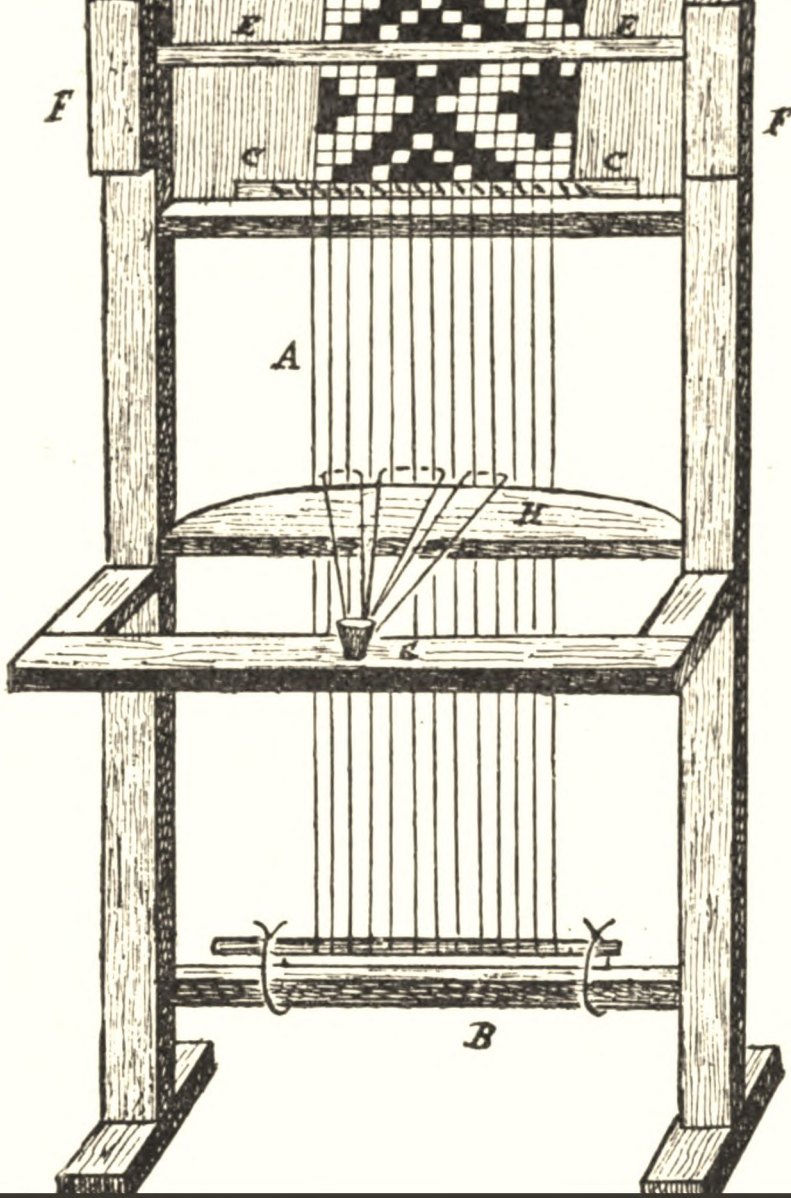
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`





Jacquard weaving and designing

T. F. Bell

Digitized by Google

Harvard College Library

FROM THE
J. HUNTINGTON WOLCOTT
FUND

GIVEN BY ROGER WOLCOTT [CLASS OF 1870] IN MEMORY OF HIS FATHER FOR THE "PURCHASE OF BOOKS OF PERMANENT VALUE, THE PREFERENCE TO BE GIVEN TO WORKS OF HISTORY, POLITICAL ECONOMY AND SOCIOLOGY"

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

JACQUARD

WEAVING AND DESIGNING

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

JACQUARD

WEAVING AND DESIGNING

BY

T. F. BELL

NATIONAL SCHOLAR IN DESIGN (1875-8) AND THIRD GRADE CERTIFICATED ART MASTER, SCIENCE AND ART DEPARTMENT, S. K. : MEDALLIST IN HONOURS AND CERTIFICATED TEACHER IN 'LINEN MANUFACTURING,' AND IN 'WEAVING AND PATTERN DESIGNING,' CITY AND GUILDS OF LONDON INSTITUTE

LONDON

LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

AND NEW YORK : 15 EAST 16th STREET

1895

All rights reserved

Digitized by Google

Tec 1925.95

HARVARD COLLEGE
MAR 9 1926
LIBRARY

Wolcott fund

MICROFILMED
HARVARD

Digitized by Google

PREFACE

THE contents of the following pages have been derived from a long course of art and technical training, together with a lengthened practical experience in textile manufacturing and designing; during which time I received much valuable assistance from many kind friends—especially Mr. B. Ashenhurst, when master of the Belfast Technical School, and his brother, of Bradford; also Mr. John Mitchell, of Belfast and Glasgow—which I thankfully acknowledge.

To supply a treatise that would be alike suitable to the manufacturer, the workman, and the student would be a difficult matter. To explain each point so fully that it would be clear to every person would make it wearisome to those having a knowledge of the subject. I have therefore endeavoured to keep the descriptions as concise as is compatible with a fairly clear explanation, which I hope will be considered the wisest plan to adopt; and, while quite aware of the many shortcomings of the work, I venture to hope that it will prove a valuable assistance to those wishing to improve their knowledge of jacquard weaving and designing.

T. F. BELL.

BELFAST, 1894.

It affords me much satisfaction to add a few words of introduction to this work of my friend Mr. Bell. I cannot pretend to criticise his

Digitized by Google

explanation of technical processes, but, from an examination of the proof-sheets, I am convinced that the book will be found an invaluable aid to students of both art and technical schools. We already possess numerous text-books on designing as an art, as also on the technical processes of weaving, &c., and on the materials of manufacture. Mr. Bell has aimed at bringing the technical and artistic sides of the subject together in a practical form, and has thus provided us with a valuable handbook.

Though we have a Government Department of Science and Art, a knowledge of both branches is seldom united in the same individual. The artist is too often deficient in the science of his craft; while the man of science not unfrequently shows contempt for art. The author of this volume is peculiarly qualified for the task he has set himself, being a practical manufacturer as well as a designer of long experience, and thoroughly learned in the science of his subject. His book will supply a long-felt need.

GEORGE TROWBRIDGE,

Head-Master Government School of Art, Belfast.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	INTRODUCTION	1
II.	JACQUARD MACHINES	27
III.	FULL-HARNESS MOUNTINGS	69
IV.	DESIGNING AND DRAUGHTING	110
V.	CARD-CUTTING AND LACING	139
VI.	SPECIAL JACQUARDS AND HARNESSES	155
VII.	GAUZE	196
VIII.	DOUBLE CLOTH	233
IX.	TAPESTRY AND PILE WORK	255
X.	CARPETS	264
XI.	LAPPETS AND SWIVELS	294
	INDEX	301

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

JACQUARD WEAVING AND DESIGNING

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION

THOUGH the term 'jacquard weaving' is properly applied to work done by the jacquard machine, it will here be taken to apply to all harness weaving, or work that extends beyond the range of shafts, or leaves of heddles.

The question arises, When is the limit to the number of shafts that ought to be used reached? It apparently used to be when no more could be got into the loom, as up to ninety-six shafts were used; and this seems to be quite enough for any weaver to get the yarn through, or for any loom to hold, but it must be remembered that at present the appliances are much more suited to the work than they formerly were; and now, except in woollen or worsted goods, where it is desirable to use shafts on account of their firmness in comparison with that of a harness, from twelve to sixteen shafts are as many as it is generally thought desirable to have in a power loom. I have seen thirty-five shafts, all in one tier or set, working diaper very conveniently in a hand loom, and more than double that number of leaves working worsted in a power loom; but whether the latter was desirable, or not, I must leave to the judgment of the manufacturer who possessed it.

Many ingenious inventions have been made for the purpose of simplifying the working of a large number of shafts, but as a description of them would be out of place here, we may pass on to the draw loom, which appears to be the first form of harness of which we have

Digitized by Google

an accurate description. How the cloths of Babylon were woven, in which

> Men's figured counterfeits so like have been
> That if the party's self had been in place,
> Yet Art would vie with Nature for the grace—

is not known, though in Gilroy's report of Arphaxad's description of his loom to Deioces, king of the Medes, it is stated to have been accomplished by means of carved blocks of wood acting on needles, which wrought the harness or heddles and thus formed the pattern; but as Gilroy has admitted that the introduction to his work on weaving is a pure invention of his own, for the purpose of making it appear that the Ancients were acquainted with motions similar to those on our modern looms, or as a 'take-off on those who angle hourly to surprise, and bait their hooks with prejudice and lies,' we need not dwell further on the subject. In any case, figured cloths must have attained considerable excellence in very early ages. The curtains of the Tabernacle were embroidered with figures, and the veil of the Temple was, according to Josephus, embroidered with all sorts of flowers, and interwoven with various ornamental figures, the door curtain being embroidered with blue and purple and scarlet. The ephod of the High Priest was similarly embroidered.

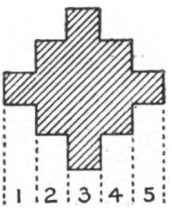


FIG. 1

The Egyptians worked coloured patterns in the loom so rich that they vied with the Babylonian cloths, which were embroidered with the needle. The method of working is unknown, but cloths taken from the tombs in Egypt, which may be seen in South Kensington Museum and in the Gobelins tapestry manufactory, Paris, appear to be made on a principle similar to that of the Gobelins tapestry; the warp is of flax and the weft of coloured wool: and the looms depicted on the catacombs in Egypt are very similar in appearance to tapestry looms.

Embroidering was practised in Egypt prior to the Exodus of the Israelites; and gold and silver threads or wires were used both for embroidering and weaving, being known nearly 4,000 years.

The Babylonish garment taken by Achan, whose sin brought much

Digitized by Google

woe upon the Israelites, is said, by Josephus, to have been a Royal garment woven entirely of gold; but it might only have been embroidered with gold, and was probably wrought in the plain of Shinar, as it was not till long after that Babylon was celebrated for its manufactures.

Pliny says that weaving cloth with gold thread was invented by Attalus, an Asiatic king, and that the Babylonians were most noted for their skill in weaving coloured cloths. This was in Homer's time, about 900 B.C., when weaving and embroidering appear to have attained great excellence, and to have been very gorgeous. At that time the labour of the loom was considered an accomplishment, which ladies and even princesses tried to excel in.

As before stated, the draw loom is the first form of machine for figured weaving of which we have any record. It is not known where it was invented, but it probably passed from China to Western Asia with the silk manufacture. The ancient Egyptians, Greeks, and Romans do not appear to have known it. The Chinese have still in use a draw loom in which the drawboy stands on the top and draws up the parcels of twines which have been previously arranged for him. After being established in Damascus (hence the name damask), the draw loom passed on to Europe, where the Chinese method of working was used till 1604, when M. Simblot, in France, connected to the neck a separate series of cords, called the 'Simple' (perhaps a corruption of his name), so that the drawboy could work when standing at the side of the loom. It is said to have been introduced into England in 1567. The next improvement was to dispense with the drawboy's services, and for this purpose a patent was taken out in 1687, by Joseph Mason, for 'a draw boy engine by which a weaver may performe the whole worke of weaving such stuffe as the greatest weaving trade in Norwich doth now depend upon without the help of a draught boy.' In 1779 William Cheape patented a plan to dispense with the drawboy by having the 'simple' above his head, and drawing it down with knots which were held in notches, as described in Fig. 2.

Before beginning to describe the draw loom it may be better first to describe what it is required to do.

Digitized by Google

Its principal use appears to have been for the weaving of damask, which is one of the simplest forms of figured weaving. Reduce a damask texture to its elementary form, and it consists of twilling, or, more correctly, turned or reversed twilling. If we take a common dice pattern woven with shafts, it will easily be seen that one dice is formed by a warp twill, and the next one by a weft twill, or that the dices are formed by warp and weft twills alternately.

Now, what forms the pattern ? The yarn may be all of one colour, the threads may be so closely set together as to make them individually invisible, or to appear as a plain surface, and yet the dices come out distinctly in two shades of colour. The play of light on the longi-

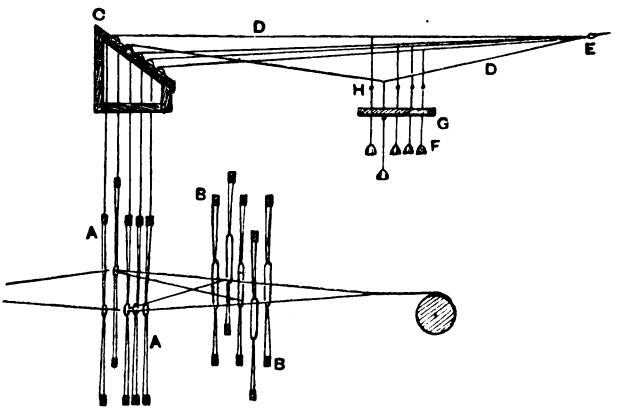


FIG. 2

tudinal and latitudinal threads produces this effect. The dices formed by the latitudinal or horizontal threads will always appear darker than the yarn in the cloth when the latter is placed between the observer and the light, whether these threads be warp or weft, as there is a certain amount of shade on each of them, and of shadow cast by them, whereas the longitudinal or vertical threads are illuminated, without any shade or shadow, and appear lighter than the yarn did before being woven ; and this is the reason why a good side light is the best for showing up the pattern on damask, it developing the above to the utmost. In a good material the difference of shade between the ground and figure is very considerable, but in some thin, coarse goods

Digitized by Google

it is hardly visible, requiring them to be held in a favourable light to show the distinction: the pattern will appear light on a darker ground, or the reverse of this, according as the surface threads forming it run across the light or in the direction of it.

This is the reason of the pattern appearing on the cloth; then it is the business of the designer to regulate what form it is to partake of, by preparing a suitable design; and according to instructions furnished to him by the design, it is the duty of the drawboy to raise the warp by regulating the cording of his harness, and drawing it so as to reverse the twill from a weft one to a warp one wherever the figure is to be formed on the cloth, and to do so in such order as to produce the pattern required.

The draw-loom mounting consists of two parts—the drawboy mounting, or the harness with its tail and simples, to be wrought by the drawboy; and the shaft mounting, which is required to form the texture of the cloth, or to interlace the warp and weft through both ground and figures; the harness only interlaces them at the edges of the pattern, or causes either warp or weft to be above, to form the figure *en bloc*, but without interlacing them together.

It is therefore a 'compound mounting,' and is known as a 'presser' or 'pressure' harness. For simplicity's sake let us suppose the principle of the drawboy to be applied to shafts or healds, and take a simple figure, as Fig. 1.

For it there are 5 parts, or it could be wrought with 5 leaves of heddles with a straight draught. Fig. 2 shows the mounting; A A is the back mounting, which in this case is a shaft mounting, but would be a harness for a more extensive pattern. B, B are the pressure heddles or front mounting. These are 5 in number, as the ground or texture is taken as a 5-end satin or twill. C is the pulley box with the tail cords, D, D, passing over the pulleys, and tied to the wall or to the loom framing as at E. The knobs F hang over the weaver's head, and are attached by cords H, passing through a hole board G, to the tail cords, D, D. There are beads on the cords H, and the holes in the hole board are made thus ⊂⊃; so that when the weaver pulls down a knob the bead can pass through the round hole, and the shaft or

Digitized by Google

shafts of the back mounting attached to it will be raised, and can be kept in this position by drawing the cord into the notch or narrow part of the hole, which the bead will not pass through. Any number of shafts can be raised that are required to form the pattern, either by pulling down the knob for each shaft, or by having the knots corded to the shafts, so that each one will raise the proper number of shafts. Thus, in the figure, each knob is only tied to one of the tail cords; therefore a knob must be pulled down for each leaf of heddles to be raised, but each knob might be attached to any number of the tail cords according to the number of leaves of heddles it is required to raise, so that pulling down each knob in succession will complete the pattern. It might require too many knobs to do this, and then the former method would have to be adopted. When the weaver begins to work he draws the first figure shed with the back mounting by pulling down one or more of the knobs as is required; he then works over the ground treadles, B, B, till a change of pattern is required. Next he releases the drawn shed by pulling the cord out of the notch in the hole board; draws another shed, and works over the ground treadles as before. This gives the principle of how the draw loom works, but the principle of forming the texture with the back and front mountings combined will be fully explained under 'Pressure Harness.'

Fig. 3 gives the draw-loom harness; A, A is the carriage, or the rails that support the harness, which rests on the capes or side rails of the loom. Supported by the carriage is the pulley box P, which is a frame fitted with small pulleys, and must be sloped at such an angle as will allow the tail cords to sink when opening the sheds without obstructing the pulleys underneath them. The neck twines extend from the figures 1 to 8 to the knots above the hole board D D. The cords which connect the neck twines to the mails E, E are called sleepers, and those which connect the mails with the leads F, F are called hangers. The hole board is made of hard wood perforated with holes, which run from front to back in diagonal rows from right to left; it should be a little finer than the set of the reed, to allow for empty holes that are sometimes caused by the tie of the harness ending with broken rows of hooks in some or all of the repeats. In Scotland,

Digitized by Google

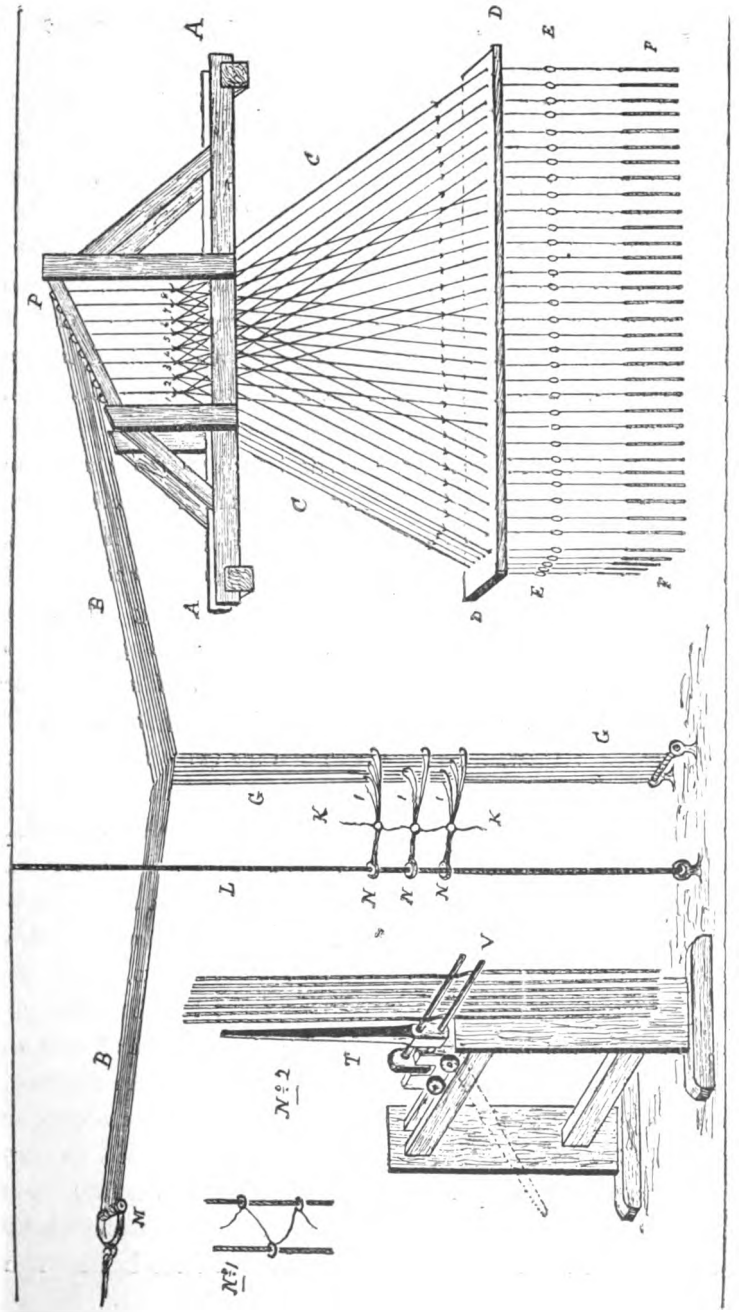


FIG. 3

Digitized by Google

for this reason, when the reed is set on 37 in., the cumber board, or hole board, is set on 36 in.

B, B are the tail cords, attached to the neck of the harness at one end, and at the other end all of them are fastened to the tail stick M, by means of which they are secured to the roof of the house. There must be a tail cord for each part of the harness; here only eight are shown for the front row of the harness, and if there were eights rows of harness in the hole board, 64 tail cords would be required, and the complete harness would be made up of several repetitions of the 64 neck twines; four of these repetitions are here given for the first row of the hole board. Of course there might be 400 to 600 tail cords in a full mounting.

From each tail cord descends a vertical cord to the ground, as shown at G, G. These are the simple cords, which, taken collectively, are termed the 'Simple.' It is on these cords that the pattern is read, or, rather, tied up. The simple cords are gathered together, according to the pattern, by passing twines round them and forming the twines into lashes or leashes, as shown at I, I. Heads of stronger cord, to which the lashes are attached, are shown at N, N. The leashes or lashes are made of cotton yarn No. 48, from six to eighteen plies of which are moderately twisted together so that the twine will not curl; the heavy twine is used for coarse work, where only a small number of lashes is necessary. The length of the lashes is from 8 to 12 in., according to the breadth of the simple. The heads are about 4½ in. long, of good cord, as foot twine, which is used finer or coarser according as more or less heads are required. The heads are made with a noose on them that will run up or down on the gut cord L, which is a strong cord, generally extending from the ground to the roof of the house. K, K are the bridles connected with the lashes, and used to draw them down in succession as they are wanted by the drawboy. When there are a great number of lashes, two gut cords are used, as shown at No. 1 (Fig. 3), and the lashes are looped alternately on each and bridled accordingly. In coloured work, where three or four draws are required for each weft line of the pattern—that is, one draw for each colour—it is usual to have two gut cords with cross bridles from

Digitized by Google

the cne to the other which will slide up and down on them. On these cross bridles the heads of the lashes are fastened, about 1 in. apart, so that the drawboy can take them in succession and draw the shed for each colour.

The method of preparing and mounting the draw-loom harness is much the same as that now in use for jacquard harnesses, and, as it is entirely out of use, it is unnecessary to describe it.

In order to make the neck twines draw evenly, rollers are placed between each set of cords at the points 1, 2, 3, &c.; these rollers keep the cords straight and make them all rise the same height at the mails, which they would not do unless they all sloped to the hole board at the same angle.

READING OR LASHING THE PATTERN

The pattern, painted on design paper, same as for pressure-harness damask, is fixed upon a lashing frame, as shown in Fig. 4, and the lower ends of the simples are passed over it and fastened to the cross-bar B. The simple cords are held in position over the design by the comb C, C, which must be of such a fineness as to make each simple cord stand directly opposite that space of the pattern to which it corresponds, one simple cord being placed between each pair of teeth of the comb. It will thus be seen that there must be a simple cord for each vertical line on the pattern, or rather for each vertical space between the black lines. In the same way, there must be a head of lashes for each horizontal space, or line, as it is usually called, and which would answer to a card for the jacquard or dobby. The straight-edge E E is made so that it will slide up and down in the frame, to mark the line on the design paper that is to be next read by the lasher. Now refer to the line of the pattern above the straight-edge, and it will be seen that the first square or check to the left is blank, and it is accordingly passed over by the lasher; the second and third checks are painted, and as the simple cords corresponding to them have to be drawn to form the pattern, the lasher twists one end of his lash over the pin G, and takes a turn of it round the second and third simples,

Digitized by Google

again passing it round the pin G. The fourth check, being blank, is passed over, and a turn or tack of the lash twine is taken round the fifth, sixth, and seventh simples, as the checks on the design paper opposite these are painted. The reading and lashing proceeds in this way till the line is finished, as shown in the figure ; then the two ends of the lash twine are tied together round the pin G, which is then taken

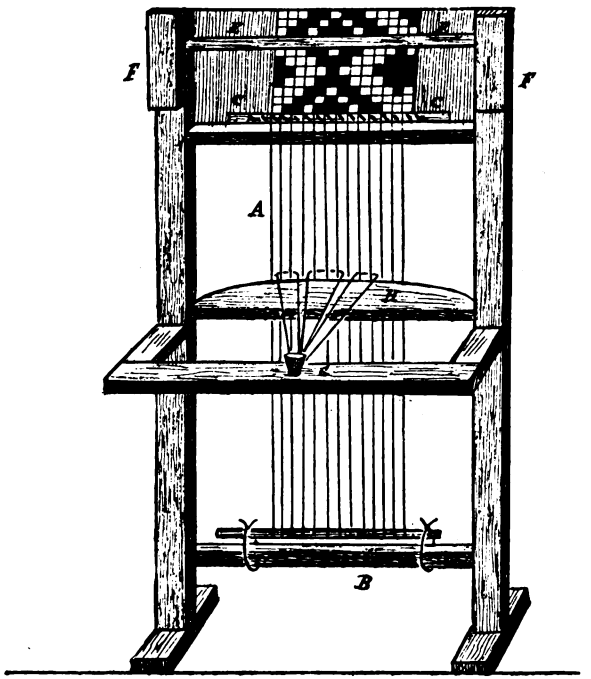


FIG. 4

out, and the loop made round it by the lash twine is twisted round and formed into a snitch for the purpose of fastening it to the head. The lash is now pushed down behind the board H, to make room for another ; the straight-edge is then shifted to the next line, and the lashing proceeded with as before. If too many painted squares of the design paper come together, all the simple cords corresponding to them must not be looped or lashed together, but can be taken in two or more

Digitized by Google

loops or tacks, never taking more than six or seven simple cords into one tack of the lash twine.

It will be observed that the board H is rounded at the back; this is for the purpose of having all the simples at an equal distance from the pin G when they are tacked up by the lash twine, and consequently a more regular shed will be produced when they are drawn in the process of weaving.

The method of fastening the head to the lash is to loop the cord for the head, which should be double, round the gut cord, then knot the two ends of it together, and take this knot through the snitch formed on the end of the lash, and when the snitch is drawn tight the knot prevents the head from slipping out.

In weaving with the draw loom two persons are required—the weaver, who works over the ground treadles, throws the shuttle, beats up the weft, &c.; and the drawboy, who takes the lashes in succession as he draws them down by the bridle, and by pulling out the simples raises the harness and holds it in this position till the weaver has worked as many shots as are required to be given to each draught.

When some thousands of twines were required for the harness, and with a simple of three or four hundred cords, the weight and friction made it very severe work for the drawboy. To assist him a fork, as shown at V, No. 2, Fig. 3, was used. It was made to run to and fro on a carriage, so that when the simples were drawn forward by the lashes, one spike of the fork could be run in behind those drawn forward, while the other spike was in front of them. When the fork was depressed, till the handle T came to the position shown by the dotted lines, it drew down the simple cords, and they could easily be held in that position till a change of draught was required.

When the mounting of the draw loom was very extensive, it was necessary to employ from two to ten pulley-boxes and as many drawboys, so that it is not surprising that many endeavours were made to work without the aid of a drawboy. One of these machines, known as the 'Parrot' or 'Pecker,' is shown in Fig. 5. It is wrought by the treadles T, which are attached to the marches M, and these are connected by the pulley P, on the rocking shaft R, by a cord which passes

Digitized by Google

over and is fastened to it. When one of the treadles is pressed down the pulley rocks and turns the shaft to one side, and when the other treadle is pressed down the shaft will rock to the other side. The parrot or pecker K is movable on the rocking shaft—that is, it can

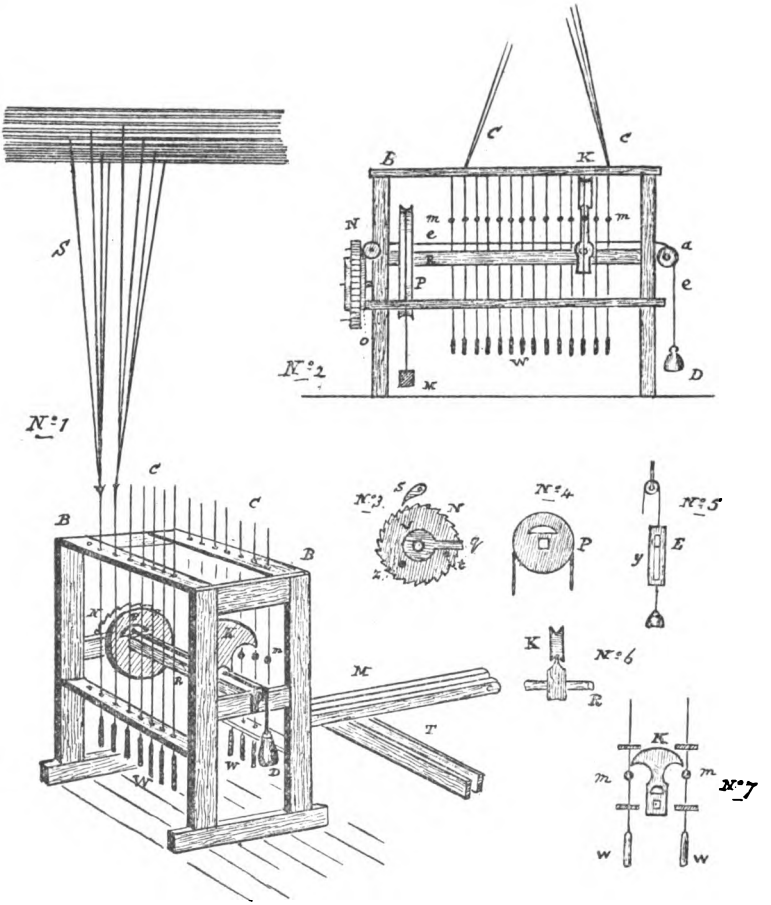


Fig. 5

slide along it—but it must rock from one side to the other with the shaft. The cords C, C are passed through holes in the boards B, B, for the purpose of keeping them in position, and they have knots or beads on them at *m*, *m*, and weights, W, W, at their ends to keep them in

Digitized by Google

tension. Fastened to the cords C, C is another set of cords, S, connected with the tail cords of the draw-loom harness, and so corded or arranged as to draw those tail cords required to be sunk to raise the harness to form the pattern. As the shaft R is rocked from side to side by depressing the treadles in succession, it carries with it the pecker K, and the groove or notch at the point of the pecker, shown clearly in Nos. 2 and 6, coming into contact with the knots or beads on the cords, draws them down alternately, first at one side of the machine and then at the other, until the pecker, as it slides along the rocking shaft, has passed over all the cords; it is then released and drawn back to its original position by means of the weight D, attached to it by the cord *e*. At the end of the rocking shaft is a ratchet wheel, N. The cord *e* passes from the pecker through the segmental hole in the pulley P, as shown in No. 4, and is fastened to a boss, O, on the inner side of the ratchet wheel. This wheel receives its motion from a catch, as shown at E, No. 5, which is simply a pin fixed in a slotted piece of wood. The pin *y* forms the catch, and the slot acts as a guide, which passes over the edge of the ratchet wheel, and keeps the catch in position. The catch is attached to the marches and works vertically. It is raised by the treadles, and when released is drawn down by the weight attached to it, the wire *y* catching one of the teeth of the ratchet and moving it round. There are two pins, *z* and *t*, in the ratchet, as shown in No. 3, and it is according to their distance apart that the length of traverse of the pecker is determined. The bar *q*, shown in No. 3 attached to the pulley V, which is loose on the axle, is raised by the stud *t*, as the ratchet wheel is advanced tooth by tooth, till it comes into contact with the catch S, and raises it; this allows the ratchet wheel to be reversed by the weight D on the end of the cord *e* till the stud *z* comes round and draws away the bar, which allows the catch to fall into position again and stops the pecker where the pattern is to begin. Thus, the distance between the studs *z* and *t* must be arranged to suit the number of cords the pecker has to pass, or to give the number of threads in the pattern. The teeth of the ratchet wheel and traverse of the catch must be of such a pitch that as each tooth is moved round the pulley will be turned the exact distance required to move the

Digitized by Google

pecker from one cord to the next one. No. 2, Fig. 5, is an elevation of a 'parrot' arranged for a single row of cords, as these machines were first made. There was only one treadle, as shown in section at M, No. 2, and the pecker only rocked to one side. Either this or the double machine could be used for a shaft mounting where a large number of treads are necessary. The cords C pass over pulleys, and are fastened to long coupers or levers with their fulcrum at the side of the loom, and to these the shafts are hung from jacks or otherwise. These machines were made to work very exactly. In the double machine the pecker would travel over three or four hundred cords in consecutive order.

To avoid confusion the beads are not shown on the front cords in No. 1.

CROSS'S COUNTERPOISE HARNESS

About the year 1816 Mr. James Cross, of Paisley, invented a machine to do away with the drawboys.

This machine is fully described by Murphy and Gilroy in their works on weaving. Only the general principle of it will be given here, as an introduction to the jacquard. The detail of drawing the lashes and treading, though ingenious, is not of any practical importance now, and it requires rather a lengthy description to explain it. The harness F is the same as in the common draw loom till it reaches the tail cords, where the counterpoise apparatus commences. The framing B B (Fig. 6) of this machine is supported by the carriage A A, which rests on the capes or top rails of the loom. In this frame are two boards, C and D, perforated with holes corresponding in number with the tie of the harness or cords in the simple. The top board is called the suspension board, and is mortised into the bar E. From this board the harness hangs, the neck being taken up through the holes in it, and fastened above them. The lower board, D, which is mortised into the bar G, is called the neck board, or directing board, as it keeps the harness in its proper place. H and K are two other boards, perforated as shown in Fig. 7, mortised into the sliding bars I and L respectively; these are called the trap boards. M, M and N, M are four

Digitized by Google

bars, called pushers, which are fastened to the sliding bars I and L as well as to the pulleys P, P, and when the pulleys are oscillated by means of a treadle the sliding bars will be moved up and down. The knot cords or tail cords O, O are fastened to the suspension board C,

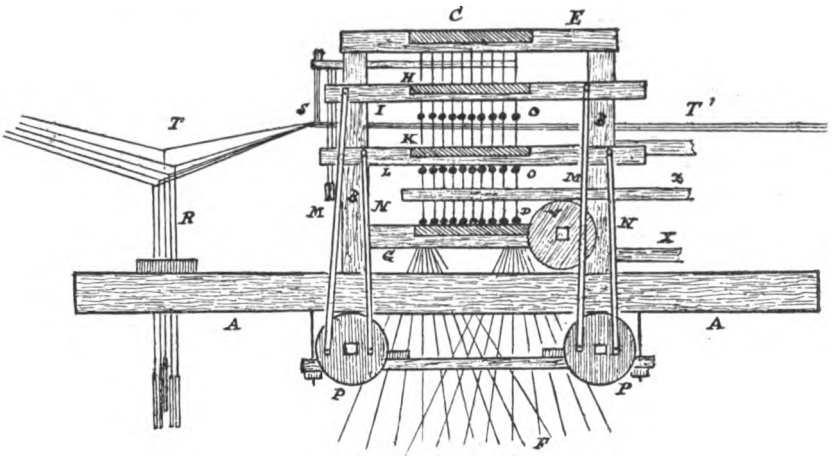


FIG. 6

and pass through the two trap boards, then through the neck board, and are tied to the harness. Only two of these cords are shown tied to the harness, to avoid confusion. These knot cords have knots or beads on them as shown, and the round holes in the trap boards H and K, as shown in Fig. 7, must be sufficiently large (about $\frac{1}{4}$ in. in diameter) to allow the knots or beads to pass freely through. There are notches or saw-cuts at the sides of the holes to admit the cords, but support the knots. T, T^1 is the simple, extending horizontally through the knot cords. It is fastened to the ceiling beyond T, and to the frame of the machine beyond T^1. S is a half-leaf of heddles for the purpose of supporting the simple cords. Each simple cord is tied to a knot cord, and beyond T^1 the simple is lashed according to the pattern. In working the machine the lashes are drawn by means of hooked

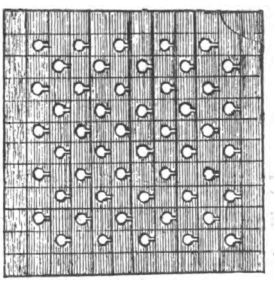


FIG. 7

Digitized by Google

levers, wrought by a treadle connected with the pulley V, and those simple cords that are drawn down pull the knot cords into the notches or saw-cuts in the trap boards, so that when the trap board is raised the harness fastened to those knot cords that are drawn into the saw-cuts will also be raised. R is a set of cords with weights on their ends for the purpose of drawing the knot cords out of the saw-cuts as soon as the simple is released by the lashes. The two trap boards rise and fall alternately, and this is why the machine is called a counterpoise.

Some time after an improvement was made upon this machine which was known as

THE COMB DRAW LOOM

This machine appears to have been invented in both Scotland and Ireland, as Gilroy describes it as an invention of Dr. McLaughlin, of

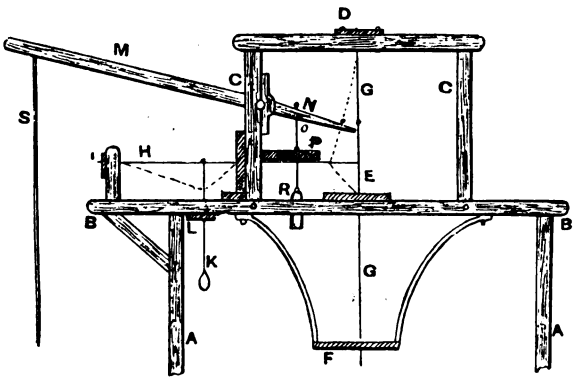


FIG. 8

Ballyshannon, County Donegal; and Murphy describes a similar machine invented by Mr. Bonnar, of Dunfermline. The machine is shown in Fig. 8. A, A are the posts of the loom, and B B the top rail; C C is the framing of the machine. The harness G, G is suspended from the suspension board D, and passes through the guide board E and the cumber board F. The upper portion of the harness is composed of tail or knot cords, as in Cross's machine. From each of the tail cords a simple cord, H, extends horizontally over the weaver's head, and is fastened to the board I. The lashes K hang from the simples over the

Digitized by Google

weaver's head, and have a knob on the end of each, so that the weaver can catch them and draw his own draught.

The lash cords have a knot or bead on them, so that when drawn they can be held in the cuts of the board L, also shown in plan at L (Fig. 9). M, N (Fig. 8) is a side view of the comb and handle, or lever, shown in plan at M, N (Fig. 9). S is a cord or chain attached to the end of the lever M, and passing down to a treadle. When the weaver draws one of the knobs, the tail cords connected with the simples in this lash are drawn between the teeth of the comb, as shown by the dotted lines in Fig. 8. He then depresses the treadle, which raises the comb, and the harness along with it; he holds the treadle down with his left foot, and works over the ground treadles with his right one. The comb is recovered or counterbalanced by the cord O, which passes from the comb through the board P, and has a weight, R, suspended on it. D (Fig. 9) is a plan of the boards D, E, F and I (Fig. 8).

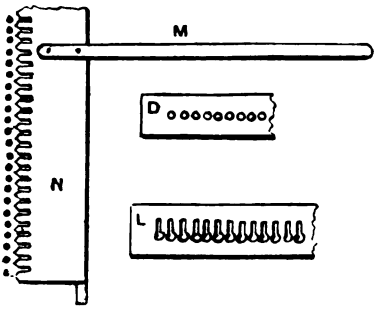


FIG. 9

THE BARREL OR CYLINDER LOOM

This machine was introduced by Mr. Thomas Morton, of Kilmarnock. The harness and tail or knot cords are arranged similarly to those in the comb draw loom; but instead of the simple cords for drawing out the tail cords, each tail cord in the barrel loom passes through a slide, or horizontal wire. The points of these slides are acted upon by the pattern cylinder or barrel, and those held back press out their tail cords from the others, and the knots on these tail cords are caught by the teeth on the comb or roller, and the harness raised.

The pattern is arranged upon the barrel much in the same way as a tune is arranged on the cylinder of a barrel organ or musical box.

Digitized by Google

A section of the barrel is shown at A (Fig. 10), with wire staples driven into it to form the pattern.

Each of these staples represents so many lines of the design paper, or so many lashes or draughts. The pattern is ruled out and painted on the barrel, and staples are driven into it so as to cover the painted squares of the pattern. The barrel is so arranged on the loom that exactly the space of one line of the design paper is turned round for each draught, and the slides are drawn back by cords attached from their ends to a roller when the shift of the barrel is being made. B is a section of the comb; it is a cylinder with teeth, C, like a parrot's beak fixed to it. The teeth are made of this shape to hold the knot cords when they are caught by them, and they rise or fall as the roller is rocked upwards or downwards by a treadle.

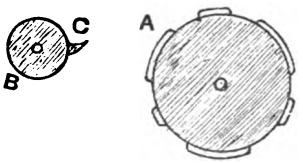


FIG. 10

Whilst these improvements on the draw loom were being made in this country for the purpose of producing a convenient method of harness weaving, the French were endeavouring to obtain the same result, but on a different principle, and their method has proved successful.

In 1725 M. Bouchon employed a band of pierced paper, pressed by hand against a row of horizontal needles, so as to push back those which were opposite the blank spaces, and thus bring loops on the extremities of vertical wires into connection with a comb-like rack below, which, being depressed, drew down the wires, pushed on the pins in it, and raised the harness.

Fig. 11 is a sketch of a model of this loom in the Conservatoire des Arts, Paris. A is the pulley-box with two rows of pulleys in it; B the tail cords; C the simples, tied to rings on their upper ends, which run on the tail cords at B; the other ends of the simples pass over a small roller at D to prevent them rubbing against the side of the loom, then down through the hole board F, under which they are tied to wire hooks or loops, as shown under A (Fig. 11A). Next these wires pass through the needle box G, also shown at B, Fig. 11A, and down to the

Digitized by Google

comb H (Fig. 11), and C (Fig. 11A). The perforated paper is rolled on the roller E, and passing downwards, is pressed against the needles with a hand bar, as shown at L, Fig. 11B. The roller K is for rolling up the paper as it passes down from the upper roller.

Fig. 11B is a back view of the mounting. A shows where the simples are connected with the tail cords P; B shows the connection

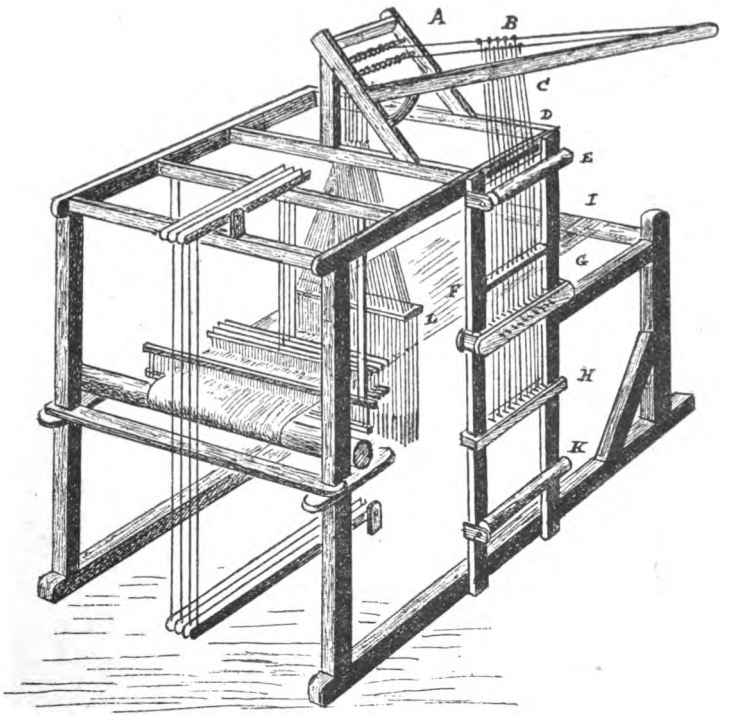


FIG. 11

of the tail cords with the harness; C is the cumber board; D the mails and E the leads. F and K are the two rollers for the paper, H the needle box, and I the comb. This was the first attempt at forming the pattern by means of perforated paper acting upon needles and wires.

In 1728 M. Falcon adopted a chain of perforated cards in lieu of the perforated paper, and placed his horizontal wires or needles in several rows or ranks, thereby admitting the use of a greater number

Digitized by Google

of them in a moderate space. He also used a square prism or cylinder, as it is called, for the cards to pass over.

Fig. 12 is a sketch from a model of his loom, also in the Conservatoire des Arts. The principle of it is much the same as the preceding. A is the pulley box for four rows of pulleys, B the connection of the simple with the tail cords, C the hole board for the simple to pass through and also the support for the cylinder H, D is the needle box, E the comb or griffe, F the levers for drawing down the griffe, and G the treadle. The cards are laced in a chain and pass over the cylinders

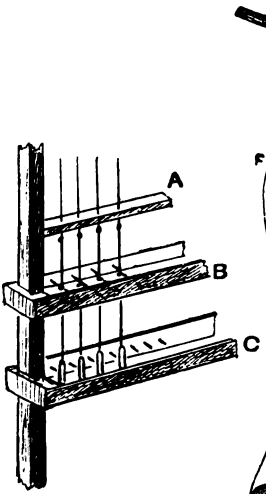


Fig. 11A

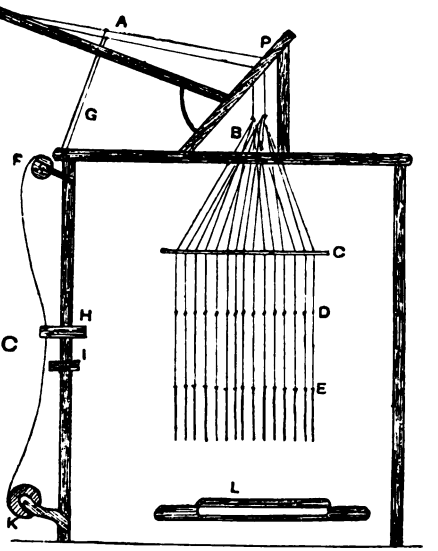


Fig. 11B

I and H, but they are pressed against the needles by a hand bar, similar to that used by Bouchon. There are two racks or receptacles for holding the cards, as shown. The cylinders H and I are simply used as rollers to support the cards, and not for pressing them against the needles, as in the jacquard.

Figs. 12A and 12B give detailed views of the hooks, etc., for drawing the harness: the letters in both refer to the same parts as are marked with similar letters in Fig. 12. The simples B are tied to loops on the hooks under the hole board C. In Fig. 12B it will be clearly seen how

Digitized by Google

the needles in four rows act upon the hooks. The griffe consists of four round iron rods or wires set in the frame E, Fig. 12A, which can be drawn down by the treadle G, connected with the levers F by the cords 3 and 4. One of the levers has its fulcrum at one side and the other has it at the opposite side, and the points of the levers are tied to the griffe frame by the cords 1 and 2. The griffe, when sunk, is brought back to its place again by weights hanging on cords running over pulleys. It may be seen that the hooks hang in front of the rods

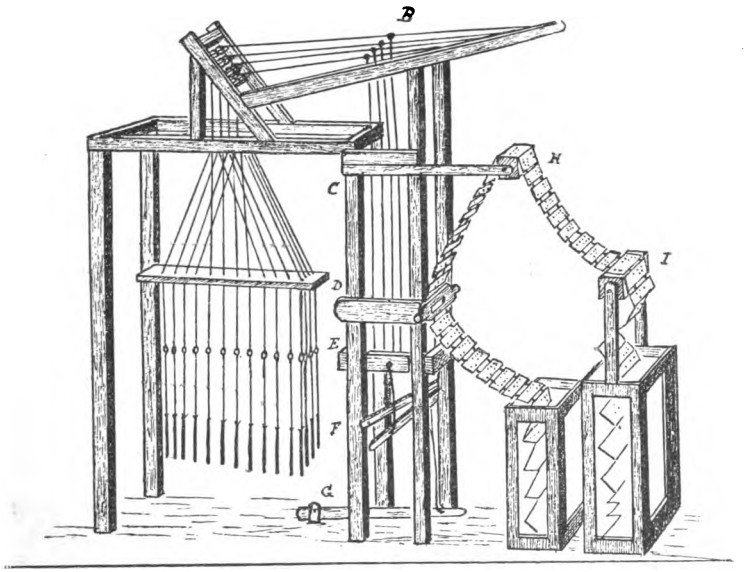


FIG. 12

or bars of the griffe; therefore, those hooks will be pushed on the griffe whose needles come against the solid portions of the cards, thus acting similarly to Bouchon's machine. The hand bar for pressing the cards against the needles is shown at F. The needles can pass through the slot in it, and, when a card is pressed against the needles, the bar can be fastened with hooks for the purpose, so that the operator is free to depress the treadle. There are no springs on the needles, but a clap board comes behind them, which is pressed in by means of a cord passing over each end of it and fastened to a spiral spring. There are

Digitized by Google

ten leaves of heddles in front of the harness. They are plain clasped heddles, and apparently act as five, the front five being raised by the top levers connected with the treadles, as shown in Fig. 11, and the back five are held up by a set of levers at each side, with weights on the ends of them, similarly to those now used for hand-loom damasks, and tied to the treadles below, so that sinking a treadle would cause one of the back leaves to sink and one of the front ones to rise. Only

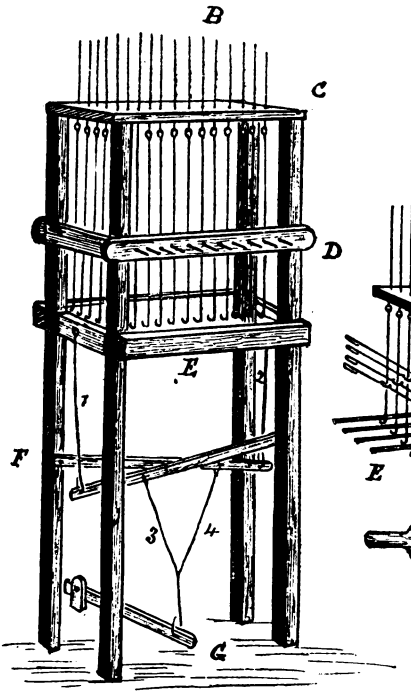


FIG. 12A

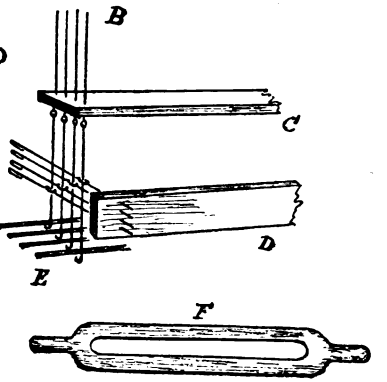


FIG. 12B

the harness mechanism of Falcon's loom is given in Fig. 12, the front portion being similar to that of Bouchon, or to any hand loom.

In 1746 the accomplished mechanician, Vaucanson, altogether dispensed with the cumbrous tail cords and simple of the draw loom, and made the draw-boy machine completely self-acting by placing the hooks upright on the top of the loom, and hanging the harness from them. This loom may be seen in the Conservatoire des Arts, as well

Digitized by Google

as a model of it on the same scale as those already mentioned—viz., one-third the size. The machine for drawing the harness is exactly like a small jacquard, with two rows of hooks and two rows of needles, as shown in Fig. 13. Instead of a square cylinder and cards, the pattern is punched on a band of paper, which passes over a round or true cylinder. This cylinder is fitted with a rack wheel, so that a tooth can be passed for each change of pattern, the cylinder moving out and turning one tooth, then pressing in against the cards again. The diameter of the cylinder is about twelve inches. The hooks are raised with a griffe, similar to that in a jacquard, which is fastened to a lever connected to a treadle below. This treadle, and four others for working the heddles, is wrought by tappets, made of wood, on a shaft running along the side of the loom and turned by a wince handle in front. Altogether, the loom is a nice mechanical contrivance, and a great step in advance of its predecessors.

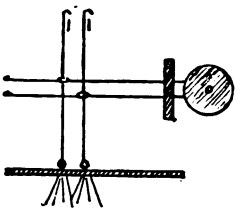


Fig. 13

Joseph Marie Jacquard, a working mechanic of Lyons, having invented a fishing net loom, turned his attention to improving the means of drawing the harness in looms for figured weaving, about 1790. A model of a machine by him, dated 1790, to dispense with the drawing of the harness, is in the Conservatoire des Arts. It is made with cords and rollers, and has no resemblance to the machine bearing his name. He was brought to Paris to repair Vaucanson's loom about 1804, and it appears to be then that he combined the best qualities of the machines of his predecessors, and produced the jacquard, a model of which, dated 1804, is in the Conservatoire des Arts. This is very much like our present jacquard, but with four rows of hooks and needles made similar to those of Vaucanson, Fig. 13. He dispensed with Vaucanson's cylinder and band of paper, and used instead a square prism with a chain of cards passing over it. The cylinder (or prism) he set in a frame or carriage, made to run on four wheels or pulleys on the top of the frame of the loom. The carriage is drawn out by depressing a treadle, and brought back again to press the

Digitized by Google

cylinder against the needles, by means of weights tied to cords running over pulleys. The griffe is raised by means of two levers, one at each side; one end of each is connected with the griffe, and the others to a crossbar at the bottom of the loom, and this crossbar is fastened from its centre to a treadle. In all these looms the cards or paper hang at the side of the loom, the mounting being on the principle known as the London tie. Jacquard was born in 1752, and died in 1834. Vaucanson died in 1782.

FRENCH DRAW LOOM

Shortly after the introduction of Cross's counterpoise harness, a machine was imported from France, which is shown in Fig. 14, and described in Murphy's 'Art of Weaving' as a French draw loom. This machine far surpassed any attempts at the improvements at the draw loom that had hitherto appeared, in simplicity of construction and operation. From the neck upwards the harness is similar in construction to Cross's counterpoise, having the knot cords arranged in the same manner, but with only one trap board. Instead of the cumbrous tail, the knot cords are acted upon by wires or needles, on each of which is a loop, through which one of the knot cords passes. D is the cylinder or barrel, perforated with holes, as in the common jacquard cylinder, and C, C shows the chain of cards for forming the pattern; E is the lever for raising the trap board, to which it is connected by means of pieces of iron at each side, with a bar across between them, to the centre of which the lever is connected with a piece of wire. O O are crossbars of wood, with holes in their centres, through which run pieces of strong iron wire, which are fixed into the trap board at each end to keep it steady while in operation. There is no spring box for the needles as is now used in the jacquard, but into the crossbar or frame F is inserted a flat piece of wood moving on springs, which yields to the pressure of the needles that are forced back by the barrel, and recovers them again when the barrel is withdrawn. The lever E is drawn down by the cord H, attached to a treadle, when the trap board is to be raised, and the barrel is drawn back by the cord G, which is attached to another treadle. The barrel is pressed against the needles by springs, and when it is

Digitized by Google

relieved by the treadle and is moving inwards, it is turned by one of the catches shown in Fig. 14A. Either of these catches can be brought into action, so as to turn the barrel either way, by raising or lowering them with a cord. When at rest the knot cords stand in the notches or saw cuts of the trap board, but when the cards are pressed against the needles, except where there are holes in the cards, the needles are pressed back and the cords are pushed out of the notches so that the knots stand above the holes in the trap board, and pass through them when the board is raised by depressing the treadle connected with the lever E. The trap board is shown in Fig. 7.

FIG. 14

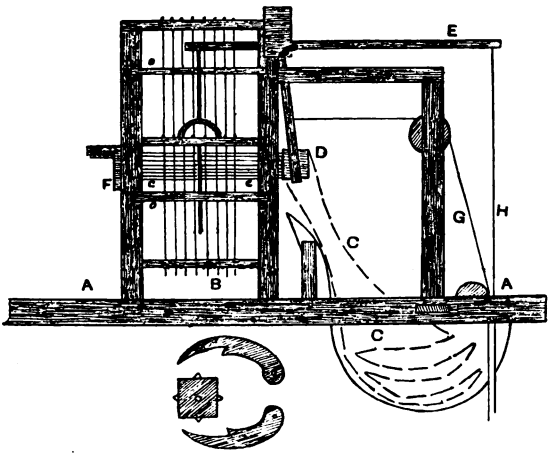


FIG. 14A

Whether this machine was Jacquard's invention or not, I have not been able to ascertain; but Gilroy states that Jacquard's first machines were made with cords and trap boards, like Cross's counterpoise machine. It is also recorded that William Jennings, of Bethnal Green, invented a machine, similar to the above, about 1830, as an improvement on the jacquard, on account of its simplicity, as the latter appears to have given the weavers some trouble, and notice was taken of his machine by the Society of Arts.

Machines similar to the above are still in use for hand-loom work, and answer very well. They have also been used for power looms, but

Digitized by Google

the cords do not stand the friction long. As at present made about Glasgow, the cylinders of these machines work on slide rods, and receive their motion from the rising of the trap board, same as the cylinders in jacquards are sometimes wrought by the rising of the griffe with what is known as the 'swan neck' motion. The spring board at the ends of the needles is held back by a spring and drawn in by the cylinder frame as it moves outwards, which brings all the needles forward, and the cords into the saw cuts in the trap board, or comb as it is frequently called. The knots on the cords for these machines are made as at B, Fig. 15, which, when drawn tight, are as shown at A. The cord is a good twisted cord, such as whipcord, and the holes in the trapboard are about $\frac{3}{16}$ in. in diameter, which the knots on the cords must pass freely through. The upper ends of the cords pass through a perforated board on the top of the machine, and another cord is drawn through loops on their ends, which prevents them from being drawn through the holes.

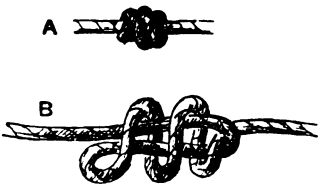


FIG. 15

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER II

JACQUARD MACHINES

THE jacquard machine was introduced into England about 1818 and came into general use from 1824 to 1832. It was introduced into Scotland about 1824. Fig. 16 is a representation of the early form of jacquard, and of course intended for hand-loom work. Although the present machines for power-loom work are very different in make, nearly all the working parts as here used are to be found in different machines at present working, or still being made, though the best machine makers have adopted newer and better principles for fast working and withstanding wear and tear. Fig. 16A is a view of the interior of the machine. The working of the machine will be explained further on; only those parts that will not be given in the new machines will now be noticed. The griffe or frame for raising the hooks is lifted by the straps A, A, Fig. 16, which are attached to the pulleys B, B, and a cord C over a pulley on the same shaft as B, B, is attached to a treadle beneath the loom. As the weaver presses down this treadle the griffe is raised, and when the treadle is released the griffe falls of its own weight. The cylinder is moved out and in by the pulley E, fastened on the bent iron bar, attached to the frame which carries the cylinder, when the griffe rises and falls. D, D is a frame which lies in the turned-up portion of the hooks; only a few hooks are shown, and the outer bars of the frame. There should be a bar in the frame for each row of hooks. This frame rises up and down with the hooks, the turn on the ends of which must be of such length that when the frame is raised by the hooks lifted by the griffe, it will not be raised out of the turns on those that are left down. This frame is for the purpose of preventing the hooks from turning round, so that the turns on the

Digitized by Google

upper end of them, as shown at A, A, Fig. 16A, cannot get out of position to be caught by the blades or crossbars of the griffe. The lower ends of the hooks rest on a perforated board as shown in Fig. 16A, and tail cords are looped on them and pass through the perforated board as shown. To these cords is fastened the neck of the harness. Machines with these perforated boards and frames to keep the hooks in position are still (1890) being made in Yorkshire. In Fig. 16A is shown a section through the spring box B. This box con-

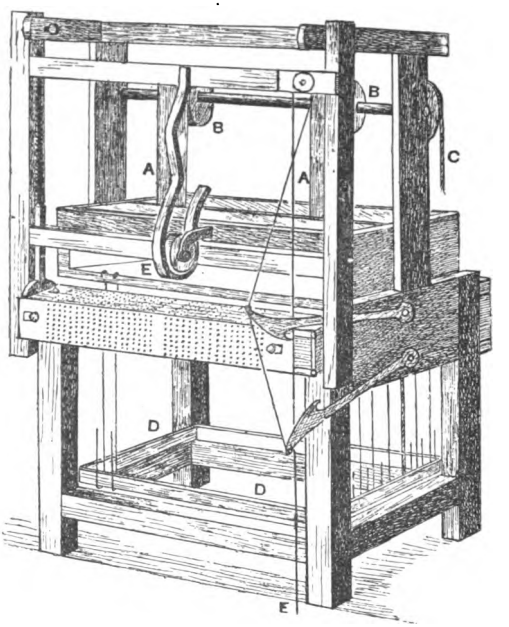


FIG. 16

tains a spiral spring for each of the horizontal needles, the ends of which press against the springs, which allow them to yield or move back as the cards press on their points; but recover them again when the card is moved away by the cylinder. Similar spring-boxes are now used.

It might be interesting to describe the various changes and attempted improvements that have been made on the original jacquard, but it would take up too much space, and many of them are of more historical

Digitized by Google

than practical importance; some of them will be mentioned that may be interesting from a mechanical point of view, in connection with the descriptions of the machines, even though they have only been partially successful. Though a very different machine from what it originally was, the principle of the jacquard remains the same, and is not likely to be altered or superseded till a revolution takes place in the process of weaving.

A jacquard machine is simply a shedding motion by which a great variety of sheds can be formed; the larger the machine, or the greater

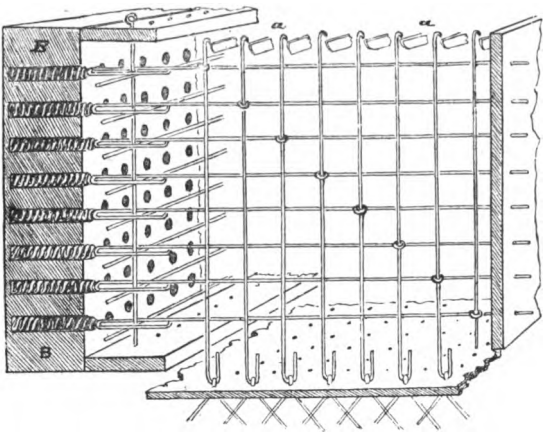


FIG. 16A

the number of hooks it contains, the greater is the variety of shedding that can be produced by it.

If a jacquard is made small, with, say, from 16 to 48 hooks, it is called a dobby or shedding motion, and is used for working shaft mountings; but the ordinary jacquard machines have from 200 to 600 hooks, which have long cords, called the harness, connected to them, no shafts being required, as each hook has only a few cords tied to it, which can be raised independently of the others. The fewer the cords that are tied to each hook, the greater is the variety of shedding that can be made on the same number of warp threads, till, when there is but one cord to the hook, any thread or any number of threads can be raised independently of any of the others.

Digitized by Google

Jacquards may be divided into four classes—viz. single-acting, double-acting lift, double acting with double cylinders, and twilling jacquards; and besides these there are several other varieties made for special purposes. The single-acting is the real jacquard, and much the simplest machine. It has the disadvantage which all single-acting shedding motions have—viz. that one shed must be closed before the following one begins to open. This is on account of the same lifter having to open each shed; it must bring down the set of hooks that are raised, and then raise the next set.

This constitutes the true jacquard lift; and while it makes a clear shed, and is desirable for some purposes, it is generally considered the most imperfect form of shedding—that is, so far as the making of a good cloth is concerned. It is not suitable for making a heavy, well-covered cloth, nor for working at a high speed, 120 to 140 picks per minute being a very good speed to drive it.

A single-acting jacquard is a very simple machine, and when properly made should give very little trouble in working, particularly if the motions are properly set in relation to each other, and if such methods of working are adopted as will cause the least wear and tear on it.

In whatever way jacquards are made, the principle of working is much the same. There are a number of upright hooks set in a frame; attached to each hook is a horizontal wire or needle, one end of which is pressed upon by a spring, which keeps both it and the hook steady and in position, while the other end, or point, passes through a perforated plate, beyond which it projects about half an inch (see Fig. 16A). To lift the hooks there is a set of bars or knives arranged in a frame, just below the heads of the hooks; this frame is called the 'griffe' or 'brander,' and if raised would draw all the hooks up with it. What hooks will be lifted for each shed is regulated by perforated cards being pressed against the points of the needles. A perforation in the card allows the point of a needle to pass through and the hook to be raised; but where there is no perforation the card comes against the point of the needle, pressing it back, and holding the head of the hook clear of the blade of the griffe, so that the griffe will pass without raising the

Digitized by Google

hook. It will thus be seen that any variety of shedding can be made by punching the cards to suit it. Fig. 17 shows one of the best makes of single-acting jacquards. One of the best methods of driving is shown in this and the following figure. The griffe is raised by means of the lever G, which is sometimes supported on a beam fastened to the roof or pillars of the shed, or it may be supported by an upright fastened on the frame of the loom. A portion of this upright is shown in Fig.

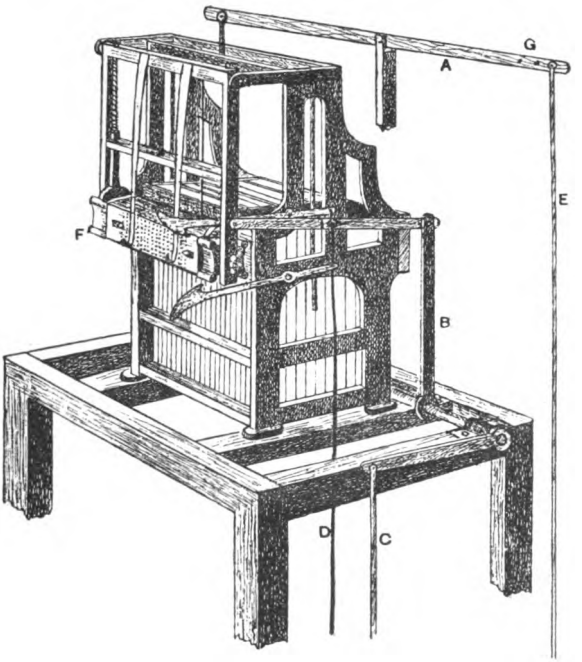


FIG. 17

17, and as well as being fastened to the loom frame, it should be stayed to the top of the machine. One end of the lever is fastened by a link connection to the centre of the bar across the griffe frame, care being taken that the connection is so made as to draw up the griffe vertically, and not have any strain on the slide rods or spindles that are used for keeping the griffe horizontal when rising.

The other end of the lever is connected to a crank on the crank-

Digitized by Google

shaft of the loom by a rod, E (Fig. 17); also shown at A (Fig. 18), where the crank is also given.

In hand-loom machines the griffe is frequently pushed up from below instead of being drawn up from the top as is shown in Fig. 17. The method of doing this is similar to that given for lifting the griffes of twilling jacquards.

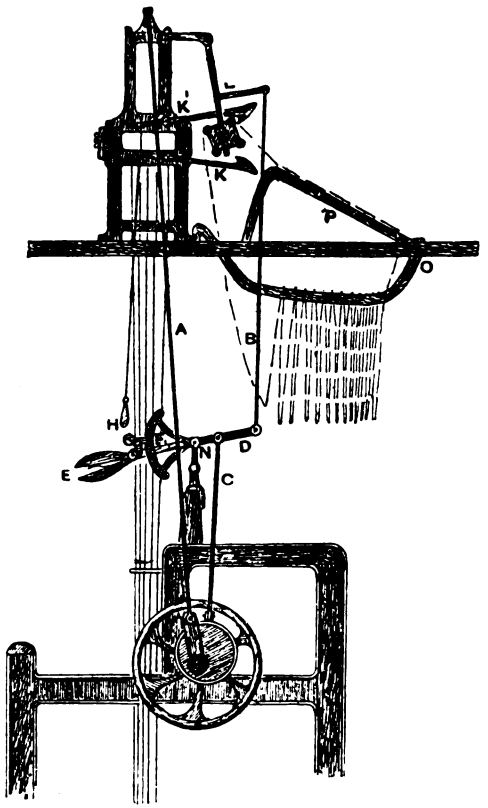


FIG. 18

F (Fig. 17) is called the cylinder or barrel, evidently taking its name from the round cylinders or barrels used in the old machines, but is in reality a square prism. It is made of wood, and perforated on each side with a set of holes—a hole for each needle in the machine; its use is to draw round the chain of cards and press each one against the needles, or horizontal wires, in the machine. In order to keep the cards firmly on the cylinder, flat steel springs are sometimes used, as shown, attached to the top rail of the frame which holds the cylinder; and there are also steel wires which pass down in front of the cylinder over the ends of the cards. These springs are useful when only a small number of cards is used and the machine driven quickly; with a large set of cards, where there is plenty of drag on them from their own weight, they are not necessary, and but seldom used; but they are in common use in the Yorkshire districts.

Digitized by Google

It will be seen from the illustrations (Figs. 17 and 18) that the cylinder hangs in a frame suspended from the top of the machine; this is called the swing or batten motion, to distinguish it from the horizontal or sliding motion which is shown at Fig. 20 (No. 1) and in Fig. 27. The swing motion is the simpler of the two, and is cleaner, requiring less oil; but the sliding motion is steadier, and does not swing the cards so much, consequently is more suitable when the cylinder has to travel quickly. The swing motion also requires the machine to be higher; with a slide motion the frame is usually cut off a little above the griffe.

The cylinder has to travel out and in when the machine is working, so that it may be turned round and bring a fresh card against the needles for each shot. There are many methods of accomplishing this, which may be divided into two classes—viz. independent motions, or those which are driven from the loom independently of the machine; and self-acting motions, or those which drive the cylinder out and in through the rising and falling of the griffe. The latter are the simpler, but the former are much better, causing less wear and tear on both the cards and machine, as will be explained further on.

It will be seen in Fig. 18 that as the cylinder travels out it will be caught by the hook K^1, and turned round; the head or lantern of the cylinder is made of iron, as shown, so that the hook, or shears, will take a firm catch on it. To prevent the cylinder from turning more than one card at once, and to keep it steady so that it will always come in fair against the needles, it is held firm by a hammer pressed on it by a spring. This pressure is applied in different ways, one of which may be clearly seen in Fig. 17, and another in Fig. 27. When taking out the cylinder, or wanting to run it round quickly to draw over a number of cards, the hammers can be held up by a hook or sliding catch, which should be fitted to the machine for the purpose.

One of the best independent motions for driving the cylinder is shown in Fig. 17; and that shown in Fig. 18 is also a very good one for small machines, perhaps the most convenient that is made; but the former is much stronger. In Fig. 17 a connecting-arm from the frame of the cylinder is attached to the lever B. The connecting-arm should

Digitized by Google

have a slotted joint, so that it can be made shorter or longer, if required, for the purpose of regulating the pressure of the cylinder on the needles.

The lever B is on a horizontal shaft, bracketed to the frame of the loom, or to the beams on which the machine rests; or some machines have bearings attached to their framing for it. There is, of course, a lever, as B, and a connecting-arm at each side of the machine. There is another lever on the end of the shaft, at right angles to B, which is connected with an eccentric on the crank-shaft of the loom by a rod, C, in the same way as the rod C is connected with the eccentric in Fig. 18. The eccentric can be set to bring the cylinder against the needles at any required time, independent of the lifting motion of the machine, which cannot be done when the self-acting motions are used. The

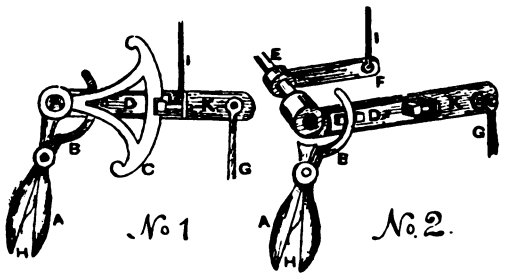


Fig. 19

larger the eccentric, the greater dwell the cylinder will have against needles. The method of working the cylinder in Fig. 18 is somewhat similar, and can easily be seen; but it will be observed that a good deal of pressure will be put upon the studs on which the cylinder frame, or batten, hangs, particularly when the cylinder is being pressed in, as this is effected by drawing down the lever L; however, in a light machine this does not matter much.

The principal feature in this motion is the escapement apparatus for the purpose of disengaging the cylinder from its connection with the driving eccentric when it is required to turn some of the cards back. Fig. 19 (Nos. 1 and 2) shows this arrangement. The motion is not quite the same as that given in Fig. 18, but is on the same principle, and one may be easily understood from the other. In Fig. 18 the latch G

Digitized by Google

comes out of the notch in the quadrant F, when the handle E is pressed close; the handle is on the lever D, having its fulcrum on the shaft N, and the quadrant F is connected to the eccentric rod C. The quadrant is loose on the shaft, and the lever is fast on it. Fig. 19 is a more convenient motion. The two halves of the handle A are held apart by the spring H, and this, through the hook B on the inner end of the handle, presses the latch or catch on the slide D into the notch on the quadrant C. The quadrant and handle are one piece, and are fast on the shaft E, and a lever F on this shaft is connected to the batten of the machine, in the same manner as shown by D and B in Fig. 18. When there are two or more machines, one of these levers would be required for each. The lever K is loose on the shaft E, and the rod G connects it with the eccentric, same as is shown by the rod C in Fig. 18. In No. 2, Fig. 19, the quadrant is left out to show clearly how the hook B acts on the slide D, and also to show the lever K on the shaft. The two halves of the handle, being pressed out by the spring, keep D in position, firmly pressed inwards; but when the handle is pressed the hook B presses the slide D outwards, leaving the quadrant free to pass up or down; and by pulling down the cord H (Fig. 18), which raises the shears K and K^1, the cards can easily be turned back by working the handle up and down, as the under shears will catch the cylinder and turn it the reverse way. The weaver must be careful not to jerk the motion and throw the cards off the cylinder or damage them; but a very little practice will enable anyone to turn them back quite easily and quickly. This motion answers very well for one, or perhaps two, small machines; for a 400 or 600 machine, or any smaller size working spottings, &c., it is very convenient, but when large mountings are required, as in 800 to 2400 machines, it is quite too weak for the work; even if made strong enough it would not be satisfactory, as the strength of spring that would be required to bear the strain and keep the catch in the notch would make it a very difficult matter to use the motion for reversing the cyiinder. For heavy machinery the method of working the cylinder shown in Fig. 17 is far preferable, and separate motions for turning back the cards can be fixed on the machine. These will be explained further on.

Digitized by Google

Instead of the eccentric and crank for driving the cylinder and raising the griffe being as they are shown in Fig. 18, though a plan frequently in use, it is neater, and perhaps better, to have the eccentric at the back of the fly-wheel, and the fly-wheel either cast with one half solid, or have a plate fastened across two or more of the spokes, to which the connecting-rod can be attached with a bolt fastened in a slot. The amount of lift can be increased or diminished, either by shifting the top of the connecting-rod along the lever G (Fig. 17), or by increasing or reducing the throw of the crank at the fly-wheel.

Self-acting motions actuate the cylinder through the rising and

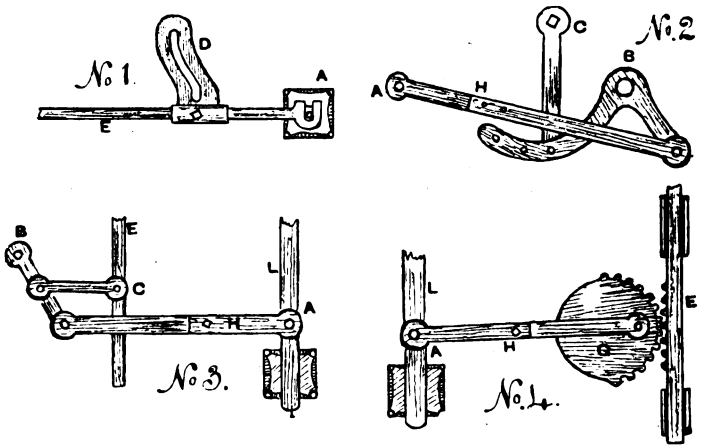


FIG 19A

falling of the griffe without requiring any special connection from the loom. One of the most convenient of these is that frequently used on hand-loom machines, and known as the S iron or swan-neck motion. It is shown in Fig. 19A (No. 1), and another form of it on a swing cylinder motion is shown in Fig 16. D is the swan-neck or S iron. In the groove in it a roller stud on the griffe frame travels, sliding in and out the cylinder A as the griffe falls and rises. E is the slide bar, which may be flat or round; if round, there must be some means of keeping it from turning in its bearings, which is generally accomplished by having a crossbar bolted across the two slide bars behind the machine.

No. 2, Fig. 19A, is a motion for the same purpose, but consists of a

Digitized by Google

series of levers; and No. 3 is an arrangement of a similar nature. B is the fulcrum of the levers, or fast pin by which they are connected to the machine. C shows the attachment of the levers to the slide rod of the machine. A is the connection with the cylinder frame. As the griffe rises or falls it will easily be seen that the cylinder will be driven out or in.

The connecting-bar H is in two parts, slotted and bolted together at H to admit of regulating the position of the cylinder.

No. 4 is a motion on a different principle; it is a French motion. It will readily be seen that the cylinder is driven out and in by the toothed wheel, which is wrought by a rack on the slide rod E. This slide rod works outside the framing of the machine, as is common in the French machines. One point must be observed about these motions—viz. that they must have a certain amount of dwell at the bottom of the stroke, or when the cylinder is in. The reason of this dwell will be explained further on, but the method of obtaining it may be given here. In the swan-neck motion (No. 1), any desired dwell can easily be obtained at either top or bottom by the length of the slot that is in a vertical direction, as when the stud is passing through this portion of the slot no motion is given to the cylinder. In the lever motions Nos. 2 and 3, as well as in No. 4, the dwell is got by the levers or arms passing the centres; in Nos. 2 and 4 it is by the lever or arm H passing the back centre, which may be considered as a crank; and in No. 3 it is the short lever C passing the centre that gives the dwell.

Fig. 20 is a view of the interior of a single-acting jacquard machine with the framework removed; only one row of hooks and needles are given, to avoid confusion. The blades or knives of the griffe, with a support running across their centres, are shown at B. A is the face-plate or needle board, sometimes made of iron, but better to be of hard wood. C is the spring-box, the detail of which is given in Fig. 24. E, E^1 are the hooks, and F, F^1 the needles. D is the grating through which the hooks pass, and are supported by it. It will be seen that the hooks and needles are arranged in rows of eight: a 400 machine would have 50 or 51 of these rows in it; 500 machines are usually arranged in rows of 10, and 600 machines in rows of 12. The hooks

Digitized by Google

should be set perfectly upright or vertical, and should be close up against the knives, but not pressing against them. There should be a provision made for shifting both the grating and the knives, so as to admit of both them and the hooks being properly set in relation to each other; but if set correctly by the maker, which they should be, no alteration is necessary. A (Fig. 21) is a side view of four hooks and needles, with the ends of the knives of the griffe shown at *a*, *a*, *a*, *a*.

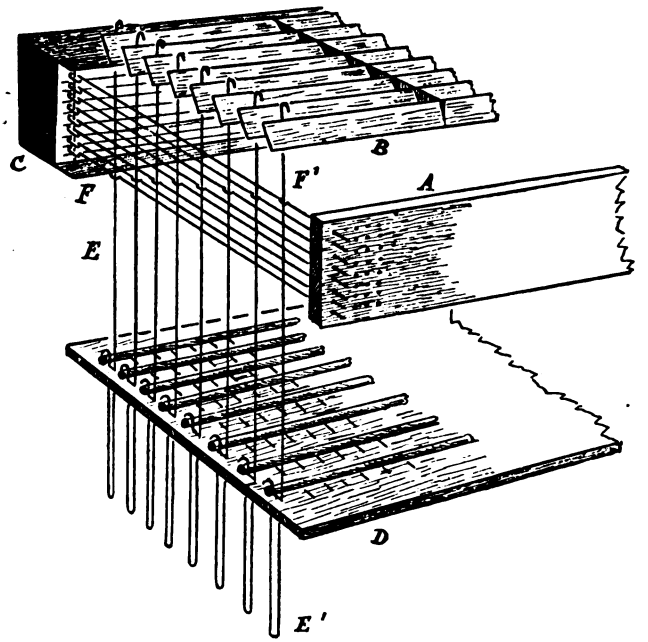


FIG. 20

When the machine is working the needles are acted upon by perforated cards cut from the pattern. Suppose we take plain cloth—that is, a pattern in which each half of the warp, or every alternate thread, is raised and sunk alternately; then, if the first card acts on all the odd numbers of the needles, and the second card on all the even numbers, this repeated would make plain cloth. Whenever a hook of the jacquard is to be raised a hole is cut in the card for the needle connected with that hook, and a card with all the even numbers of holes

Digitized by Google

cut in it will cause the griffe to raise all the even-numbered hooks. Refer to *b* (Fig. 21), where the second and fourth holes are cut in the card. If the card is pressed against the needles, as at *c*, the first and third needles will be pressed back, and will push the first and third hooks back from their position—shown by the dotted lines—to the position in which they are shown in B (Fig. 21); but the second and fourth hooks are not moved, as their needles pass through the holes in the card. If the griffe is now raised, the blades or knives will pass the

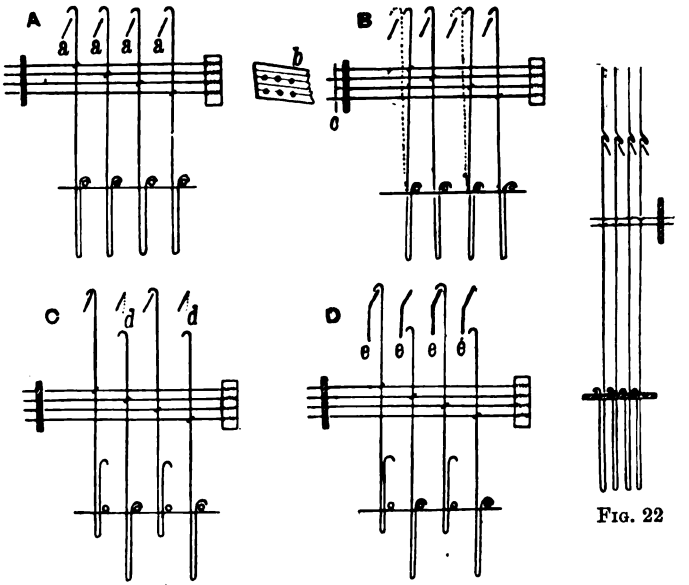


FIG. 21

FIG. 22

first and third hooks, but will lift the second and fourth; and if the odd numbers of holes are cut on the next card, the first and third hooks will be lifted when it is pressed against the needles, as shown at C (Fig. 21), thus making the cross-shed; and this explains the principle of working any pattern by the jacquard without taking into consideration the intricacies of mounting, &c. In C (Fig. 21), it will be seen that if the knives *d*, *d* were upright instead of slanting, they would come down on the heads of the hooks that are under them, but, being

Digitized by Google

slanted, their lower edges pass the heads of the hooks, and press them away as the griffe descends. Sometimes, even with slanting knives, if there is much vibration in the hooks, or if the loom 'bangs off,' some of the hooks are liable to get under the knives and be 'crowned,' or bent down. To avoid this deep blades are often used, principally in double-acting machines, so that the lower edges of the blades will not pass the bottom hook, as shown at D (Fig. 21). This prevents any danger of crowning, but it darkens the machine a little—that is, makes it more difficult to see down into it if any of the wires require to be examined; it also requires the heads of the hooks to be somewhat higher above the heads of the needles than is necessary with the narrow blades. Another principle has been tried—viz. that of making the heads of the hooks as shown in Fig. 22, and using narrow blades. This effects its object well, but there is too much friction of the knives against the hooks, and the latter are liable to wear out too quickly. A good machine with firmly set hooks should work very well without these protections if it is steadily placed above the loom, and it is better not to be resting on the loom framing, if convenient to have it so. It will be seen from the foregoing explanation that the proper time, or, rather, the necessary time, for the cylinder to press against the needles is just after the griffe begins to rise. When the griffe is down the top edges of the knives should be $\frac{3}{16}$in. or $\frac{1}{4}$in. lower than the turned points of the hooks, and before this edge rises up to the hooks those that are not to be lifted should be full back, or the cylinder should be close in, having the front of the head of the hooks $\frac{3}{16}$in. or $\frac{1}{4}$in. behind the blades. The cylinder should have a short dwell in this position; and if it has a longer dwell it may assist to reduce the friction of the heads of the hooks against the knives; but if it has too great a dwell it may have to travel out and in too quickly to make up for the lost time, which will probably not be compensated for by the advantage of the increase in the dwell. Now, when the cylinder is driven with an independent motion, as in Figs. 17 and 18, it is easy to set the eccentric so that it can be brought in at any required time; but when a self-acting motion is used, it is plain that if the cylinder must press against the needles when the blades of the griffe are passing the heads of the hooks in rising,

Digitized by Google

it must also press against them in the same position when the griffe is falling, unless some special escapement motion could be devised to avoid it, and this is where the dwell is required, and where the evil effect of the motion takes place; and it is worse in a double-lift machine with one cylinder, as the heads of the hooks in it are larger, or have a longer turn on them. A little consideration will suffice to show that when the brander or griffe is falling, say, with one-half of the hooks hanging on its knives, and the cylinder is brought in against the needles before the hooks are quite down, as it must be, it will either cause the hooks to be shot off the knives, or will put a considerable strain on them, as well as upon the needles and cards. It is for this reason that these motions are objectionable, particularly in power-loom work, where the speed is high and the hooks are strong. In hand-loom work it is not so objectionable, as there is more spring in the wires, and the heads of the hooks need not be too large, and, besides, the speed is less and the wear and tear not so great; but, even with this, if a hand-loom machine that has been in use for some time be examined, it will be seen that the points of the hooks are considerably worn, and that the edges of the knives are hollowed out like a coarse saw by the friction of the hooks on them. This latter will partly arise from the lifting of the hooks.

In the old Jacquard, given in Figs. 15 and 16, the hooks are shown resting on a perforated board, and it was mentioned that in order to prevent them from turning round a frame lay in the turned-up portion of the hooks. The grating in Fig. 20, through which the turned-up bottoms of the hooks pass, readily accomplishes this object. Sometimes flattened hooks are used, as in c (Fig. 23), with the needles twisted once or twice round the hooks; this makes a firm arrangement, but if anything goes wrong with a hook it is not easy to get it clear of the needle. When the needles were made with a full twist or loop on them, as at B, the same was the case; they are now usually made as at A, and if arranged in the machine as in Fig. 20, there is no danger of the hooks sliding out of the recess in the needle, and if a hook gets bent or broken, it can be taken out and replaced by a new one without disturbing the needles.

Digitized by Google

Fig. 16 shows how the needles press against the springs in the spring-box, which is much the same as that at present in use. Fig. 24 is the present arrangement. No. 1 gives a plan of the end of a needle, B. C C is the horizontal wire which supports it as shown in section at C C in No. 2. D (No. 1) is a section of the vertical wire shown at D D (No. 2), which passes through the loops or eyes on the ends of the needles, and keeps the springs from shooting them too far forward. A (No. 2) is a wire which passes down at the outside of the box over the ends of a row of springs, so that by drawing out this wire any of the springs can be drawn out without taking off the spring-box,

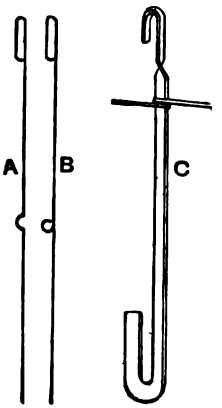


Fig. 23

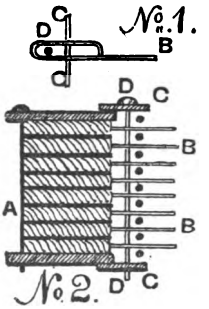


Fig. 24

as the springs pass through the box. The springs should be strong enough to keep the hooks and needles steady, but if unnecessarily strong they give the card and cylinder unnecessary work.

In some machines there is no spring-box. The hooks are made double, as shown in Fig. 25, and rods, as *a*, *a*, run along between the rows of hooks; the spring of the double wire keeps the hooks steady. There is a clap-board used, similar to that in the French draw loom, (Fig. 13), which is pressed against the needles with springs; this board is connected with the face-plate by a bar at each end, forming a frame. The needles do not project much through the face-plate, but when the cylinder is pressed against it, it slides back on the needles, and presses

Digitized by Google

the clap-board back, which also allows those needles to go back which the card presses against. The needles are not looped on the hooks, but have a turned catch in front of them as shown. The bottom of the hook rests on a hole board, C, through which the tail cords pass; and through the hooks at D are wires fixed in a frame which rises and falls when the hooks are raised, and keeps them from turning round, same as explained in Fig. 15. Machines of this description are at present being made in France, and work with a rising and falling shed, which will be hereafter explained (see Fig. 30).

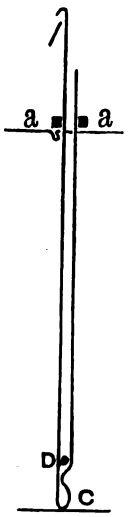


FIG. 25

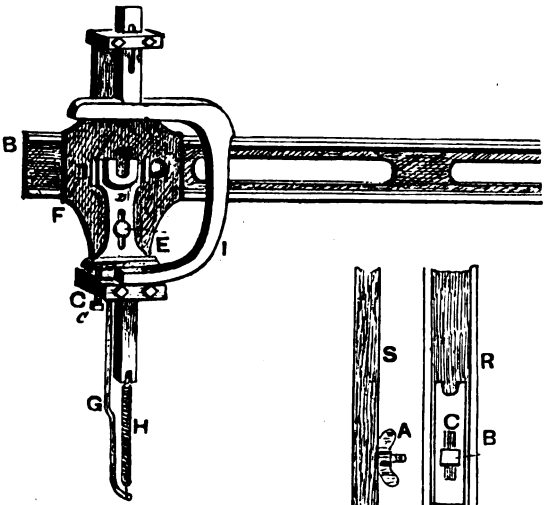


FIG. 26

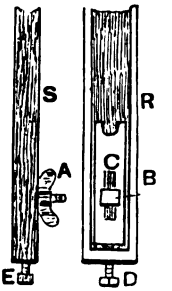


FIG. 27

In working, the card cylinder must be so set that it will come forward fair on the needles—that is, that when it comes forward the points of the needles will enter fair into the centres of the holes in it. For the purpose of setting it there must be provision made in the fittings so that it can be moved laterally or vertically. In the swing motion the frame can be moved laterally by means of the two screw studs on which it hangs. C, Fig. 27, shows the bearing on which the stud of the cylinder revolves. This bearing can be raised up or down in the frame R—a side view of which is given at S—by slackening the

Digitized by Google

bolt B with the wing nut A, and adjusting the bearing with the set screw D or E.

A method commonly adopted by tacklers or tuners to see that the needles are perfectly fair in the centres of the holes in the cylinder, is to rub their fingers on some dirty oil, and touch over the points of the needles with it. They then bring in the cylinder against the needles with a card on it, in which about half of the holes are cut. The points of the needles mark the card where there are no holes, and it can easily be seen whether the mark is in the centre of where a hole should be, or not.

One of the best bearings and attachments for a cylinder with a horizontal slide motion is given in Fig. 26. D is the bearing for the cylinder E, and C the bolts for setting it. F F is the bracket which holds the hammer and bearings, which can be set in position on the slide bar B by the bolt A. I is the hammer held down by the spring H attached to the rod G.

The cards are kept in position on the cylinder by pegs or studs, originally made of wood, and driven into the cylinder. Now they are made of brass, and set in a slotted bracket, so that they can be shifted in order to have the holes in the cards corresponding exactly with those in the cylinder. The pegs should also be set on springs, so that if a card gets off them, and between them and the needle plate, they will yield or sink into the cylinder, and not break the card. In all good machines they are made in this way.

When the motion for driving the cylinder is not fitted with an escapement for the purpose of turning back the cards, it is necessary for the convenience of the weaver to have a motion on the machine for the purpose.

Figs. 28 and 29 show two varieties of these motions. A is the cylinder head; C, the catch for reversing the cylinder; F, the spring for returning the catch to its position; E, a cord which hangs down, with a knob on the end of it, in a convenient position for the weaver to catch and work the motion. In Fig. 28 the motion is on the opposite side of the machine to the shears, but might be on either side, and the weaver has to raise the shears to turn the cylinder, which she can

Digitized by Google

easily do by catching the knob for raising the shears in one hand, and working the reversing motion with the other. The cylinder must be full out for this motion to turn it properly, and this prevents the weaver from tearing the cards on the needles, as she might easily do by trying to turn the cylinder when it is too close in. In Fig. 29, B is the shears for turning the cylinder, and both it and the pushing catch, C, pass through a keeper or bracket, D, on the side of the machine. There is a rise on C a little back from the point, and when the cord E is pulled down C is shot forward by the lever, which has its fulcrum at G, and in going forward the rise on it comes into contact with the bend in the shears, and raises them up so that it can turn the cylinder when it catches on the head of it. Both these are good and convenient motions. For the latter the cylinder should be about half-way out when the cards are being turned back.

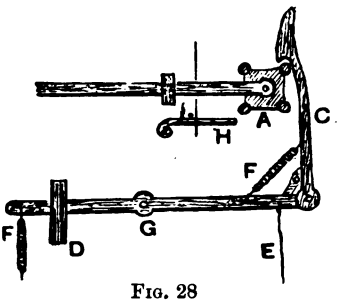


FIG. 28

Sometimes the cylinder may not be completely turned by the shears when the machine is working, by reason of the cards catching, or if the shears are too long, or it may arise from other causes. In this case the cylinder would come in with one corner against the needles, and be pressed heavily against the needle plate. Some of the levers would probably be broken, or the cylinder might be shot out of its bearings and fall, breaking the yarn, or perhaps injuring the weaver. To avoid this, small snecks, as at H, Figs. 28 and 29, are set so that when the cylinder is square it will pass over them ; but if turned angularly its lower edge will catch on the point of the sneck, as the cylinder is coming in, and turn it square. The sneck is held up

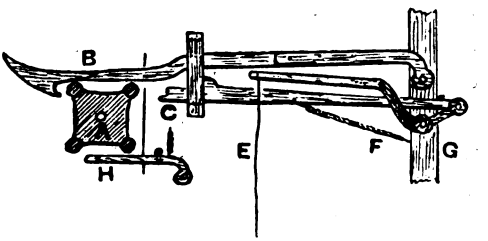


FIG. 29

Digitized by Google

with a spring so as to allow the cylinder in turning to depress it. Sometimes the sneck, as at H, is liable to cause broken shots; for if the weaver turns back the loom, and the cylinder moves out sufficiently far to be turned to its angular position, and remains there, it will, in coming in, be turned square by the sneck, and thus a card would be passed over without a pick being put in for it. This is sometimes remedied by putting the sneck above the cylinder, instead of below it, which would turn it the reverse way; but this might come wrong at other times. The better plan is to keep it below, and let the weaver get to understand what she is doing, as it is not very difficult to learn.

The setting of a jacquard machine for working consists in adjusting the cylinder motion so as to bring in the cylinder at the proper time, and press it sufficiently close against the face-plate to keep the hooks clear of the knives of the griffe, without pressing it too close; and regulating the lifting of the griffe to suit the time for shedding, and to give the size of shed required. The shed must be open for the shuttle to pass through; the time for picking is when the cranks of the crank-shaft of the loom are at the bottom centre, therefore the shed should be almost fully open at this time. The lifting of the griffe can be made a little earlier or later to suit circumstances, but very little alteration can be made, as it takes a full revolution of the crank to raise and lower the griffe. Further consideration will be given to jacquard shedding after double-acting machines have been explained.

The motion for working the cylinder, if an independent one, should be rigid and strong; for if there is any spring in it, though the cylinder may be brought in sufficiently close when there is much cutting on the card, if a blank card or one with very little cutting on it comes on, the extra pressure on the needles, especially with a large machine, may prevent it from getting in sufficiently close to clear the hooks from the griffe. With self-acting motions there may sometimes be some trouble in this way, as the weight of the griffe may not be sufficient to press in the cylinder. In this case the griffe may be weighted, or may be allowed to drop quicker, or the lifting rod and lever may be made to assist in pressing it down somewhat.

Before starting the machine the needles should be examined to see

Digitized by Google

that they are all free, and that they will spring out easily after being pressed back. The griffe should be perfectly horizontal and all the knives properly set; the holes in the cards and cylinder should exactly correspond, and when the cylinder comes in the needles should be fair in the centre of the holes; if not, the cylinder must be set as described (see description of Figs. 26 and 27).

The driving of heavy single-acting jacquards will be further considered under Twilling Jacquards.

When any of the hooks or needles in a jacquard get bent or broken, they can easily be straightened, or taken out and replaced by others. By putting a thin blade of iron or wood down through the needles alongside of the hook to be replaced, and springing open the passage, the old hook may be drawn out and a new one put into its place. The tail cord must, of course, be cut off the bottom of the hook, and a new one tied on. For changing a needle take off the spring-box and draw up the pin which fastens the row of needles at the back; then the needles in this row may be taken out till the defective one is reached, and the row made up again; or, the old one may be renewed without taking any of the others out. A flat blade is used to slide through the hooks and keep clear the place for the needle to be put in.

Card Frames.—The cards for jacquard work are usually hung on a frame as o, Fig. 18, wires sufficiently long to catch on both sides of the frame being tied to the lacing of the cards. The number of cards between each wire may vary to suit the space and the quantity of cards. Sixteen to twenty suit very well, the former for small and the latter for larger sets, and for very small sets twelve or fourteen might be more convenient. The frame may be made of round iron rod, or of flat or bar iron, and should be of the shape shown in the sketch, and not semi-circular, as is usually the case, which presses the cards together in the centre; almost flat at the bottom, with just enough of a slope to make the cards slide back, is much the best. Of course, for a few cards it does not matter much what shape it is. P (Fig. 18) is the frame for the rollers over which the cards travel to the cylinder. They should be so sloped as to make the cards travel up nicely with sufficient drag on them, and not too much; on this depends a good deal the

Digitized by Google

proper working of the cards, particularly when the machine is running at a high speed, and when springs are not used to steady them on the cylinder. It is usual to have a roller below the cylinder, attached to the frame which holds the cylinder, and the falling cards pass over it. Sometimes the cards, when falling, are shaken, so that some of the wires may not catch on the frame, but pass through it, or the ends of some of the wires may be bent and cause the same result; if the weaver neglects to put these up on the frame before the cards work round to those that have fallen, the wire may catch on it and prevent the cylinder from turning, or, perhaps, pull it out. Sometimes a crank or bend is made in the frame at the outer end, so that the wires can pass up through it without catching. The frame should just be sufficiently wide to enable the cards to pass freely through it with, say, one-eighth of an inch clearance at each side; then, if three or four inches at the outer end is cranked, or set out so as to be a little wider between the two bars than the length of the wires, they will pass up through without catching. Frames of the shape described are, of course, only suitable when the cards are to be wrought forwards—that is, with the cards falling between the cylinder and the machine; but if they require to be wrought both backwards and forwards, as is sometimes the case, the card frame must be made more of a semicircular shape, and the rollers must be set so as to give a sufficient fall to the cards, and keep them firm on the cylinder.

As has already been said, the nature of the shedding of a single-acting jacquard is objectionable for speed in working, for ease on the yarn, and for heavy work, or for well-covered work. The jacquard harness is levelled so that the yarn is all sunk, and the shed is entirely a rising one; it can easily be understood that when the griffe rises to open one shed, it must again fall before it can begin to rise to form the next shed. Now, mostly all tappet motions, and a great many dobbies or shedding motions, either have the yarn springing up and down from the centre, or have one portion rising and the other portion falling at the same time, so that in them the second shed could be open at the same time that the griffe in the single-acting jacquard had fallen to begin to rise the second shed; but as this would be much too soon,

Digitized by Google

they can take a greater time to accomplish the work, and thus have a much slower and steadier motion.

It has been attempted to work the single-acting jacquard on the centre-shedding principle, and machines are at present being made in France of this class. It is only necessary to let the board on which the upright hooks rest fall at the same time that the griffe is rising in order to accomplish what is required, and the method of working is good, and would suit well in dobbies where the heddles can be taken firmly down. But in the jacquard the drawback is in the harness:

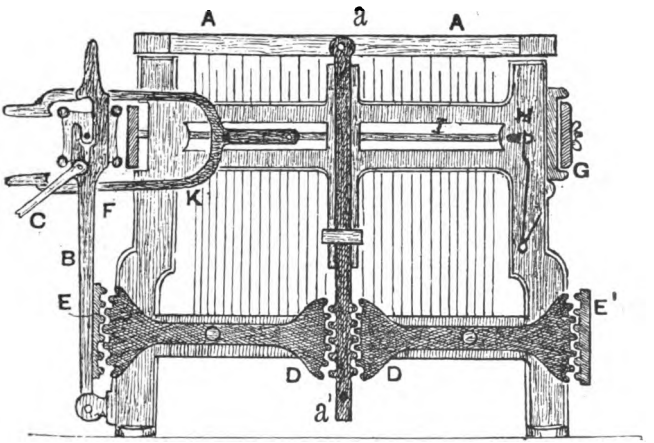


FIG. 30

the constant rising and falling causes a vibration in it, and does not admit of nearly so firm work as when the rising shed alone is used.

One of these machines is shown in Fig. 30; they are a very compact and neatly made machine, and contain a much greater number of hooks than one of the English machines. Fig. 26 gives one of the hooks in this machine, and the way in which it acts is there explained. It will be seen that the frame for the cylinder is inverted; F is the face-plate or needle board as it rests when the cylinder is not pressing against it, being held in this position by the spring H pressing on a stud on the bar I, which extends from the face-plate to the clap-board G. The cylinder frame is driven by a rod, C, connected with a lever. E,

Digitized by Google

E[1] are two racks on the ends of the hole board on which the hooks rest, and D, D are two levers with quadrant racks on each end, which work into the racks E and E[1], and also into the racks on the slide bar a^1. This slide bar is fastened to the griffe A A, which is raised by a connecting-rod from a horizontal lever to the stud *a*. As the griffe is raised one end of the racked levers, D, is also raised, and the other end sinks, taking down the hole board by pressing on the racks E and E[1]. The hole board is fixed so that it will easily slide up and down. If the griffe is raised two inches, the hole board falls rather more than one inch.

This is a very good motion, perhaps could not be surpassed for the purpose, but, as I said before, has the objection which all similar contrivances for the purpose must have—viz., causing too much vibration in the harness. All the cords constantly dancing up and down causes an unsteadiness and swinging that is not to be found in the ordinary jacquard harness. These machines have sixteen rows of needles in them, which are much closer set together than those in this country, and give a large number of hooks in a small-sized machine, which is a great advantage when extensive patterns are required. In this machine the half-card contains 440 holes, or 880 holes to the full or double card. The pitch is shown at A, Fig. 31, which represents the end of one of these cards, and a piece of one of the usual 8-row cards as here used is shown at B for contrast, the black dots in both cases representing holes.

These machines have not been adopted here, nor is it likely that they will be, although they are said to work well in France. They have been tried here, and the difficulty lay in setting the cards properly so as to act correctly on the needles, and keeping them so for any length of time. The least contraction or expansion of the paper, or any irregularity in the cutting, any bend in the points of the needles, or, in fact, anything but perfect exactness, interferes with the working: there is too great compactness in the machine, and in the ordinary wear and tear of work a little allowance is necessary for success. Considering that these are working, it would appear that the pitch and size of the holes in our cards are unnecessarily large, except where

Digitized by Google

small machines answer and saving of space is no consideration ; in that case the extra paper required for the cards might be more than compensated for by the strength of the machine, and the saving of trouble in attending to it.

The method already mentioned of getting over the disadvantage of the single-acting jacquard is not likely to gain general favour, and is not required, as it is surpassed by the double-acting jacquard, or that in which there are two griffes, one rising when the other is falling, forming a counterpoise as well, making the shed more after the

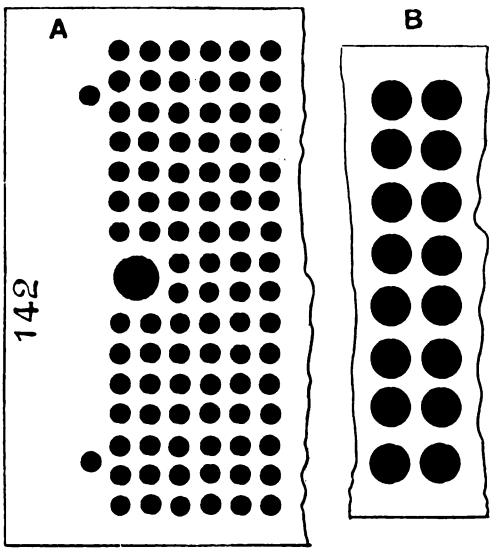


FIG. 31

principle of ordinary tappet shedding. In a loom fitted with a single-acting jacquard, if there is much weight to be lifted, it will turn round the loom so that it will rest in no position but with the griffe down, and this is frequently of so much annoyance to the weaver as to necessitate a counterpoise being applied to balance it. Sometimes weights are used, and sometimes springs. With the double-acting lift nothing is required, and this was first used in Cross's counterpoise harness (about 1816).

In the double-lift machine there are double the number of hooks

Digitized by Google

that there would be in a single-lift machine of the same size, but the same number of needles; each needle is connected with two hooks, as shown in Fig. 32, which gives one row of hooks and needles for an 8-row or 400 machine. There are two griffes, one working above the other, as shown at A and B, Fig. 33. E, E is the top griffe in both; C, C is the bottom griffe, shown complete at A, but at B the side-bar of the frame is omitted, leaving only the knives to show how they fall in between those of the bottom griffe; D, D^1 are the two slide rods or spindles which keep the griffes steady in their traverse. There must

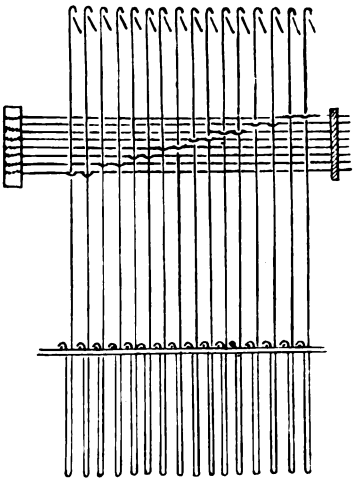


Fig. 32

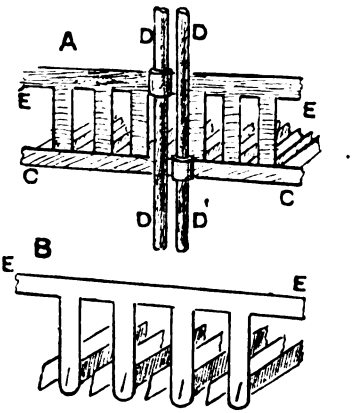


Fig. 33

be a sufficient space between the frame C of the lower griffe and that of the upper griffe, E, to allow of the required draw being given to form the sheds without them coming into contact. In these machines, although there are 16 hooks in the row, they only act as eight, so far as forming the pattern is concerned, as two hooks are governed by one needle; the additional hooks are solely for the purpose of obtaining a rising and falling shed. Each pair of hooks is connected together at the bottom by a piece of strong cotton cord, called the tail cord or tug cord, as shown in Fig. 35. The griffes are raised by two levers arranged side by side, and similar to the one shown in Fig. 17. These

Digitized by Google

levers are wrought by rods connecting them to a double crank, or sometimes to a tappet, on the tappet shaft of the loom. The common form of crank is shown at A, Fig. 34. B is the tappet shaft, and on the end of it is fastened a disc. A second disc, which carries the double crank, G, is bolted against this one, and can be shifted to whatever position is required to give the tread at the correct time. The cylinder is driven from an eccentric on the crank-shaft as before described. One of the griffes rises for each shot, the other falling at the same time; but the cylinder must come in for every shot, and it is here that the principal fault in this machine lies. Not only has the cylinder to travel at a high speed, but when one griffe is at its highest position, it has to press against the needles, so as to clear away

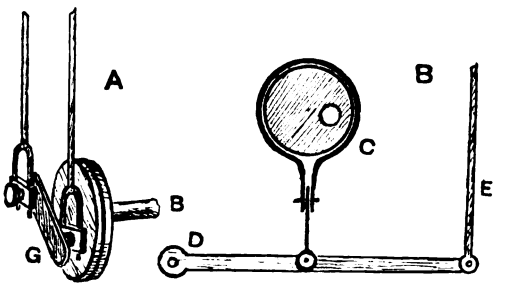


FIG. 34

those hooks that are not to be lifted by the lower griffe, which should now be beginning to rise; and in consequence of the needles being attached to two hooks, one belonging to the upper griffe, and the other to the lower one, it follows that those needles that are pressed in by the cards have to spring back the hooks connected with them that are raised by the upper griffe, which is a severe strain on both needles and cards. To prevent the hooks being pushed off the upper griffe, they must have larger turns on them than would otherwise be necessary.

Fig. 35 shows how the raised hooks can be allowed to yield to the pressure of the needles. A, B, C, D are four hooks connected with two needles, 1 and 2. When the hook A is raised, if B, which raises the same warp—as will be seen by the connection of the tail cords with

Digitized by Google

the harness at E—is not to be raised for the next shot, the needle 1 is pressed back by the card, and presses the hook B back from its knife as shown, the dotted line being its original position; the A hook, being connected with the same needle, must also be sprung back, but its head cannot get back, as it is held on the blade of the griffe, so that the wire would require to spring, if some escape were not made for it. The lower ends of the hooks are made V-shape in the grating, so that when raised, if pressed on by the needles, they can move forward as shown, the dotted line showing the original position of the hook A. When the hooks fall, they fill the slots in the grating, and are thus kept steady. G shows the tail cords as connected with the harness when both hooks are down; E shows them when one hook is up and the other down, and if the hook B was raised for the next shot, the tail cord on it would be tightening up as that on A would be falling, and the harness attached to them would be caught up a second time from the middle position, thus forming centre shedding with any portion of the harness that is raised several times in succession. With plain-texture cards the upper and lower portions of the shed would pass each other in the centre when the sheds are being reversed, all the even numbers of hooks being on one griffe, and all the odd numbers on the other.

The tail cord consists of two pieces of cotton cord, one fastened to each hook of a pair, then the two ends are together tied to the bunch of neck twines that are to hang from these hooks, as shown in Fig. 35, and at A, Fig. 36. When one hook is raised and the tail cord drawn up with it, the other portion of the tail cord, which is tied to the other hook, is slackened—as shown at A, Fig. 36—which causes a certain amount of friction on them. Also, when one hook of the pair is falling with the descending griffe, and the other hook rising, the pluck occasioned thereby on the cords, when the hooks are passing at the centre, has a tendency to wear and break them. Although this does not occur when the lingoes are of a moderate weight (18 to 25 per lb.), and when only a few neck twines are tied to each tail, yet when a large number of neck twines (say 20) are tied to each tail, with weighty lingoes, as may frequently be the case in weaving small patterns on

Digitized by Google

woollen and worsted goods, the breakage of the tail cords is a common source of complaint, which not only gives the trouble of renewing them, but is liable to cause defects in the cloth, by the weaver not observing the breakage for some time, as one hook of the pair may be

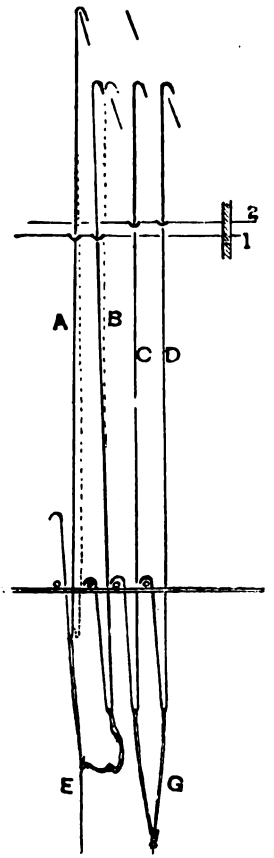


Fig. 35

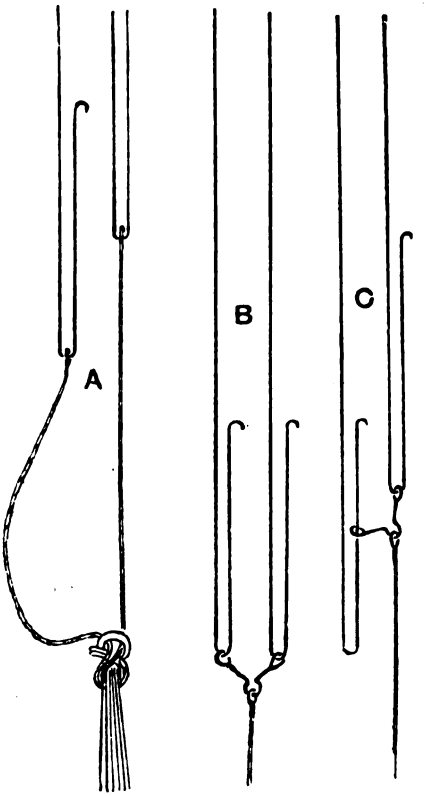


Fig. 36

raising the neck twines—that is, in case of the tail cord to only one of the hooks breaking. To remedy this Messrs. Hancock, Rennie, and Hudson have this year (1890) introduced a patent link connection for joining the tail to the hooks, which only requires one cord, or double cord, to be used, instead of two as before. This is shown in Fig. 36 at

Digitized by Google

B. When one hook is raised and the other down, the link is in the position shown at C. The old method is shown at A. When one hook is rising and the other falling, the partial turning of the link causes a loss of time equal to about a quarter of an inch of lift, and this eases the sudden pluck on the tail cord. When both hooks are down there is also a loss of a quarter of an inch in the lift when one hook begins to rise, caused by the turning of the link.

This patent works very well, but, except when heavy weights are

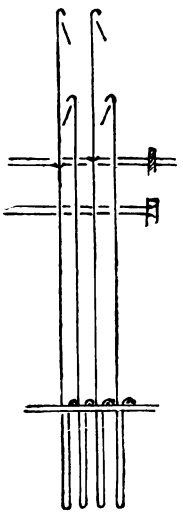


FIG. 37

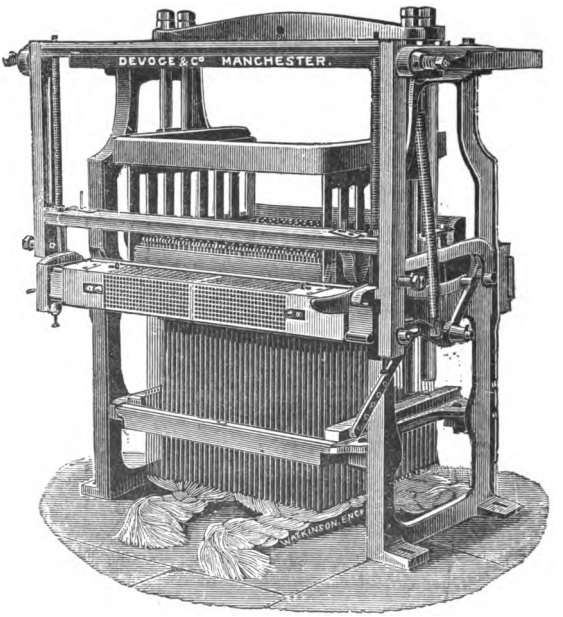


FIG. 38

on the hooks, is not likely to supersede the older methods. These links are fitted to machines by makers in Manchester and Bradford.

Before the form of griffe shown in Fig. 33 was adopted the hooks were made of two heights, as shown in Fig. 37, and one griffe wrought above the other, instead of the one set of blades or knives passing through each other; but this method was given up on account of the vibration of the long hooks, which made it uncertain whether they would remain on the knives or keep clear of them when required.

Digitized by Google

Fig. 37 shows this arrangement of hooks for a double-cylinder machine; for a single-cylinder machine with two griffes the heights of the hooks would be similar, but the heads would all be turned in the same direction, and the knives sloped to suit this, as is done when the hooks are all of the one height; each needle would be connected to a short hook and a long one. The short hooks give much more certain work, and can have the cylinder set so as to press back the hooks only as much as is required, whereas with long and short hooks allowance had to be made for the uncertainty of the vibration and the difference in the length of the two sets of hooks.

Fig. 38 is a view of one of the best makes of double-lift jacquards with a single cylinder.

The machine is made by Devoge & Co., of Manchester, but is not here given as being specially recommended in preference to others; it is only given as an illustration. Those wanting to buy a machine had better see what are in the market, and select what they consider most suitable to their work and price. This applies to all the machinery given in these articles. There is rarely a best machine for all purposes.

These machines are much in use, and can be run at a high speed, say 160, or even 180, and by many are preferred to the double-cylinder machines, as there is no danger of one cylinder getting before the other, and the cards are all laced in one set; besides, it may be more convenient for working, as some arrange their machines so that the cards for one loom hang to the back, and those of the next to the front. When these machines are to work at a high speed, the slide-motion cylinder will probably be found the most satisfactory. Fig. 39 illustrates one of these machines with slide cylinder motion and the

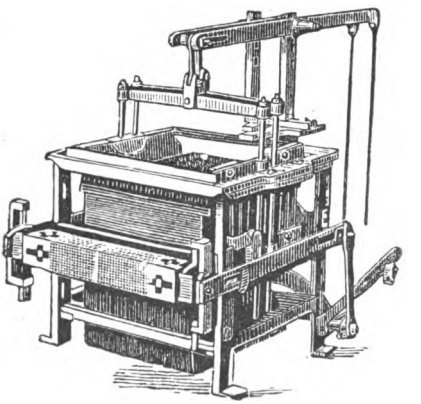


FIG. 39

Digitized by Google

levers for driving it, the connections being as before given. The levers for raising the griffes are also shown, but here go to the back, whereas they are usually at the side.

The most perfect jacquard machine in the market is undoubtedly the

DOUBLE-ACTING JACQUARD WITH TWO CYLINDERS

The only drawback to this machine is, except what may be said against the method of shedding, the liability of one cylinder to be turned out

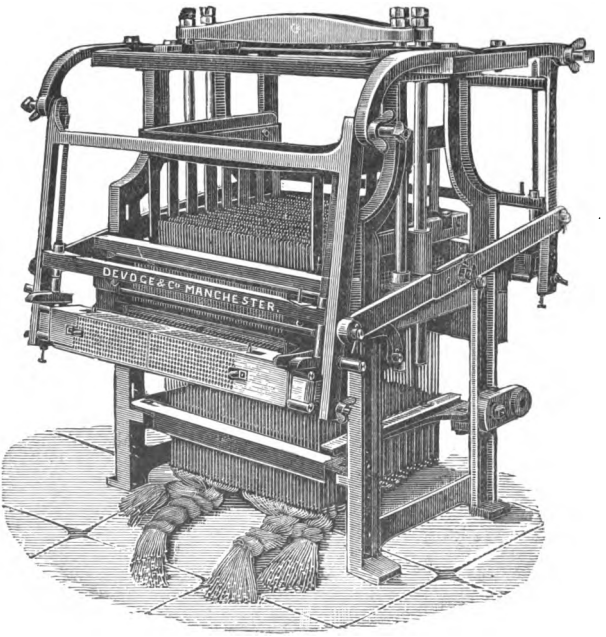


FIG. 40

of time, or get a shot or two before the other, so as to put the cards off their proper rotation ; but this is only a difficulty in the hands of inexperienced weavers ; nevertheless it exists. The effect will be to spoil the pattern on the cloth, giving the twill a mixed or broken-up appearance. There are motions in use for stopping the loom, unless the cards come in rotation, but many prefer to work without them. Fig. 40 is a view of a two-cylinder machine made by Messrs. Devoge & Co., with

Digitized by Google

swing-motion cylinders, which are, perhaps, the best motions for these machines, as they do not require to travel quickly. A very good speed for the machines to work at is 160 to 180 or 200 picks per minute, and the cylinders would only travel at half this speed. The cylinders should be driven by an eccentric, same as given for the single-acting machines, but instead of being on the crank shaft, it should be on the tappet shaft, which runs at half the speed; and as the two cylinder frames are connected together, when the one is going out the other is coming in, so that one eccentric making a revolution for two beats of the slay

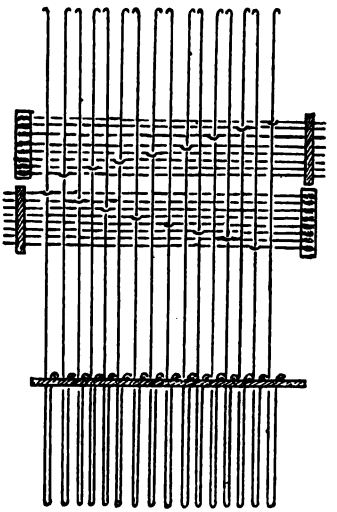


FIG. 41

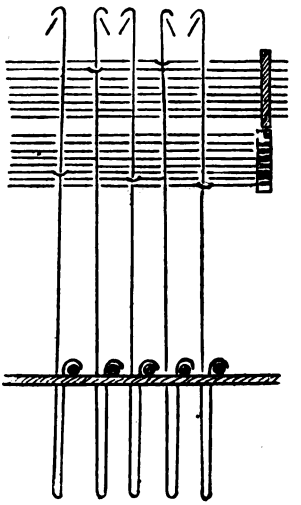


FIG. 42

will drive both cylinders. Sometimes the eccentric is on the tappet shaft, inside the framing of the loom, and is connected with the top lever, as shown in Fig. 34 (B). C is the eccentric, D the fulcrum of a short lever attached to it, and E the upright rod attached to an arm or lever on a horizontal shaft supported by the machine, or on the top of the loom. A lever from this shaft on each side of the machine drives the cylinders. The eccentric may be on the end of the tappet shaft, same as it is shown on the crank shaft in Fig. 18; but it might not always be convenient to have it here, and perhaps the most

Digitized by Google

desirable way to have it at any time is to have a pinion on the crank shaft with, say, twenty teeth in it, and a stud wheel alongside with forty teeth gearing into it. On this stud the eccentric can be fixed, and will give a very steady and convenient method of driving. The griffes are raised in the same way as for the double-lift jacquard with one cylinder. (See Fig. 34 (A)).

Fig. 41 shows the arrangement of a row of hooks and needles for a double-cylinder machine. The top needle of the upper set and the bottom needle of the under set are attached to two adjoining hooks, which are connected together with the same tail cord. This arrangement is to enable the cards when working at both sides to act on the correct hooks, which will be better understood by referring to the description of lacing cards for these machines. In Fig. 41 it will be observed that all the hooks are vertical. Sometimes the hooks are slanted a little, as in Fig. 42, to give more space between the hooks at the top, without increasing the width of the machine, and there is a slight difference in the arrangement of the hooks and needles, as is shown. Both work very well.

Fig. 43 shows a two-cylinder machine, by Messrs. Devoge & Co., with a slide motion for the cylinders, which would be driven in the same way as the swing motion.

It has been said that the shedding of a single-acting jacquard is of the worst description for general weaving. That of the double-acting machine is by no means perfect either; some prefer the single- to the double-acting for making fine damask. Jacquard shedding cannot be regulated in the same way as tappets or the best shedding motions can. In tappets the dwell can be regulated to suit the cloth required, and the time of the shedding can be made early or late as desired. In jacquards this cannot be done to anything like the same extent. The shed must always be open in time for the pick, and the pick should begin when the cranks are about the bottom centre, a little earlier or later, as desired. The jacquard must have the shed open at this time, and must keep it open till the shuttle passes through.

It has been said that the usual method of raising the griffe or griffes is by a crank (or a stud in the wheel, which is practically a

Digitized by Google

crank) on the crank shaft for a single-acting machine, and by a double crank on the tappet shaft for a double-acting machine. Now, a crank gives a continuous eccentric motion with a slight dwell when it is at both top and bottom centres. Sometimes a tappet is used to raise the griffes instead of a crank, and of course any required dwell can be made on a tappet; but then it must suit the jacquard, and the greater the dwell, the less time is occupied in the rising and falling of the

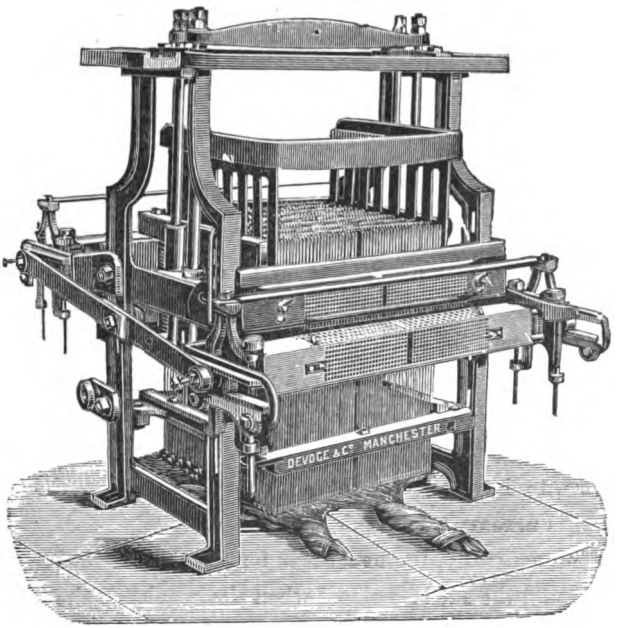


FIG. 43

harness. If the harness is plucked up or dropped down too quickly, the result is a dancing or unsteadiness of the cords, and in a double-lift machine there will be a considerable plucking when the hooks that are rising take up the cords that are falling. In order to keep the cords as steady and free from vibration as possible, if there is any swinging in the weights or lingoes, it is a common practice to put a frame round these, with wires run through it at whatever distance apart is thought desirable, so as to partition them off in bunches and keep them from swaying about.

Digitized by Google

The smoother and slower the harness can be raised and lowered, the better. Therefore, to get a high working speed, the time or the portion of a revolution of the crank shaft given to the rise and fall must be as great as possible, so that very little could be gained by using a tappet. If a tappet is to be used, a box tappet will be required, or is more satisfactory for a single-acting machine, in order to make the griffe in falling follow the tappet and avoid any plucking or jerking; sometimes a fork lever, with the tappet or wiper working between the prongs of the fork, is used for the same purpose. For a double-acting machine double wiper tappets, acting on levers or treadles, are sometimes used, the griffes falling of their own weight; the tappets are nearly round eccentrics, or like plain tappets with a very short dwell, not more than one-fourth of a revolution of the crank shaft. It may therefore be considered that the harness should always be moving either up or down, with a small pause when the griffes are at the top and bottom, to admit of an easy turn and to allow the shuttle time for its passage through the shed. With the crank drive the shed will require to be opened a little wider than if the dwell was as great as it should be, especially in wide looms, in order to let the shuttle get through freely; but it would be more desirable, and a saving of strain on the yarn, to have the dwell greater, and not open the shed any wider than is necessary to admit the shuttle.

Speaking generally, the usual rule for the time of shedding may be said to be to let the shed be closed when the cranks of the loom are at the top centre, or perhaps one-sixteenth of a revolution farther forward, and let the shed be full open when the cranks are about the bottom centre. It therefore follows that the single-acting jacquard must open the shed in a little less than half a revolution of the crank shaft, and close it in the same time; but the double-acting machine takes nearly a full revolution (three-quarters, or a little more, should do) to either rise or let fall one of the griffes. It will be evident that there is a considerable difference in the nature of the shedding. A single-acting machine requires the weft to be beaten up on a closed shed (the time of the crank in coming from the top to the front centre being taken up with rising the griffe from the bottom up to catch the hooks), whereas in a

Digitized by Google

double-acting machine the case is different; though the shed is closed at the same place, or in the same position of the cranks, the griffes are in an entirely different position. The closed shed with the single-acting jacquard is when the griffe is down, but with the double-acting machine it is when the two griffes are on a level—that is, halfway up. Of course, more or less of the yarn may be at the bottom position, so that there may be no closed shed, or in no position of the griffes may the yarn be all on a level, unless none of the hooks are on either of the griffes, or if one griffe has all the hooks on it. When the single-acting machine begins to open the shed, the driving-crank of the griffe is upright or at the top centre, and in the position to give the slowest motion to the griffe; whereas for the double machine the lifting cranks are horizontal when the shed is closed, and in the position to give the griffes the quickest motion; therefore, when the lay gets to the fell of the cloth in a single-acting machine, the shed is still close, whereas with a double-acting machine it is fully half open. From this it follows that, to get a close covered cloth, the double-acting machine is the better, as the weft is beaten up in a crossed shed; but to get a clean-surfaced fabric, with the weft lying straight between the two portions of the warp, the single-acting jacquard is better. It is for this reason that the single-acting machine is preferred by many workmen for making fine damask, which does not require much covering to give it a good appearance, and there is less chance of having cut weft and of looping when striking on the open shed. Of course the weft may be cut in a hard fabric by the reed having to strike too heavily against it, and in this case striking on a crossed shed might prevent the cutting, by the weft going on easier.

In hand-loom linen damask the shot is struck up when the shed is about half closed; the warp is held so firm in the loom that there is no spring in it, and the weft does not rebound. A cleaner surface is thus made on the cloth than if the weft was struck up in a closed or cross shed.

In a single-acting machine the faults in the cloth are more readily seen than with a double-acting one, as, in case of a hook missing the knife, in a single machine it would show in a short time, whereas in

Digitized by Google

a double-lift machine one hook of the pair might be missing the knife and the other taking it, so that it might be some time before it would be observed. One of the tail cords breaking might have a similar effect.

The foregoing gives a general description of working the jacquard; but no hard-and-fast lines can be laid down—a little variation may be necessary at any time, to suit circumstances and the class of work.

JACQUARD STOP MOTION

When working with two cylinders, one may happen to be turned at a time when it should not, and thus put the cards out of rotation. Many attempts have been made to overcome this difficulty by stopping the loom when the cards get out of the proper order, but none of the methods adopted have ever gained much favour. Recently a new motion has been patented, and is being applied to machines by Messrs. Devoge & Co., of Manchester. It is called the 'Devoge jacquard stop motion.'

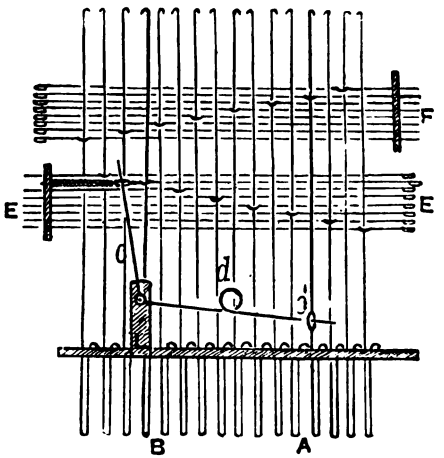


FIG. 44

Fig. 44 shows how it may be applied to a machine. The hooks A and B and the needles E and F are those here used to work the motion. They may be at either side of the machine, but should be at the side of the belt handle. One hook must belong to the front cylinder needles, and the other to the back ones. The hook A requires a lingo attached to it to draw it down after being lifted. The hook B is attached to a lever connected to the side of the loom, so that when one end is raised a hammer on the other end pushes off the belt handle (a lever and bracket are supplied for the purpose). C C^1 is a wire

Digitized by Google

bell-crank lever with a turn or loop on it at D to act as a spring. The fulcrum is at L, on a piece of iron bolted to the edge of the machine; the lower end of this lever passes through an eye in the hook A at C^1, and the upper end passes through an eye in the needle E. There is a spring on the point of the needle E, between the face-plate and the eye, which the lever goes through, and which holds the needle back as shown.

Each time the hook A is raised the lever presses forward the needle E, and with it the hook B, which would then be raised by the lower griffe, unless the card pressed the needle back again and pushed it off. Thus, by having a hole cut in the cards for the needle F, and none for the needle E, the hook B would never be raised; but if a hole is cut for E in a card following one in which a hole was cut for F, the hook B would be raised and the loom stopped. It is, therefore, only necessary to arrange the cutting of the cards to allow the loom to work when they are following each other in rotation; but as soon as one card gets out of order the loom should be stopped, though, perhaps, not till it has run for a few shots. Thus—

Number of cards—

1	3	5	7	9	11
●	·	·	·	●	●

Cut the large dots for the needle E.

2	4	6	8	13	12
●	●	●	·	·	·

Cut the large dots for the needle F.

This gives a repeat of twelve cards; but any number to suit may be used. Thus—

Number of cards—

1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15
●	·	·	·	●	●	●	●

Cut the large dots for the needle E.

Digitized by Google

Number of cards—

2	4	6	8	10	12	14	16
●	●	●	·	·	·	·	·

Cut the large dots for the needle F.

This gives a repeat of sixteen cards. The even numbers of cards go to the front or top cylinder, and the odd numbers to the low cylinder, and it may be seen that a hole in an even-numbered card following one in an odd-numbered card will not stop the loom; but a hole in an odd number following one in an even number will stop the loom, as it is the hook B rising after A that stops it; therefore any suitable rotation of cutting may be adopted, and the stoppage can take place either at short or long intervals, as desired, the principle being to raise the hook A two or three times, and push the hook B back again by having no hole cut for the needle E. Then leave A down for three or four shots, and cut holes for E, which have no effect unless the cards get out of rotation, and one of those with a hole cut to raise the hook A comes before one with a hole cut for the needle E, when B will be raised and the loom stopped. This is a good arrangement, and works very well.

Another motion for a similar purpose, invented by the writer, is shown in Fig. 45. It is based on the following principle: Suppose a cord is taken from any two hooks of the jacquard, and passed round a pulley on the 'hound tail' or long lever of the weft fork motion; if the cord is left slack, so that raising one of the hooks will just tighten it, then raising both hooks together will lift the lever, and can be made to stop the loom. The difficulty to be got over is that one of the hooks must belong to one griffe, and the other to the other one, in order to make the motion act with the two sets of cards. As the two griffes pass each other at the centre, or at the half-lift, this must be taken as the full lift, the cord must be stopped here, and not drawn any farther; for the remaining portion of the lift the hooks must draw a spring. This can be easily arranged by having loops on the cord passing round wires in the cumber board, or by having the two ends of the cord

Digitized by Google

passing through a small hole board, and having knots or beads on them, beneath it. Other methods may also be adopted.

One of the most desirable arrangements is shown in the figure: A, A are the two hooks; B, B are two small springs by which the two levers, C, C are attached to the hooks with cords; D is the frame for holding the levers, and is fastened to the top rail of the loom, under the jacquard, or in any convenient place. It will be observed that the front bar of the frame passes above the levers, so that it will prevent them rising above the half-draw of the hooks, in which position they are shown. E, E are two cords connected with a jack or tumbler, F, on the end of a bell-crank lever, G H L, having its fulcrum at H, which may be on the same stud as the weft fork lever, or in any convenient place.

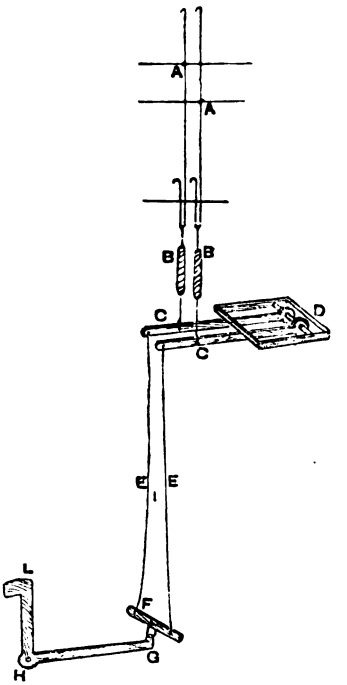


Fig. 45

The weight of F and G keeps the cords in tension, and the point L of the lever is set behind the lever on the loom which carries the weft fork, at such a distance from it that when one of the cords E is drawn it does not act on it; but when both hooks are raised, drawing up the two cords, the point L of the lever presses against the weft fork lever, pushing off the belt handle and stopping the loom.

The lever G H L may act directly on the belt handle, if desired; in this case it would be fixed outside the loom framing. The cards are cut on the same principle as for the last motion, but the same holes will do in both sets of cards, as the two needles are acted upon by the same number of holes in both back and front sets; that is, for two hooks coming beside each other.

Digitized by Google

The following order of cutting will answer :—

Number of cards—

1	3	5	7	2	4	6	8
●	●	·	·	·	·	●	●

Cut the large dots on the number of cards given, and of course they must be cut to suit the needles connected with the hooks used.

The above gives a continuous working of the motion, but it would be sufficient for it to work at intervals having 8 or 10 shots between them, as—

Number of cards—

1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	2	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20
●	●	·	·	·	·	·	·	·	·	·	·	●	●	·	·	·	●	●	·

This will not allow the loom to run for more than 20 shots after the cards get out of order.

Some other motions are in use, but these are simpler.

Before describing twilling machines or any special make of jacquards, it may perhaps be better to explain the mounting of ordinary machines, according to the usual methods adopted in some of the leading districts.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER III

FULL-HARNESS MOUNTINGS

THE mountings that will be alluded to in this section are all intended for 'full harness'; that is, the ordinary method of jacquard weaving when applied to such fabrics as damask, dress goods, and, in many cases, to double cloths, handkerchiefs, &c.

Full harness, or, as it is termed in some hand-loom districts, shot and draft, to distinguish it from the 'pressure harness' system, holds the first place amongst mountings, as by it can be done what cannot be done by any other method, and everything can be done by it that can be done by any harness, or combination of harness or heddles; though it does not follow that it would be desirable to adopt it in every case. In a full harness each thread in any part of the tie can be lifted independently of the others; in wide fabrics, or in order to reduce expense in narrow ones, recourse is had to gathering or repeating the tie, and like threads in each repeat must be lifted together; but in a single tie any one thread can be lifted independently of any other. In full harness there is one thread of warp drawn into each mail or eye of the harness, and one shot is given to each change of card. Other descriptions of harnesses are known as 'half harness,' 'split harness,' 'pressure harness,' 'gauze harness,' double-cloth and quilt harnesses, &c.

Half harness is the term applied to that description of harness in which the half of the warp (every alternate thread) is drawn into the harness, and the other half passes through it loosely. This is mostly to be found in the manufacture of gauze or leno curtains, and is wrought with a shaft mounting in front of the harness.

Split harness is applied when two threads are governed by each

Digitized by Google

hook of the jacquard, and the ground of the cloth is wrought by some other means, as shafts through the harness. This is to be found in the silk trade.

Pressure harness is when several threads of warp are drawn into each mail, and when the harness is drawn it remains stationary for several shots of ground texture, for which the sheds are sprung or pressed open by heddles.

Gauze harness is a harness fitted up with doups for weaving leno and gauze, and is mostly full harness.

Double-cloth and quilt harnesses are for weaving these fabrics.

Mounting, or gaiting, is a term that may be taken to apply to the building of the harness and the preparing of everything in connection with it. The form of 'tie' to be adopted will depend to a great extent on the nature of the fabric to be made, and to the style of pattern which is to be applied to it. For instance, dress goods may be required, and the pattern may consist of small sprigs or objects repeated over the surface of the cloth, forming a simple repeating pattern. Again, handkerchiefs, napkins, or table-covers may be wanted, which will require a bordered 'tie,' and may have both single and double mounting in them. Sometimes the manufacturer mounts his looms to what he considers a desirable 'tie' (or arrangement of cords) to admit of having a good variety of patterns wrought on it for whatever class of goods he is likely to make, and then he has the patterns made to suit the tie or mounting. Sometimes patterns are procured which will give the best possible effect on the least possible machinery, or the least number of hooks of the jacquard, and the mounting is then arranged to suit the pattern. On this method often a very considerable saving of machinery can be effected by turning over or gathering the harness; or, by arranging a variety of turns over, or gathers, and repeats, a very diversified effect can be obtained with a small number of hooks, as those accustomed to the larger forms of shaft mountings will readily understand. Thus, if we take 100 hooks of the jacquard as equal to 100 shafts, it will easily be understood that a large variety of beautiful patterns can be produced with either a straight or zigzag draft, though they will be mostly of a set or con-

Digitized by Google

ventional type. The objection to mounting a loom in this way is, that if a change of pattern to a free or running style is required, it is necessary to cut down the harness and remount it, probably requiring new machinery as well. It may, however, suit to adopt both methods; that is, to have a few looms for working conventional patterns on small jacquards, say 200 hooks, and others mounted for free patterns requiring, say, 400 or 600 hooks in the machine. Of course this entirely depends on the nature of the orders likely to be received, and manufacturers must use their own judgment, in which, however, they are more likely to err on the narrow than on the liberal side of the question, the result being cramped and stiff patterns, with a probable loss instead of gain. Two styles of mounting harness are in general use—one, known as the 'London tie,' being used in Spitalfields by the silk weavers; the other is called the 'Norwich tie,' as it was there adopted in the early days of weaving. About 1830 the Norwich style was adopted in London, as the weavers' houses were too low to admit of the jacquards being set high enough to suit the London method, which, having a quarter-twist in the harness, requires more height than is necessary for the Norwich system, in which the harness passes direct from the jacquard to the cumber board in flat rows without any twist.

The Harness.—When about to mount a loom the first process is to prepare the harness. A harness is built up of several parts, the methods of preparing and building varying in different districts. A few of the best methods will be given. Fig. 46, Nos. 1, 2, and 3, show a complete cord of the harness in three methods of preparing it—A (Nos. 1 and 2) are the tail or tug cords looped to the hooks of the jacquard; these cords are only necessary on double-lift machines, and are usually put on by the machine-makers. They are made of twisted cotton, and are soft and pliable. L shows the knot, known as the 'tug knot,' by which the tail cords are looped on the hooks. B, B are two methods of knotting the neck or body of the harness to the tail cords; that in No. 1 is the usual method. C, C are the hecks, or guide reeds, through which the harness passes. G, G are the lingoes, or leads, formerly made of strips of lead, but now of wire. From the lingo to the mail or eye, F, through which the warp passes, is a double cord

Digitized by Google

called the bottom piece, or hanger. From the mail, passing through the cumber board or harness reed E, is another piece of double cord, called the top or mid-piece, or the 'sleeper'; to this is looped or tied the neck twine in various ways, two methods of which are shown at D d d^1 (No. 1) and at D (No. 2); No. 3 shows levelling below the cumber board. with two methods for tying H and H^1. M is the snitch knot, which is much used for fastening cords that require careful adjusting. Sometimes it is a matter of choice to adopt any method of mounting, and sometimes one plan may suit circumstances better than another.

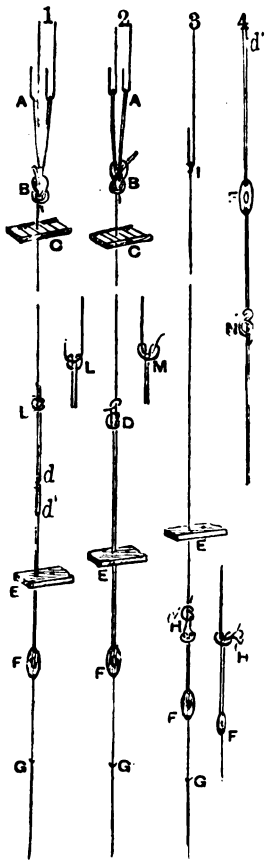


FIG. 46

Preparing Lingoes.—A prepared lingo is shown at No. 4, Fig. 46, this work being generally done by little boys or girls, or by old women. One of the commonest methods of preparing them is as follows:—Having prepared the mails, which are small eyelets of brass, copper, or steel of the shape shown at F, sometimes with round holes in the centre and sometimes with elliptical or long shaped ones, they are put into a dish or pan; a boy takes a piece of wire and strings a number of them on it. The wire is then fastened on a rack, or in any convenient place, by both ends, in a horizontal position. A bunch of small pieces of twine is tied up in a convenient place; these are to form the hangers, or to connect the lingoes with the mails. Having the lingoes conveniently placed, and being provided with a pair of shears, the boy sets to work. Taking a piece of twine, and pulling it through an end hole of a mail, he doubles it evenly, and, lifting a lingo, puts both ends through the eye in it, and casts on a knot, as shown at N (No. 4).

Digitized by Google

The loop on the twine there shown requires to be pushed up over the top of the lingo, then drawn tight, and the ends clipped off. This mail is then pushed along the wire, and the others proceeded with. The pieces of twine for forming the hangers, as well as the sleepers, are prepared by warping them off spools round two pins, and then cutting them across. Of course the pins must be set apart at such a distance as will suit the length of the sleepers and hangers required. The usual length of the hanger (when doubled) is 7 or 8 in., and that of the sleeper or mid-piece when it passes through the cumber board, as in Nos. 1 and 2, Fig. 46, and as shown at No. 4, is 15 or 16 in. When a quantity of lingoes are hung on the mails, the top cords or sleepers may be put through the top holes in the mails, and tied with a weaver's knot, the ends being neatly clipped off.

A quicker method of preparing lingoes is as follows:—Two upright pieces of iron, as A, A, Fig. 47, are fastened on a board, or on a bench or

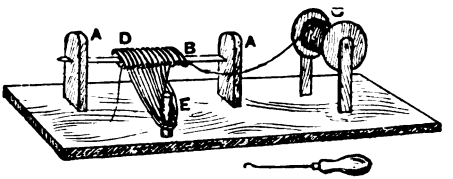


FIG. 47

table. A cut is made in each of these, so as to hold a piece of flat wire such as is used for coarse reeds. This wire is pointed at one end, so that by taking a handful of mails they can easily be gathered up on it. It is then placed in position, as shown at B; the mails, D, are shown on it, and C is a spool containing twine for the hangers. By rubbing the end of this twine with wax, so as to stiffen it, and gathering all the mails on the wire evenly together, the end of the twine may be run through the holes in all of them at once. This end is fastened, and with a hook, as shown at F, the twine can be drawn through the mails, beginning at the one farthest away from the spool, and passing from one to the other in succession, looping the twine round the pin E, which should be at such a distance from the mails as is required to make the hangers the proper length. If many mails are to be threaded at once

Digitized by Google

there should be two or three pins as E, so as to avoid too much slope from them to the mails, which would increase the length of the hangers. The twine can be cut when the mails on the wire are completed, and the other ends of the mails turned round and treated similarly for the sleepers; but the pegs will require to be shifted, so as to get the required length of twine. When finished, these can be cut also, and the wire tied up in a convenient place, so that the lingoes may be hung on, as before described. The sleepers can then be knotted, if required to be.

After the lingoes are thus prepared the twine is frequently varnished, and sometimes twisted so as to prevent that of the hangers from rising up through the hole of the mail and getting in between the two halves of the yarn when the shed is crossing. This frequently happens if anything prevents the lingo from dropping. A common method of twisting them is for a boy to give them a coat of flour-paste or a light coat of varnish, then, having them hung on a rod which passes through the loops of the sleepers, he takes a handful of the lingoes, and, placing them on his knee, rolls them round with his hand till they are sufficiently twisted, then lets them hang down, and proceeds with another handful.

When the paste or varnish on these is set they can be well varnished. About two inches at the top of the sleepers must be left without varnish, to leave it soft and pliable for tying the neck to; the knots on all the sleepers must be brought up to about the point before they are twisted or varnished. When the lingoes are thus prepared and dry they can be tied in bunches, to be used as required.

Some do not varnish the twines till the harness is all mounted, and then varnish it all over. Others do not varnish at all. In this case the hangers are not twisted, and for light open sets of harness they need not be twisted at any time.

LINGOES OR LEADS

For pressure harness work the weights for drawing down the harness were originally made of lead, about the length and thickness of a thin pencil, but tapering to the lower end. The weight varied

Digitized by Google

with the number of ends to the mail, the strength of the yarn, and the weight of the cloth to be made, ranging from 10 to 18 per lb., or lighter if for fine hand-loom work. For a linen damask as formerly made, with 6 or 8 threads in the mail, a very heavy lead was required, even in the hand loom, whilst a fine cotton two-thread harness would do with a comparatively light lingo. Strips of lead cut from sheets were used for lighter weights; these were then reduced to the proper size for drawing them through holes in steel plates. Now, lingoes for power looms are made of wire, and for ordinary damask or full harness work should range from 25 to 40 to the lb.; for heavier work, such as linen towels, worsteds, &c., 16 or 18 per lb., according to the weight of the fabric, are required. Lighter ones answer for hand looms: Murphy mentions as light as 110 per lb. for the centres of shawls, but 35 to 60 per lb. will be more frequently found. 25's to 30's are a good size for power looms; 12 in. long for 25's or 30's, 14 in. for 16's or 18's, and 16 in. for 10's or 12's are good lengths.

When there is a great slope in the border twines of a harness, it is often necessary to put heavier lingoes on it than on the centre, to keep the warp down. Of course, the less weight that has to be lifted is always a saving of power, and easier on the harness; therefore it is better to have two sizes of lingoes than to have them all weighty enough for the borders.

HARNESS TWINE

The size of harness twine used varies greatly; some prefer a fine, and others a heavy, twine. For the sleepers and hangers, 4 ply of 22's or 5 ply of 30's linen yarn is a very good medium size, and 4 ply of 14's or 5 ply of 18's or 20's is a very good size for the neck or body of the harness.

Sometimes, for heavy damask, cable cord is used for the body of the harness, and is a good wearing cord; it is especially suited when the neck cords are fastened to the sleepers below the cumber board. This cord is made of good flax yarn; 5 ply of 30's are twisted together, and three of these cords are then twisted together, or 3 ply of 18's afterwards made 3 ply. A better size for medium work is 5 ply of 35's

Digitized by Google

made 3 ply, or 3 ply of 20's or 22's made 3 ply. Heavy harness twine requires to have heavier lingoes, particularly on those parts of the harness that are much slanted, in order to have the same effect on them that they would have on light twine. Some go to the opposite extreme, and use very light twine, such as 4 ply of 30's, which is only fit for very light work in a narrow loom, where there will be but little friction on the cumber board, and where no heck is required. Lighter twine will suit better for a hand loom than for a power loom; 4 ply of 30's for the harness of a hand loom, with lingoes of 50 or 60 to the lb., would do very well for a light cotton warp.

SETTING THE JACQUARD

The proper position for the jacquard, when only one is required on the loom, is so that the centre hook in it will be above the centre hole of the cumber board. This can easily be found by tying a plumb line to the centre hook of the machine and moving it, if necessary, till the plummet rests over the centre of the cumber board. In case the cumber board is not fixed in position, that of the jacquard may be found by having the plumb line to pass about half an inch more than the half breadth of the harness at the cumber board behind the top rail of the lay when it is full back, and it should also be at equal distances from each side of the loom. When more than one jacquard is required, they should be arranged evenly over the cumber board, and as close together as possible.

Sometimes the jacquard may be set farther forward or back to suit circumstances, such as getting card space, the only disadvantage being that there will be more slanting of the cords at one side than the other, and more friction on them in the cumber board, also more drag on the hooks on this side if no heck is used, and if a heck is used the cords will have to bear the friction on it. The more direct the cords of the harness can be, the better, and the above setting of the jacquard should be adhered to when possible, but it is not absolutely necessary for working to have it so.

It is always well to have the jacquards so arranged that they can

Digitized by Google

be raised or lowered a little by having them resting on bars, which can be raised or lowered with screws. This is in case the harness is levelled higher or lower than might afterwards be desired; but if the breast beam of the loom, with the lay and back rail, can be raised or lowered, it will suit the same purpose, and it is better not to move the machine once it is fixed and the harness tied up.

The height the jacquard is to be above the loom must in many cases be regulated by circumstances; for instance, the height of the roof, or if the beams of the roof interfere with the working of it; sometimes the machines rest on the framing of the loom—that is, if the loom is made for a jacquard—and sometimes plain looms are used, and the machines rest on beams supported from columns, or from the roof of the house. This latter is the best plan, as it keeps the jacquard free from the shaking of the loom, which is particularly useful in the case of looms fitted with the knock-off motion. A good height for a jacquard, independent of circumstances, is to have 8 ft. or 8 ft. 6 in. from the mails to the bottoms of the hooks for a 10/4 loom—that is, one with about 100 in. reed space; 7 ft. to 7 ft. 6 in. for an 8/4 (82 in. reed space), and 5 ft. 6 in. to 6 ft. for a 4/4 (40 in. or 42 in. reed space), are very good heights. 5 ft. 6 in. is about right for a narrow harness, say 20 in. to 27 in. wide; 6 ft. would do for 80 in. wide, and 7 ft. or 7 ft. 6 in. for 90 in. wide, if necessary.

HECKS OR GUIDE REEDS

A heck is a frame of hard wood with wires across it, a wire for each row of hooks in the machine, from back to front. It should be made to suit the machine, so that when the harness passes from the hooks between the wires, it will go vertically down, and have no slant in it. In narrow hecks there is usually one cross-stay to support the wires, but for broader machines there should be at least two. The wire should be iron, as brass soon cuts with the friction of the cords, and then in turn cuts the cords. For a single-acting machine the wires should be loose, so that they can roll with the cords; but for a double-acting machine this would be of no advantage, as a portion of the cords are falling when the remainder are rising. If the machine is very wide,

Digitized by Google

or has to be set forward or back on the loom, there should be cross rollers of hard wood above the wires, at right angles to them, to prevent the bottoms of the hooks from being drawn either backwards or forwards, which might push their heads on or off the griffe knives.

Sometimes glass rollers are used in the silk trade for this purpose, with mountings of the London tie, and while they are very smooth and polish the twines, they get too hot if used in warm power-loom factories working at a high speed. Hecks are not required for very narrow harnesses, as the cords do not diverge much from the vertical, and the friction on the heck being saved, the cords wear much longer.

In a wide harness it is impossible to draw an even shed without a heck, although in some districts they are hardly known, and the more any portion of the harness diverges from the vertical, the more irregular will the shed be.

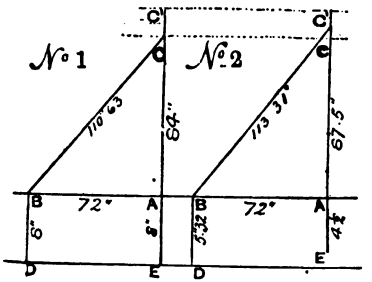


Fig. 48

Suppose we take an extreme case of a loom having three or four jacquards on it, the harness to be 96 in. wide, and the pattern to be for a table-cover; then, if we deduct 2 ft. from the width of the harness, it is possible some of the border twines may have to slant across 6 ft., or 72 in. Now make a triangle as No. 1, Fig. 48. Let the base, A B, be 72 in., and take it as the level of the cumber board. Take the vertical side, A C, as the height of the harness to the heck, viz., 84 in. Now calculate the length of the hypotenuse B C by squaring 84 and 72 and finding the square root of the sum, and it will be found to be 110·63 in. Again: Make another triangle, as No. 2, with base 72 in.; vertical side $3\frac{1}{2}$ in. longer than that of the former triangles, viz., 87·5 in. (this $3\frac{1}{2}$ in. is to represent the draw or lift of the harness). Calculate the length of the hypotenuse as before, and it will be found to be 113·31 in. From this deduct 110·63 in., the length of B C in No. 1, and the remainder, 2·68 in., equals the height that the cord B C has been raised, while the cord A C, which is vertical, has been raised $3\frac{1}{2}$

Digitized by Google

in.; and if we take into consideration that the side draw of the sloping cords, as B C, will pull the tail cord a little to one side and rise the vertical cords a little higher, while the sloping ones remain proportionately lower, 1 in. may be safely taken as the difference of the height that the two cords, B C and A C, would be raised by the jacquard, and all the other cords in the harness would vary, being less than this in proportion to their divergence from the straight or vertical line. It can thus be seen how the shed would require to be opened to let the shuttle through, and the irregular strain that would be on the yarn; and for any cloth that requires a fine surface, any irregularity of strain on the warp has a deleterious effect, very well known by experienced overlookers.

Some consider that the London style of harness is more suitable for working without a heck than the Norwich style, and adopt it to avoid using one, as it is severe on the harness twines. Some raise the machines very high to avoid using them, but for particular work with border ties they must be used to give a proper working harness. With the London mounting rollers should be, and are, used when there is no heck. These rollers are set as a coarse heck in a frame under the machine, and lie lengthways under it, just as they would do when used above a heck. The heck should be about 3 in. below the knots which fasten the tail cords to the neck twines. Some have the tugs, or tail cords, coming down through the heck; in this case the heck only takes the strain off the hooks of the machine, and has no effect on the shed, though sometimes this is mitigated by having more than one tug or tail cord, and the neck twines that slant in different directions are tied to different tail cords. The only point in favour of this is that it saves some trouble in tying broken harness twines when they begin to wear away by their friction on the heck.

PREPARING THE NECK OF THE HARNESS

The twine for the neck, as well as that for the other portions of the harness, is usually wound on spools, and when the neck is to be prepared it is warped from these spools to the length required, either

Digitized by Google

on a hand warping mill or round two pins fastened in a wall or on a bench, as far apart as the length of the harness; three or four spools are put on pins, and the ends from them are taken and wound round the pins fixed for warping them on. When warped the twines may be cut at one end, and can either be tied in a bunch or stretched on a board and tied down on it, so that they may be kept straight and admit of any number of them being pulled out as they are wanted.

In some methods of mounting the neck twines are first tied to the tail cords; perhaps this is the plan most commonly adopted with double-acting machines. Sometimes they are tied to the sleepers first, and fastening them to the tail cords is the last process. This is called 'beeting' the harness. When single-acting machines are made with the hooks resting on a perforated board, they have tugs on the hooks; but when the wire hooks pass down through a perforated grating, tugs are unnecessary, and the neck twines are fastened to the hooks. When fastened to the hooks, or even when fastened to the tail cords, and a heck is not to be used, the neck twines should be formed into heads, either before they are tied up or afterwards, as may be desired. The reason of this is, that when a number of neck twines are tied to a hook or tail cord, and the hook is raised by the machine when working, the twines will be slanting in different directions, and when coming down again would be liable to catch on the knots of those that were not raised; and the head is for the purpose of keeping them together, so that they cannot separate for a short way down. One method of doing this is, after the bunch of neck twines is tied to a tail cord or hook, to take one of the twines and knot it round the others about $3\frac{1}{2}$ in. below the tail cord, and the same may be done with a second twine, if there are many in the parcel.

Sometimes the neck twines are all prepared in heads, and the following is a convenient method of doing so:—Fasten four flat pins of wood, as A, B, C, D, Fig. 49, on a board as F, or on the edge of a bench or table. C and D are firmly fastened, but A and B can be turned round to the position shown by the dotted lines when the screws holding them are slackened. The distance from C to D must be the length required for the neck twines. E is the twine coming

Digitized by Google

from a spool on a wire. The pin A is pushed round to the position shown by the dotted line, and the twine is warped round C, B, D, passing over B and under C, so as to form a lease. When a sufficient quantity is warped, the crossing of the lease is pushed up towards C, and the pin A turned round into the centre of the twines, taking the place of B, which is turned back. The use of the two pins is to allow room for warping, C and A being too close together. The distance from the outside of C to that of A should be the length the head is required to be (about 3½ in. or 4 in.). The twines may now be cut at D, and a piece of cord looped round them and tied to D, so as to hold them steady, but allow them to be drawn out as required. The number of twines for each head can now be drawn out and tied round the two pins C and A, and when a number are done they can be slipped off the pins and put on cords or rods; the lease keeps the heads in order, and

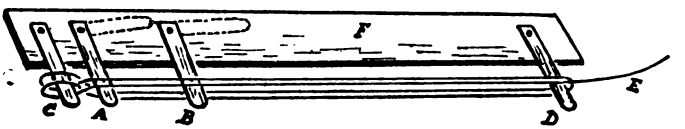


FIG. 49

the bunch can be hung up at the loom, and each head be taken in rotation by the mounter. The number of twines for each head is regulated by the tie of the harness.

Suppose a double-acting machine is to be mounted with the harness similar to that shown in No. 1, Fig. 46. The tail cords are usually put on the machine by the makers, but if they are worn out, or if new cords are required, putting them on is the first process. This can be done when the machine is on the ground, and the neck may also be tied to the tail cords before the machine is put on the loom. Some mounters prefer one method, and some the other, and the one which most conveniently suits the circumstances may be used. When the neck is attached to the machine before putting it on the loom, it is usual to turn it on its side on blocks or on a table. If the machine is on the loom, a board is tied up to make a seat for the mounter, and the bunch of neck twines is fixed convenient to his reach; or he may

Digitized by Google

have a boy to draw them out for him, and hand him the number he requires. Beginning at the first hook, he takes a pair of tail cords, and having drawn them down straight and stretched them firmly, he loops the neck twines on them in the way shown in Fig. 46, and draws the knot fast. The distance from the bottom of the hooks to the neck twines should be 11 in. or 12 in. The first of these in each row is measured, and the mounter can then regulate the others so as to have all the knots in a line.

The number of neck twines that are to be tied to each hook is regulated by the tie of the harness. For each time that any repeat or portion of a pattern is to be repeated on the cloth there must be a twine attached to those hooks of the machine that are to work this repeat. For instance, if a 400 machine is used, and the pattern consists of a simple repeat on these 400 hooks, and this has to be repeated six times on the cloth, then six neck twines must be tied to each hook of the machine. Again: The pattern might be made for a 400 machine, 200 hooks to be repeated six times, 100 four times, and 100 three times; then six twines would be tied to the first 200 hooks, four to the second set of hooks (100), and three to the third set (100), and any mounting would be regulated in a similar manner.

Full particulars of ties will be given further on.

If all the hooks in the machine are not required, any number of rows or portions of rows can be left idle at one end, or at both ends if desired, or even at the back or front.

When all the neck twines are tied up, the next process is to draw them through the heck, which should be fastened firmly 2 in. or 3 in. below the knots connecting the tail cords and neck.

The jacquard is supposed to have been levelled and set in its proper position on the loom, and firmly fastened there, and the same may now be done with the cumber board.

CUMBER BOARDS AND HARNESS REEDS

These are both for the same purpose—viz., that of regulating the space which the harness is to occupy—and both answer the purpose

Digitized by Google

equally well, generally speaking. The reed being stronger is, perhaps, more suitable for coarse work; and the cumber board, giving a more evenly distributed harness, is perhaps preferable for fine work. Be that as it may, both suit for any medium work, though some workmen are all against the reeds, and others all against the boards. Harness reeds are strong-made reeds of cane or iron, of the depth and fineness to suit the harness. Bridges are fixed in them about 6 in. apart, with perforations for stiff wire to be run through; as many wires as are required to suit the number of rows of the harness. A wire should be outside the harness at both sides, to prevent it rubbing against the ribs of the reed. The wires are made straight, drawn tight, and fastened at each end to holes in the yoke of the reed. The reed is set in a frame of wood or iron, so that it can be bolted to brackets on the loom.

Cumber or comber boards, also called hole boards, are made in various ways. Sometimes they are of wood about $\frac{3}{4}$ in. thick, and bored in a piece. These boards are strong enough to bolt to brackets on the frame of the loom. Sometimes they are thin, about $\frac{1}{4}$ in. thick, bored in the same way, and framed. The wood used is beech, sycamore, and sometimes walnut. The objection to these boards, particularly the thin ones, is that if the wood is not very well seasoned they are liable to warp and split. A great many prefer to use what are called 'slips' —that is, small pieces of wood of the depth required for the harness, and about $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. long or broad. The length, or long way of a cumber board or harness reed, is frequently called the width or breadth, same as weaver's reeds, as this is the width of the loom. The cross-way, or from back to front, would, in the same way, be the depth. These slips are made of boxwood, beech, or other clean hard wood. Some prefer beech or sycamore to boxwood. The twines cut into them all in time, but the hardness of the boxwood causes a very fine cut to be made in it, which cuts the twine. The others will not cut the twine so readily, and by the time the wood is cut too much the harness would require to be renewed as well as the cumber board. These slips are made about $\frac{1}{4}$ in. or $\frac{5}{16}$ in. thick, and are set in a grooved frame. The usual way of arranging the holes in a board is shown at A (Fig. 50), which is

Digitized by Google

for an 8-row harness. B shows a patent method, devised for the purpose of giving more space between any two holes in each horizontal row. The arrangement of the holes is in 4-shaft satin order, and gives double the space between the holes of each horizontal line that A does, and of course it would take so much longer for the twines to cut through; but this would only be an advantage if the holes were set very close together, as otherwise the harness would be considerably off the level before the twines had cut from one hole into another. In any case, the irregularity of the holes will likely prevent it from ever taking the place of the older method shown at A, though it may be desirable sometimes.

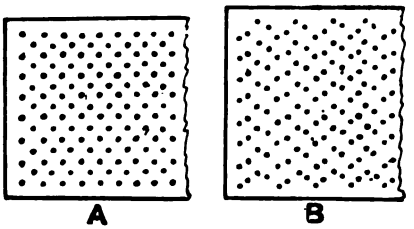


FIG. 50

The cumber board is fastened on two brackets—one at each side of the loom—and should be perfectly level and firm. It should be so far advanced as to allow the harness to pass within half an inch of the handrail of the lay when full back, and should be from 8 in. to 10 in. above the mails, the lower the better, as it keeps them steady; but the height may have to be regulated by the swords of the lay, as they must be clear of it, and in some looms they are higher than in others. When the cumber board is levelled and fastened, it should not be moved after the harness is tied up, as any change in its position must alter the level of some portion of the harness. This cannot in every case be adhered to, as in some cases it may be necessary to move it. In a small harness a good deal of shifting can be made that could not be attempted in a large or intricate one. In many places the harnesses are built in a separate room, or by the machine maker, and sent to the manufacturer; but practical experience with particular work will teach anyone that it is most desirable to have everything about the harness as level and true as possible, and it takes a good deal of care to effect this, even without any shifting.

Digitized by Google

SLABSTOCKS AND LEVELLING FRAMES

'Slabstock' is a name given to the board used for fastening the mails on before they are levelled. It is about 6 in. deep and 1 in. thick, and should be as long, or longer, than the loom is broad, according to

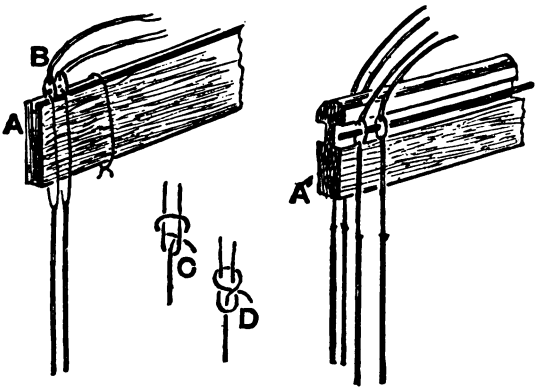


Fig. 51

the way it is to be fixed in the loom, which is usually by being bolted to brackets fastened on the sides of it.

There is a groove or rebate in the top edge of it for holding the mails, as shown in Fig. 51 at A and B. Sometimes the grooves are at both sides, as shown at A¹. All the mails required for the harness are put on the one slabstock, which is set directly under the cumber board when the harness is being levelled.

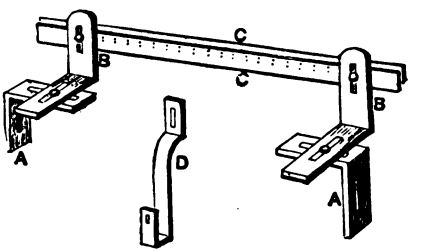


Fig. 52

A levelling frame is better than a slabstock; it is for the same purpose—that of keeping the mails firm and level when being tied to the neck twines. It consists of two flat bars of iron, c, c (Fig. 52), which can be bolted together in the form of a frame by the use of two stays, one at each

Digitized by Google

end, and by the same screws be bolted to slotted brackets, A A, B B, fastened to the frame of the loom. Sometimes two hanging brackets, as D, are used, fastened from the top or heddle-bearer of the loom. The levelling bars, C, C, rest in these brackets, and can be fixed firm in them with a pin or cotter. If there is any yield or spring in the brackets, they can be stayed from the front of the loom as well, as the frame should be made very firm. The distance between the two bars should be 4 in. or $4\frac{1}{2}$ in., which will suit any harness; if only narrow harnesses, as 8-row, are required, it may be an inch narrower. The length of the frame must suit the breadth of the loom. It should be perfectly straight and level on the upper edges, and should have two rows of holes bored in it, about 2 in. apart, for pins and skewers to pass through above and below the wires on which the mails are strung, so as to keep them firm.

LEVELLING THE SLABSTOCK OR FRAME

Levelling a harness, or rather levelling the mails of the harness, is the most important part of the mounting, as, if the mails are not levelled as true as a straight-edge, good work need not be expected from the loom. The position in which they are levelled, in relation to the breast beam and back rail, will depend upon the nature of the cloth to be made, to a certain extent; but as a general rule, for ordinary work, the eyes of the mails should be half the depth of the shed required to be drawn below the level of the breast beam for hand loom work, and a little more than that for power-loom work. This is to have the top and bottom portions of the shed of an even tension, and to make both sides of the cloth equally good. The position of the back roll can be altered a little afterwards, if it is required to slacken either the top or bottom portions of the shed. Raising the back roll throws up the weft pattern to the under side of the cloth, and sinking the back roll gives the upper surface of the cloth a finer appearance, by tightening the top portion of the shed. A $3\frac{1}{2}$-in. draw of the harness is sufficient for power-loom work, and perhaps less would sometimes be preferable. Levelling the harness mails $1\frac{3}{4}$ in. for light work, and 2 in. for heavy

Digitized by Google

work, below the breast beam should be a good average standard for a $3\frac{1}{2}$-in. draft of harness. The levelling frame or slabstock is levelled to this height by means of a spirit level and straight-edge, making allowance for whatever spring there may be in the harness after it is tied, and the wires drawn out of the mails. This can only be ascertained by experience, and depends principally on the tension the mounter puts on the twines when tying them; it will also depend upon whether the harness twines have any spring in them or not, but they should be well stretched before being used, to avoid this. A mounter who ties slackly will generally make a more level harness than one who ties tightly. About $\frac{1}{8}$ in. may be allowed for the mails to rise if the cords are slackly tied, and if tightly tied $\frac{1}{4}$ in. may have to be allowed, and sometimes more than this.

Sometimes the level is taken by placing a straight-edge on the race of the lay, when the cranks are at the back centre; then the under edge of the straight-edge should give the position for the tops of the mails on the slabstock, when it is fixed in its position in the loom. In levelling by this method the race must first be set at the proper height, and it must also be properly bevelled. From $\frac{1}{2}$ in. to $\frac{3}{4}$ in. below the breast beam is a good level at which to have the race, when the cranks are at the top centre, the latter for a low harness. The angle, or bevel, of the race may not at all times suit for levelling in this way. If not, the race should be made correct when possible; if it cannot be corrected, the harness must be levelled a little lower and the back rail kept down for working. A loom with the race bevelled for plain work is not suited for damask; the angle between the race and reed should, for damask, be about 93°, whereas for plain 87° would be more suitable.

TYING UP THE HARNESS

Having the neck attached to the tail cords and the levelling frame and cumber board fixed in position, the next operation is to get the prepared lingoes placed in the loom, whether on the levelling frame or slabstock. Suppose the levelling frame to be used. According to the number of rows in the harness or cumber board, pieces of reed wire

Digitized by Google

are procured, one for each row, and as many lingoes are strung on each of these as will be required for each row of the harness, by running the wires through the mails. These wires are then placed in the frame and secured by skewers being put through the frame above and below them. The frame is then levelled and firmly bolted to the loom. The sleepers or mid-pieces of the lingoes are next drawn up through the cumber board, one through each hole required to be used, any surplus holes being previously marked out to suit the tie of the harness, which will be afterwards explained. When all are drawn through, the tying of the neck twines to the sleepers may be proceeded with.

This must be done in accordance with the tie of the harness. Thus, if there are four cords tied on the first hook of the machine, these must be taken down to the lingoes in the proper place in the cumber board, which may be seen by examining the particulars of the mountings, to be given further on. One method of fastening the neck to the sleepers is shown in No. 1, Fig. 46, at D, d, d^1. The twine is put through the loop of the sleeper at d^1 (or better to have a snitch on the sleeper, unless the knots are to be varnished afterwards), then a loop is thrown on at d, and the end tied at D, and clipped close. This method suits very well when the harness is liable to be altered, for if the knots are brushed over with paste they hold sufficiently firm, and can be loosed again at any time, if necessary. If varnished, it also answers equally well for any coarse harness; but if it is fine and much crossed, especially if the twines are strong or coarse, the knots are liable to catch on each other and raise more warp than should be when the loom is working.

A second plan is shown in No. 2, Fig. 46. In this case there are no sleepers on the lingoes; they are put on the levelling frame or slabstock without them, the mails and lingoes being connected by the hangers; the levelling frame is set in the loom as before, and the neck twines must be long enough to go down through the cumber board, through the top hole of the mail, and up again through the cumber board to where they are tied. The mounter, when about to tie them, takes one of the twines and casts a single knot on it, leaving the loop open, then puts the end of it through a hole in the cumber

Digitized by Google

board and through a mail, and with a small wire hook draws it up again through the same hole in the cumber board, and through the open knot or loop he made on it, at the same time ; then, turning round the awl or piercer in the other end of the handle of the hook, he puts it through the knot and runs it up about 6 in. above the cumber board, draws it tight, and casts another knot above it with the end of the twine, as shown at D, No. 2, Fig 46. This makes a neat harness, and when a mounter gets accustomed to it he can proceed very expeditiously. This method is used in England ; the former is Scotch. The instrument used for drawing the twines through the cumber board consists of a wooden handle, in one end of which is a hook or barbed wire, same as is used for drawing the warp through mails, and in the other end is a round awl or piece of steel wire, tapered to a blunt point, which is used for running up the loop or knots so as to have them all about the same distance above the cumber board.

Beeting is another Scotch method of mounting. The harness may be beeted either above or below the cumber board; beeting above it was the old method, and single slabstock was used, as shown in Fig. 51 at A. When preparing it for the loom, the lingoes and mails are connected by the hangers in the usual way, and hung on the slabstock with the mails in the groove in it, as shown at B, Fig. 51. A piece of flat wire (reed wire) is run through the eyes of the mails, as many as are required for the whole harness, and is then tied down by cords fastened round it and the slabstock, at short distances apart. The slabstock is now put into a frame, or rack, with a rail as high above it as is required for the length of the sleepers. A spool of twine is fixed on a wire pin at the side of the frame, and with a needle, or otherwise, the end of the twine is run through a number of the mails and fastened. With a hook the sleepers can be reeled up to pins in the rail above the slabstock, on the same principle that they are done in Fig. 47. When the sleepers are all finished they can be slipped off the pins and cut.

The slabstock is next fixed in the loom and levelled with the upper edge of the rebate or groove touching the under edge of a straightedge placed on the race of the lay when it is full back (for power looms).

Digitized by Google

The sleepers are then drawn up through the cumber board without their ends being knotted; they should be long enough to reach about 8 in. above it, and say 7 in. below, making 15 in. for their entire length.

Now, to beet the harness: Say there are two beeters, standing on the ground, with a supply of neck twines convenient to them; they pick up the sleepers from the first set of holes in the cumber board—that is, those that are to be connected with the first hook in the machine—and, having tied neck twines to them, hand them to the harness tyer, who is up at the machine. He takes the lot of twines and draws them all to an even tension, then, having drawn down the tail cords firmly and evenly, knots the neck twines to them.

One method of knotting the neck to the tail is to have the tail cords tied together so as to form loops; then, having straightened both the neck and tail cords, lay the neck against the loop of the tail, and take both firmly between the finger and thumb of the left hand, being careful not to let them slip, and casting a knot, as at C or D, Fig. 51, round the tail, with the ends of the neck draw it fast. In order to have all the tail cords plumb and the knots of a uniform height, the harness tyer sometimes has a cord tied across the top of the loom frame, at each end of the machine, at the height the knots are to be. On these he lays a straight-edge, marked as a guide for where the tail cords are to hang, so that he can regulate those of one row and have them plumb, and the knots even; when one row is finished, he moves the straight-edge to the next, and goes on with it. A newer method of beating is to prepare the lingoes with sleepers and hangers, the sleepers to be about $5\frac{1}{2}$ in. long. The slabstock A^1, Fig. 51, is used, or the other if preferred.

The mails are put upon flat wires as before, but instead of all going on one wire, half the number is put on each of two wires, and one of them is placed at each side of the slabstock, where it can be fastened with small staples. To facilitate getting the mails on the wires, when reeling the sleepers on the pin, as in Fig. 47, a lease can be made on the loops by giving them a twist when putting them over the pin.

A piece of twine can be fastened in this case, and the loops after-

Digitized by Google

wards cut. The mails can then be taken off in order, and run on the wire for the slabstock. When the mails are fixed on the slabstock it may be laid on the ground, or set in a frame, and the neck twines tied to the sleepers ; and when all are tied, they can be drawn through the cumber board or harness reed. Afterwards, all are taken and fixed in the loom. The cumber board must be set so high above the knots on the sleepers that they will not come into contact with it when the shed is opened (that would be 4 in. or $4\frac{1}{2}$ in. above it). The neck twines are then tied to the tail cords as before.

This makes a very good harness, and has the advantage of having no knots on the neck twines above the cumber board, which is very important in an intricate harness with the cords close together, as the knots when varnished are liable to catch on each other, or on twines slanting across them, and lift them as they are being drawn up. When a harness is mounted in this way it is not easy to make any alteration on it, or to re-level any portion of it if necessary. If the sleepers are tied in loops, same as used in No 1, Fig. 46, they can be connected to the neck twines by having the latter double and putting both ends of the neck through a snitch on the sleeper, or the neck twines may be double and the two ends of the sleeper when untied may be put through a snitch on the looped end of the neck twine and tied ; in this way they could be altered or adjusted afterwards if necessary, but if they had to be varnished the knots would be rather rough.

The following method of mounting is adopted in the damask hand-loom districts of the North of Ireland, and is used for particular power-loom work as well. It is a slower process than the preceding, but cannot be surpassed for getting a level harness, and the mails can be regulated as desired—that is, to have the back rows getting gradually a little higher than the front ones, which can only be accomplished in the preceding methods by tying them a little tighter, or by having the frame sloped a little.

The lingoes may be prepared as before, with the sleepers 5 in. long when tied and clipped. The neck twines are put down through the cumber board and knotted loosely in bunches underneath.

Digitized by Google

The levelling frame is set in the loom, the top edge of it being at the level that the eyes of the mails in the front row are to be hung.

No wires are required. The lingoes are taken in bunches and put astride on the frame as required, and boys fasten them up to the neck twines by throwing on a snitch and running them up to somewhere about the height they will be wanted when level; in doing so the knots on the sleepers must be kept up as close to the snitch as is convenient for tying them, as, if left too low, they would interfere with the warp in shedding. When all the lingoes are hung inside the levelling frame—or they may be hung first, and the levelling frame put up afterwards and levelled—the mounter may begin to level the mails.

He uses a fine piece of waxed cord with a small weight at each end, which he lays across the levelling frame as a guide, and levels each row from back to front in succession. The front mail may hang with the top of its eye level with the cord, and the others rise a little higher, till the back one is perhaps, with the bottom hole, level with the levelling cord, or $\frac{1}{8}$ in. higher than the front one. The levelling can easily be accomplished by sliding the snitch up or down the neck twines; and when the correct height for the mail is got, the neck twine is tied as at H, No. 3, Fig. 46, when it is to be varnished, or as at H^1 when it need not be varnished; in the latter case cable cord is used for the neck, and it is split at the end, when drawn through the snitch, and then knotted.

VARNISHING A HARNESS

Varnishing is for the twofold purpose of making the harness twines wear better, and keeping them from being affected by the atmosphere.

Sometimes the harness is only partly varnished, particularly when it is liable to be changed in a short time, and then it can be loosed down and used again.

If it is to remain for a length of time—that is, for steady work—it should be varnished all over, but care should be taken to get a good varnish, as some of them destroy the twines, and others come off and are useless.

The common varnishes are made principally from shellac, beeswax,

Digitized by Google

and turpentine, and can be procured at any heddle-maker's. Sometimes white wax dissolved in turpentine is used to rub the twine at the cumber board, for fine harnesses for silk and other light work, the remainder being left unvarnished. Sometimes the neck of the harness and the sleepers are varnished, and the knots above the cumber board are brushed with paste, as each row is tied, to keep them from slipping.

Perhaps the best varnish is boiled oil, which, when well dried, gets very smooth after working for some time, and keeps the twines soft and pliable. It takes some time to dry, and does not suit well for using in a dusty place, but answers very well when the harness is built in a room for the purpose, and is afterwards taken to the loom.

Sometimes a very small quantity of beeswax or white wax is added to the oil to give it more firmness, and sometimes driers are used to make it dry more quickly; but it is better to do without driers, as they harden the twines and are injurious. Varnish should not be disturbed till quite dry, as, if the twines are separated and the loom started when it is soft, the outer surface will rub up and make a rough harness. The twines are separated by running a wire skewer between each cross-row. French chalk dusted down through the harness assists in smoothing it, and prevents too much friction when it is being started to work.

TO ARRANGE THE TIE OF A HARNESS

What is known as the tie of a harness is the arrangement or manner in which the harness twines are connected to the hooks of the jacquard—*i.e.* the number of twines that are tied to each hook, and the position they are to occupy in the cumber board. Ties for ordinary damask work may be divided into three classes—viz. straight, or single; lay over, or repeating; and gathered, or centred.

Straight or Single Tie.—This tie is only required when there is no repetition of any portion of the pattern, as in silk markers, and occasionally in handkerchiefs, d'oyleys, tablecloths, &c. Only one harness twine is tied to each hook of the jacquard, and there must be as many hooks as there are threads of warp. The twines are tied to the jacquard

Digitized by Google

and taken down through the cumber board in regular order from first to last, and the warp is drawn into the mails in the same order. Any pattern that it is possible to put on the cloth can be wrought with this method of mounting.

Lay Over or Repeating Tie.—This is, perhaps, the commonest tie, and is used for all such patterns as Fig. 53, where one small portion, as that enclosed by the dotted lines, will, when repeated several times, cover the entire surface of the cloth.

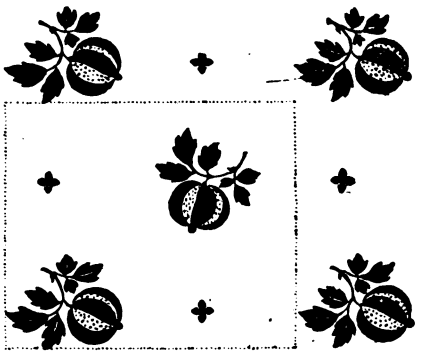


Fig. 53

Gathered or Centred Tie.—This tie can be used when both halves of any figure or border, &c., are alike when turned over; it will only require half the number of hooks to work a figure or border, when gathered or centred, that would be required for a single pattern.

All other ties are combinations of these.

Fig. 53 shows a pattern for a lay over, or repeating tie, such as might be used for dress goods, handkerchiefs, &c. The complete extent of the pattern is enclosed by the dotted line; this is called one 'repeat' of the pattern, because this portion repeated over the cloth makes up the entire figuring on it. To ascertain how this may be woven, or what number of hooks of the jacquard will be required to weave it, the number of threads contained in 1 in., or other given space, of the cloth required must be known. If the pattern is to be on the cloth say 2 in. × $2\frac{3}{8}$ in., and there are to be 100 threads of warp and 120 threads of weft per inch, then 200 hooks of the jacquard and 240 cards would be required to weave it, each hook representing one thread of warp, and each card representing one shot of weft.

Figs. 54 and 55 show mountings on jacquards with 208 hooks in each, the former tied on the Norwich principle, and the latter in the London style. In both cases only 200 hooks are used, the remaining

Digitized by Google

eight hooks being left idle for selvages, if required. These mountings are made for four repeats of the pattern, which would only make 8 in. of cloth; but there may be any number of repeats, say 13, to make 27 in. of cloth or 28½ in. of warp in the loom, with, say, 92 threads per inch. There must be a harness twine for each repeat of the pattern tied to each hook of the machine; when four repeats are used, four twines are tied to each hook, as in Figs. 54 and 55. The harness reed

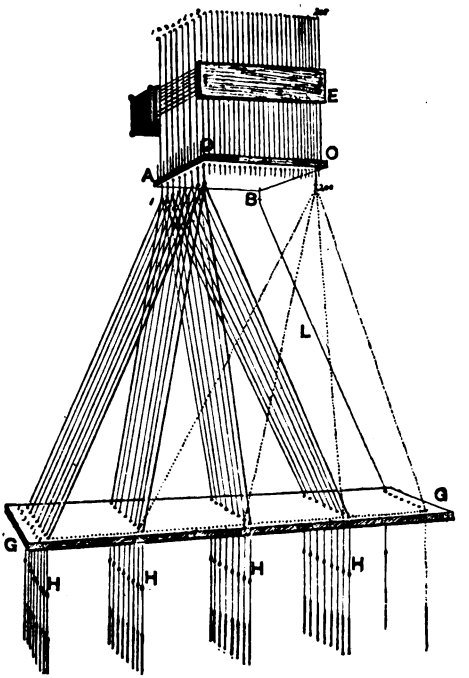


FIG. 54

or cumber board, G, must be of the same set or fineness as the weaver's reed (if finer, it can be used by passing over the surplus holes). It is divided into four portions, leaving 200 holes for each repeat, and the twines are, in Fig. 54, taken straight down from the hooks to the holes in it, as can easily be seen. In this figure the cross-rows of the cumber board at the first of each repeat are shown filled; but in mounting, the back row, taken from the hooks A to B, would be filled

Digitized by Google

first. In Fig. 55 the reverse is the case, the cross-rows, as shown, being the first filled; this is owing to the twist in the harness, as the machine is sitting so that the cards will hang over the side of the loom. The letters A, B, C, and D in both figures denote the same corners of the machines, showing that in Fig. 55 there is a quarter twist in the harness. In Fig. 54, the dotted lines from the 200th hook show the

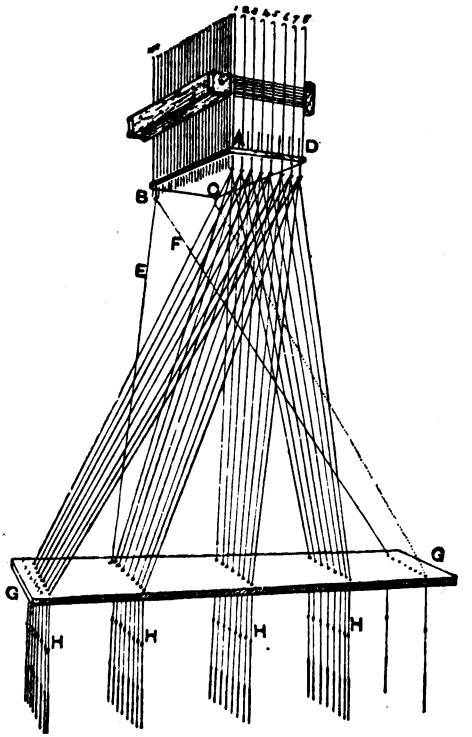


FIG. 55

last cord of each repeat; L is the first cord of the last cross-row, and E and F are the same in Fig. 55. In these figures only the skeleton of the mounting is given; it must, of course, be filled up as the first rows which are given.

For this description of mounting the yarn is drawn into the mails in regular order, beginning at No. 1, and proceeding with the numbers

Digitized by Google

as given. In this case the back hook to the left-hand corner must be taken as the first hook of the machine, and the cards cut to suit this. Sometimes the first hook to the front left-hand corner is considered the first hook, but if so it must be remembered when cutting the cards. Sometimes the mounting is begun at the right-hand side, but in any case it is only necessary to see that the draft of the yarn and cutting of the cards correspond with the order of mounting; the result of the work should be the same in all cases.

Fig. 56 shows a pattern for a gathered border with a repeating centre, which is a very common style of design. It will be seen that the two halves of the border, A and B, are alike, if taken from the centre outwards; or if one-half of the border were traced on tracing paper, it would, if turned over, form the other half. For this reason it is also called a 'turn-over' border. In the same way, if two cords are tied to each hook of the jacquard for the border, and those to the first hook taken down to the cumber board for the two outside threads of the border (that is, one to the right and the other to the left), then those from the next hook taken to the two next outer holes, and so on, coming from the outsides to the centre, the first half of the pattern would be repeated by the mounting in exactly the same way as by turning over the tracing paper.

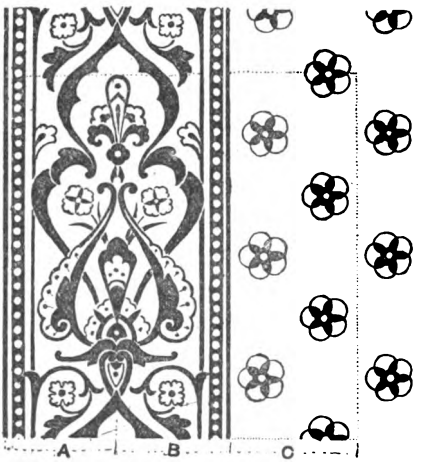


FIG. 56

Fig. 57 shows a mounting for a gathered border and four repeats of the centre. Eighty hooks are taken for the border, which are repeated four times in the cumber board, as at 80*a*, 80*b*, 80*c*, and 80*d*, and 120 hooks are allowed for the centre repeat (see also Fig. 58). This mounting is made up for a 200 machine with 208 hooks, the extra

Digitized by Google

eight hooks being left for working the selvages. Only the front row of the harness is shown, but they are all alike. By following the cords from the hooks to the cumber board, it can be easily seen how they are taken through it. The first eight hooks are left idle, for the selvage to be fixed to if required. The next ten rows = 80 hooks, are for the

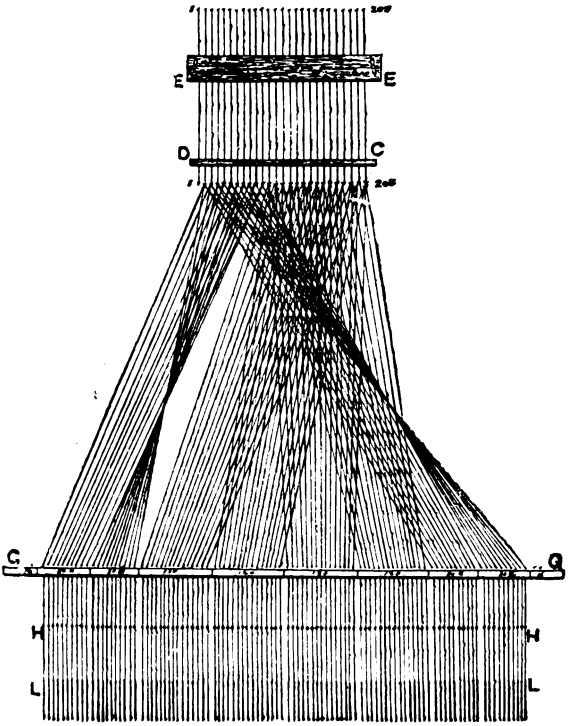


FIG. 57

border; these 80 hooks, with one twine on each, taken down through the cumber board at 80*a*, would work the first half of the border, as A. The other half of the border, B, can be wrought by the same hooks, with another set of twines tied to them, and taken through the cumber board at 80*b*; but the twine from the first hook must be crossed over to the right-hand side of the border, being the 160th twine in the cumber board; the twine from the second hook is the 159th in the cumber

Digitized by Google

board, and so on, coming in towards the centre to meet the first set of twines; hence the name, 'centred tie.'

The border must also be repeated on the other side, and two more sets of twines must be tied to the same hooks (four to each hook in all), which are taken down through the cumber board at 80*c* and 80*d*, to work the two halves of the border marked G and H, Fig. 58. The next 15 rows of hooks = 120, work the repeat of the centre pattern, C, Figs. 56 and 58; and as this is repeated four times, at C, D, E, and F, Fig. 58, there must be four twines tied to each of the 120 hooks, which are taken down through the four divisions of the cumber board marked 120; one twine from each hook being taken through each division, beginning at the left and working to the right side, alike in them all, as this portion is a simple repeating tie. Fig. 58 gives a portion of the pattern in Fig. 56 completed across, as it would be on the cloth by the mounting in Fig. 57; the cumber board is laid across the top of the pattern and marked, showing, in conjunction with the mounting, Fig. 57, how the harness repeats the pattern so that a large surface can be figured with a small machine by adopting a suitable tie.

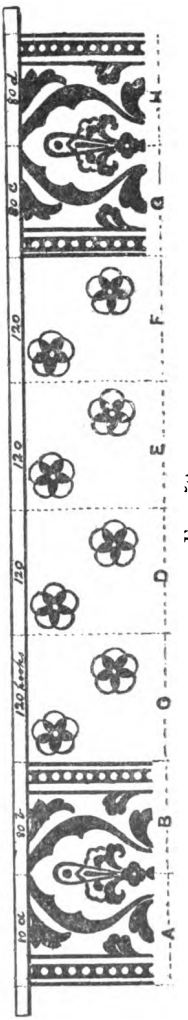


Fig. 58

When drawing the warp into the harness, wherever there is a gather in the tie, or a turn in the harness, there must be a turn in the draft also; not that there is any real change in the draft, but when the harness is turned in the direction it is drawn through the cumber board, the draft must also be changed to follow the mails in regular order. Fig. 59 shows a draft for a gathered border, with 48 hooks for the border and three repeats of the centre. It will be seen that the first half of both borders A and B and the three repeats of the centre are drawn in the same direction, but that the two turned-

Digitized by Google

over portions of the borders C and D are drawn in the reverse direction. The numbers on Figs. 62 and 62A may assist in explaining this, the border A in 62 and B in 62A being taken; in these it will be seen from

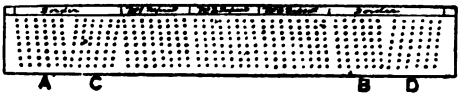


FIG. 59

the numbers, which are those of the harness twines, that 1 to 8 in border A (Fig. 62) run in the reverse direction of 1 to 8 in border A (62A), and both are from the same hooks.

When two borders are to be woven on any piece of cloth, though the pattern for each border may be single in itself, as Fig. 60 (which is single except the two outlying lines, A and C), they will to each other

FIG. 60

form a gathered tie, provided they have to be turned in the same way to the centre of the cloth—that is, if the inside of one border on one side is to be the inside of the other border on the other side. In such a pattern as Fig. 60 it would not matter much if the inside of one border was the outside of the other, as the border is much alike either way, and if wrought in this way the twill on the cloth would not be reversed, as is always the case in a turned-over border. In many

Digitized by Google

patterns this would not do, and it is therefore necessary to gather the tie and turn the twill. Fig. 61 shows how, in the London style of tying, the harness can be turned so that a turn in the draft is not necessary, but this will not alter the reverse twill on the cloth. It will be seen that one of each of the two cords tied to the eight hooks goes to one border, and the other to the opposite border, but instead of both going to the same row of the cumber board, the cord from the first hook goes to the back row in one border, and to the front row in the other. All the cords follow in this way, which has the same effect as turning the draft, as would require to be done in the Norwich mountings, and could also be done on this principle. Fig. 62 shows the draft of the two borders for Fig. 61 mounting, A and B being a plan of the warp passing through the mails.

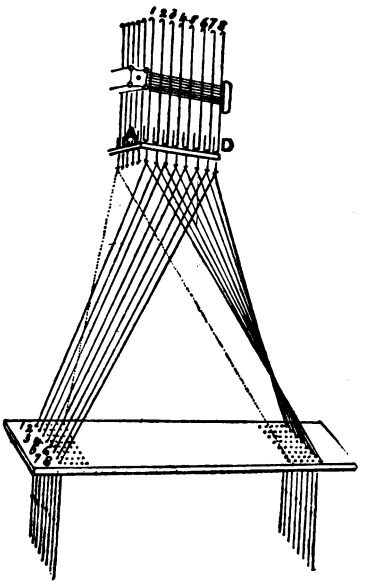


FIG. 61

The numbers refer to the hooks of the jacquard. C and D are the two innermost threads of the borders, both on the 48th hook of the machine. Fig. 62A shows how the draft would be if the cords were not brought

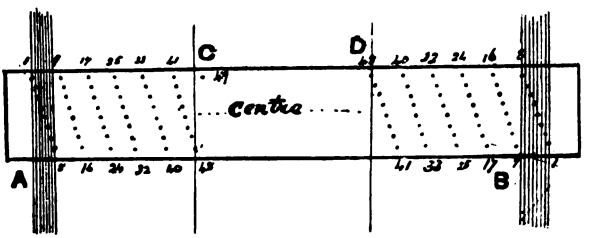


FIG. 62

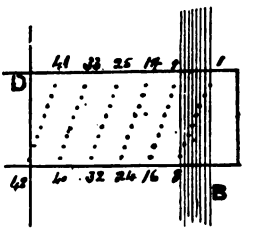


FIG. 62A

from front to back of the cumber board, as the numbers will show. No. 1 shows where the cords from the first hook pass through the

Digitized by Google

cumber board. Fig. 62A gives the right-hand border only, the left-hand one remaining the same as in Fig. 62.

In Fig. 60, the two bars A and C could be wrought from the same hooks, and, unless they might be required to be different from each

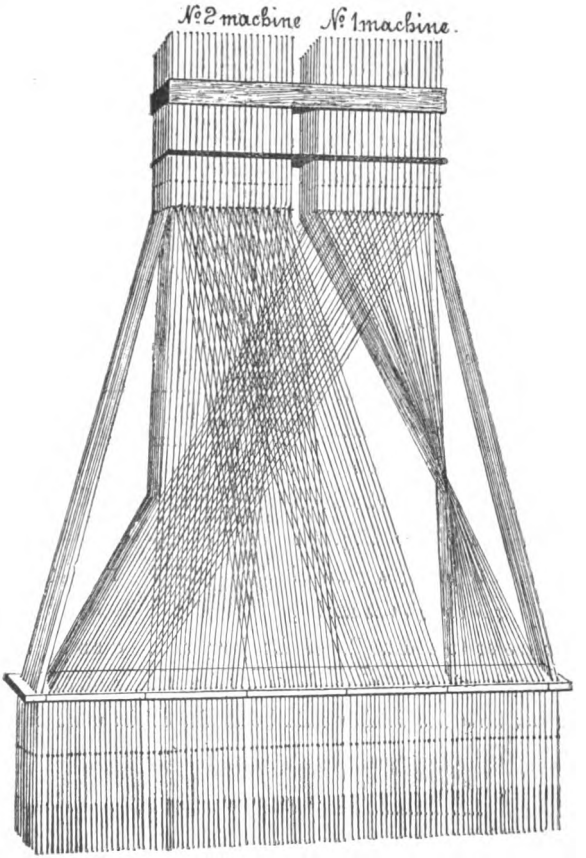


FIG. 63

other on another pattern to work on the same loom, it would be unnecessary to allow machinery for the two; either the outer or inner one could be tied up, and the other repeated from it, but the one that is tied up must be painted on the design paper.

Fig. 63 shows the front view of a mounting for weaving a pattern

Digitized by Google

such as that given on Fig. 60, one machine being used for the border, and another for the centre. Usually the border machine would be to the left-hand side, to correspond with the pattern; but in Fig. 63 it will be observed that No. 1 machine is to the right-hand side, and that it works the borders. It does not matter which machine is used for border or centre; the mounter can use the one he considers most suitable for the borders, and the pattern may be painted and the cards cut without any consideration of this, it being only necessary to put the border cards to the border machine, and those for the centre to the centre machine. The only consideration is to avoid any unnecessary slanting of the harness twines, which the present arrangement does; and it also keeps the turned portion of the harness (that for the right-hand border) separate from the twines of the centre, thus avoiding any unnecessary friction.

TO MARK OUT A CUMBER BOARD

Cumber boards may be either the exact fineness of the harness, or any set finer; they are better to be a little finer, to allow for any broken rows at the beginning or end of any of the repeats. When the cumber board is finer than the harness, the surplus rows are left idle. A convenient plan of marking off a cumber board is as follows:—Let the pattern be as Fig. 60—that is, with a border at

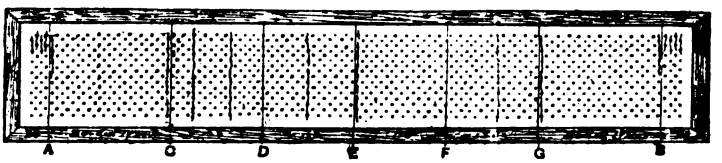


FIG. 64

each side and the centre to be repeated several times to make up the width of the cloth. Let 24 cords be required for the selvage, 172 cords for the border, and 128 for a repeat of the centre; there are to be four repeats of the centre. Now mark off on the cumber board whatever width the harness is to stand, which should be the same or rather wider than the warp occupies in the reed, and let it be so as to have the harness in the centre of the loom. Suppose Fig. 64 to give

Digitized by Google

the width of cumber board required. The selvages are wrought from 6 hooks, and there are 8 hooks in each row of a 400 jacquard; therefore 4 rows of the cumber board will be required for each selvage. Mark these off by drawing the lines A and B on the cumber board. Now find out the width the borders are each to occupy, by calculating how wide the yarn will be in the reed, and mark them off by the lines C and G; then mark off the width of each repeat by the lines D, E, and F. Counting the number of holes marked off for the margin, it will be found that there are 32; but as the selvage is on six hooks, the two back holes of each row of the cumber board are marked out, as shown, not being required. The portion marked off for the borders contains 23 rows on each side, whereas only 21½ are required for 172 cords. As the centre repeat is on even rows, and it is usual to leave broken rows to the left-hand side of the painting, the first 4 hooks of the border portion of the machine will be idle; therefore the 4 back holes of the cumber board for both borders are marked out; this still leaves a row too much, which may be marked out at any place. For the repeats, 128 cords, 16 rows are required, and the surplus rows are marked out, as shown. This mounting is supposed to be on a 400 machine, leaving 100 hooks idle to the left-hand side of the mounting, then using 1 row for the selvages, and the remaining 38 rows for the pattern, all but the half of the first row, which is not required.

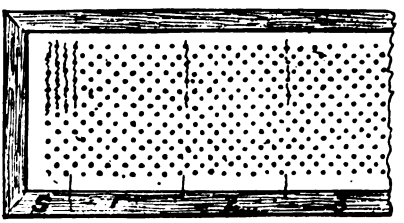


FIG. 65

In marking out a cumber board for a lay-over, or repeating pattern—if, say, 108 hooks are required for each repeat, which makes 13½ rows of an 8-row machine—if the broken row is to the left-hand side of the painting, and the harness mounted from left to right, then the first four holes of the first row of each repeat of the pattern are marked out in the cumber board to be left empty, as shown in Fig. 65. When mounting, no attention would be paid to the cords on the half-row of the machine till the first four rows along the cumber board have been filled, the mounter beginning

Digitized by Google

with the back cord on the first full row of the machine, which is the fifth hook of the tie. Three rows for the selvage, which is on four hooks at the front of the harness, are shown at s, Fig. 65.

The front of a jacquard is generally considered by workmen to be the cylinder side. Of course, when there is a cylinder on each side there is neither front nor back to it. Sometimes it is very confusing talking of the front and back, one considering it to mean the front of the harness, or front of the loom, and another taking it to be the front or cylinder side of the jacquard, which is usually at the back of the loom for Norwich ties. Of course, the front of the loom is where the weaver stands, or where the cloth is made, and the front of the harness is towards the front of the loom. It simplifies matters greatly by not minding the back or front of the machine, but speaking of every part of the harness, &c., towards the front of the loom as the front of it.

It frequently happens that figured stripes are required, running up plain or fancy textured goods, either forming borders to the outer edges, or merely ornamental stripes, say 3 or 4 inches from the edges of the cloth, as in towels, toilet-covers, &c. For this class of work it is generally most advisable to work the stripes with a small jacquard, and the plain or fancy texture of the body of the cloth with a shaft mounting. Fig. 66 shows a mounting of this class; the shafts can be wrought by tappets in the usual way, and small cumber boards, as A, A^1, are fastened to the top rail of the loom for the harness to pass through. It is usual to keep the harness behind the heddles, and it is levelled in the usual way. The yarn may or may not be on the same beam for both portions, according to whether the take-up, or shrinkage, will be the same for both portions or not. Sometimes the

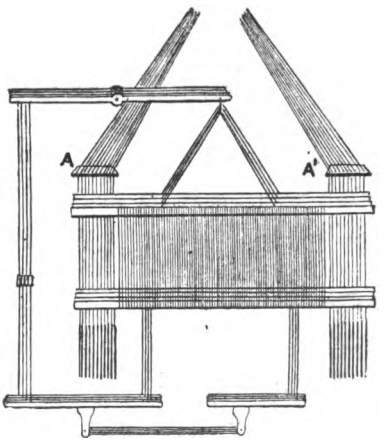


FIG. 66

Digitized by Google

shrinkage may be regulated to be alike in both by using different counts of yarn, or drawing it thicker into the reed; but perhaps in most cases two beams would be desirable, unless the texture is much alike for both the stripes and body of the cloth.

The lease rods for the yarn in the harness will not, probably, do to be the same as those for the body yarn, as the action of the heddles will be different from that of the harness. If the same rods will not suit, it is easy to have a pair for each warp, those for the harness being farthest back. Stripes of this description are frequently made in towels, glass-cloths, &c., for clubs or hotels, with the name of the company woven into them. A gathered tie is mostly used for these mountings, except when letters are required to be woven, in which case a gathered tie is not suitable. (See Letters and Monograms.)

TO VARY THE SET OF THE HARNESS

It may often be that in weaving figured piece-goods it would be an advantage to have a harness that would weave different degrees of fineness, so that the loom could be utilised for one when the other is not required. For weaving small quantities, for samples or special orders, this is often an advantage.

The usual method of procedure is to draw the warp into a finer or coarser reed if only a slight difference is required, and to pay no attention to the strive in the warp between the harness and reed. The better the quality of the warp, the greater the strive may be, but from 1 in. to 2 in. at each side is as far as it can safely be run when the harness is wider than the yarn in the reed; and if the reed is coarser than the harness, 1 in. at each side will probably be the maximum limit.

When changes of this kind are liable to take place, the cumber board should not be too low down, nor should the mails hang too close to the back of the slay; with the cumber board high and the harness a little back the strive will not tell so severely on the warp. When the cumber board is made of boxwood slips, they can be spread out a little in the frame, but when there is much of a slant in the harness this would take the mails off the level; though this can sometimes be

Digitized by Google

counteracted a little by raising the cumber board slightly higher at one end than at the other.

The best plan when much of a change is required is to pass over the surplus rows of mails in the harness, as in harness work, as well as in shaft mountings, the mounting may be used for any coarser set of warp than it is built for—of course, if the width is suitable. This would necessitate the warp, or at least a part of it, being drawn out of the harness, and also requires a new set of cards for the new pattern, or for the same pattern on a new set of cloth. The surplus mails may be cast out in rows across the loom if many are to be rejected, or in rows across the harness (from back to front) if found more suitable, or when a small number of mails are to be left idle. Suppose for an 8-row harness, 400 machine, with 6 repeats=2400 mails on 30 in., or 80 threads per inch, and it is required to weave a piece of cloth on this having 74 threads per inch. Drawing the yarn into a coarser reed, and, if only 30 in. wide is required, throwing off the surplus yarn at each side, would probably be the simplest method; but if the cloth to be woven is to have 60 threads per inch, every four throw of mails across the harness, or one-fourth of the harness, might be left idle, or the two back rows of the harness may be left empty. In the latter case the pattern could be painted on 6-row design paper as if for a 6-row machine, and in the former case the number of designs across the painting would be reduced by one-fourth, the card-cutter taking care that he omitted those rows on the card that have been thrown idle on the machine.

In order to reduce this trouble and expense to a minimum Messrs. Devoge & Co. have patented an expanding harness which is intended to admit of cloths of different degrees of fineness being woven without any trouble but a little setting of the cumber board and re-reeding the warp. The method of doing so is as follows:—There are two cumber-board frames, one above the other, as shown in the sketch Fig. 67; these frames are filled with slips which can be moved along when desired. The harness can be set for two degrees of fineness of warp, as is shown in the sketch. The slips in the upper frame, B, are set midway above the two positions for a slip in the lower frame indicated by the letters *a* and *a*^{1}. The black lines show the position of

Digitized by Google

the cords when weaving the finer set. The only change required to be made is to shift the lower slip, a, to the position a^1, and to re-reed the warp; other changes can be made on the same principle, or by altering both sets of slips in relation to each other. When the slips are moved in the frames, they can be kept in position by interposing blank slips between them.

The same cards will suit in this case for several sets of cloth, if

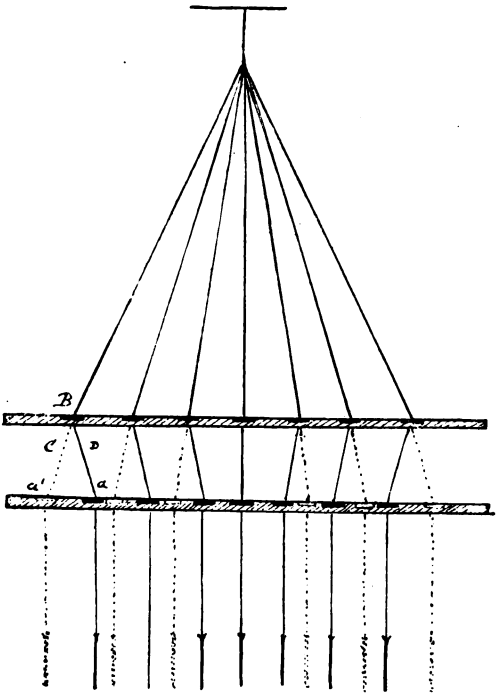


Fig. 67

required. Of course it is plain that the friction on the harness twines working through the two cumber boards must be greatly increased from that of the ordinary method of working; but for light work, and when the harness is not required to last long, it may prove very serviceable when frequent changes are required, as it furnishes a ready means of accomplishing the desired object, which cannot be done without cost in some direction. For wide looms or intricate mountings

Digitized by Google

it will not be of much service. In the Figure only one hook of the jacquard is given, for simplicity, but the harness would be filled up in the usual manner. If the harness is built with long mails having several eyes in them, the second cumber board is not required; the slips can be shifted and the warp levelled by drawing it through suitable holes in the mails.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER IV

DESIGNING AND DRAUGHTING

DESIGNING is the composing, drawing, and colouring, if necessary, of the sketches for jacquard patterns, and in some cases planning the texture of the cloth ; and draughting (or drafting) is the term usually applied to the painting of the patterns upon design paper.

A designer should be a first-class draughtsman, and have a thorough knowledge of the various styles of ornament ; he should also be well practised in drawing floral forms from Nature, without which there is generally a stiffness and want of freedom in his style of work. For coloured work, such as carpets, &c., skilful colouring is the most essential point. No drawing will atone for bad colouring ; at the same time, good colouring should not be wasted on bad drawing.

A designer may draught his own patterns, and if he is an experienced draughtsman with a good knowledge of weaving, perhaps this is the most successful method of working ; but if the greater portion of his time is to be taken up with draughting, his talent as a designer will be, to a great extent, lost, and he will probably deteriorate ; besides, he will not have the same opportunity for getting up a variety of designs that he would have if he had nothing else to attend to. A designer for any class of work should have a knowledge of the technicalities of the material for which he is designing a pattern ; at the same time, a very slight knowledge is essentially requisite, provided the sketch be given into proper hands to be worked out. It must be remembered, however, that in this case a sketch may often have to be taken only as an idea for a pattern, and not be handed by the manufacturer to the draughtsman with directions to make a truthful reproduction of it on the cloth. A draughtsman may be a skilful designer as well, or he may be a skilful

Digitized by Google

draughtsman and have very little powers of designing. When he is a designer, the most successful method of getting a variety of patterns would be for the manufacturer to purchase sketches for ideas and hand them over to his designer, who will be considered to have a thorough knowledge of the practical work, to prepare them to suit the fabrics for which they are intended, perhaps completely altering them, making two or three out of one, or combining two or more to make one pattern if necessary—in fact, using them as material to work from. They may then be handed over to the draughtsmen, or be sent to a designing establishment for draughting and cutting. In case the manufacturer has no designer in his place, but only a draughtsman, the sketches must be bought prepared to suit his fabrics, or it would be better to have the complete work done, in many cases, at a designing establishment. Of course, in draughting, as in all classes of work, a great deal of the less important portions may be done by junior hands, but a knowledge of drawing is required, if only to guide the eye, by them all, except the twillers.

Sometimes designers accustomed to selling sketches get them up in a very deceptive manner in order to deceive manufacturers or their agents, who may have very little knowledge of the work; but this can easily be checked by submitting them to a practical designer before purchasing them.

A design that may be very suitable for one class of cloth may be equally unsuitable for another class, and in many cases fashion regulates the suitability quite independently of its artistic merits. For coloured work, designs should be of such forms as lend themselves to the disposing of colours, no style being more suitable than Persian; whereas in plain work, as damask, the flow of line or the variation of the forms, assisted by portions of fancy shading or twilling, must give the complete effect. Again, different degrees of fineness of cloth will suit for different designs; of course, any pattern that can be put on a coarse cloth can also be put on a fine one, but many patterns are very suitable for fine work that could not be put on a very coarse fabric. When it comes to fine coloured silks, anything that the artist can paint can be fairly represented, as may be seen in the work from the

Digitized by Google

Coventry silk marker looms, so that any design can be put upon cloth; but the question is, Is the cloth suitable for the design?

Fig. 68 shows a piece of 8×9 design or point paper; 8×9 meaning that each of the large squares, or designs, contains 72 small checks or squares, 8 in breadth and 9 in length, but the 9 should occupy the same space as the 8. Ten by ten appears to have been the standard design, as patterns are still counted by the 100 designs, each containing 100 checks, or 100 checks in length and the same in breadth: and in some places machines are known as so-many-design machines; thus, a 400 jacquard is called a 40-design machine.

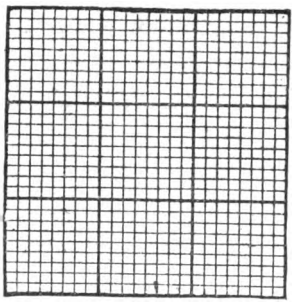


Fig. 68

When each design contains as many checks in length as it does in breadth, the paper is intended for work that is to have equal quantities of warp and weft threads in it; thus 8×8, 10×10, 12×12 paper would all suit for cloth with, say, 80 threads of warp and 80 picks of weft per inch, the difference being that 8×8 is intended for a jacquard with 8 needles in the row, and 10×10 and 12×12 for 10 and 12 row machines respectively. It is not necessary to have different papers to suit, as one could be used for all, and after the pattern is painted it could be ruled in rows to suit the machine, but it is much more convenient to get the correct size of paper.

If 80 threads of warp required to have 100 picks per inch, then to find the size of the paper state as 80 : 100 : : the number of needles in one row of the machine to the number of cards in each design, giving 8×10, $10 \times 12\frac{1}{2}$, or 12×15; but 10×12, or 12×14 would have to be used for the last two, as a half could not be made, and 12×15 is an unusual size. Either would do by drawing out the design a little when enlarging it for the point paper. Square paper might also be used by counting off the number of checks required, and drawing an elongated pattern to cover them; but it is more desirable to have suitable paper for work that is at all particular, and in case of such as

Digitized by Google

12 × 15 paper, 8 × 10 is the same proportion, and could be used for it, the squares afterwards being ruled in 12's for the card-cutter.

Each upright space on the design paper, between the lines, represents a thread of warp or one hook of the jacquard, and each space between the horizontal lines represents a pick, or shot, of weft, or one card of the pattern; so that a painted pattern is a magnified view of the texture of the cloth, in common jacquard work.

Fig. 69 is a small sketch for a border with spot filling, which is shown on design or point paper in Fig. 70. The paper is 8 × 8; the first four checks are used for a selvage, and the pattern is on $12\frac{1}{2}$ designs or 100 threads of warp, and 22 designs or 176 cards would be required for the weft, the pattern being made about three times the

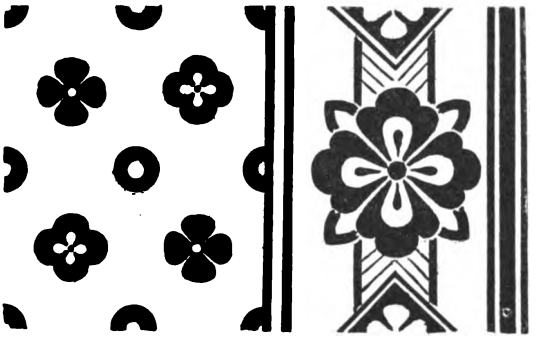


FIG. 69

size on the design paper that it is on the sketch. The design paper has 16 checks per inch, consequently the cloth would have about 48 threads to the inch to make the pattern appear as the sketch. If the cloth were finer, say with 72 threads per inch, then 150 checks on the design paper would be required for the pattern, which means that 150 hooks of the jacquard would be required for working it. Whatever width the sketch occupies (one repeat of the pattern), multiply this by the number of threads of warp per inch to be in the cloth required, and the product will be the number of hooks required for the jacquard, and the number of checks or spaces required on the design for the warp. The number of cards is found similarly from the weft of the cloth. If, on the other hand, a pattern is to be made for a jacquard,

Digitized by Google

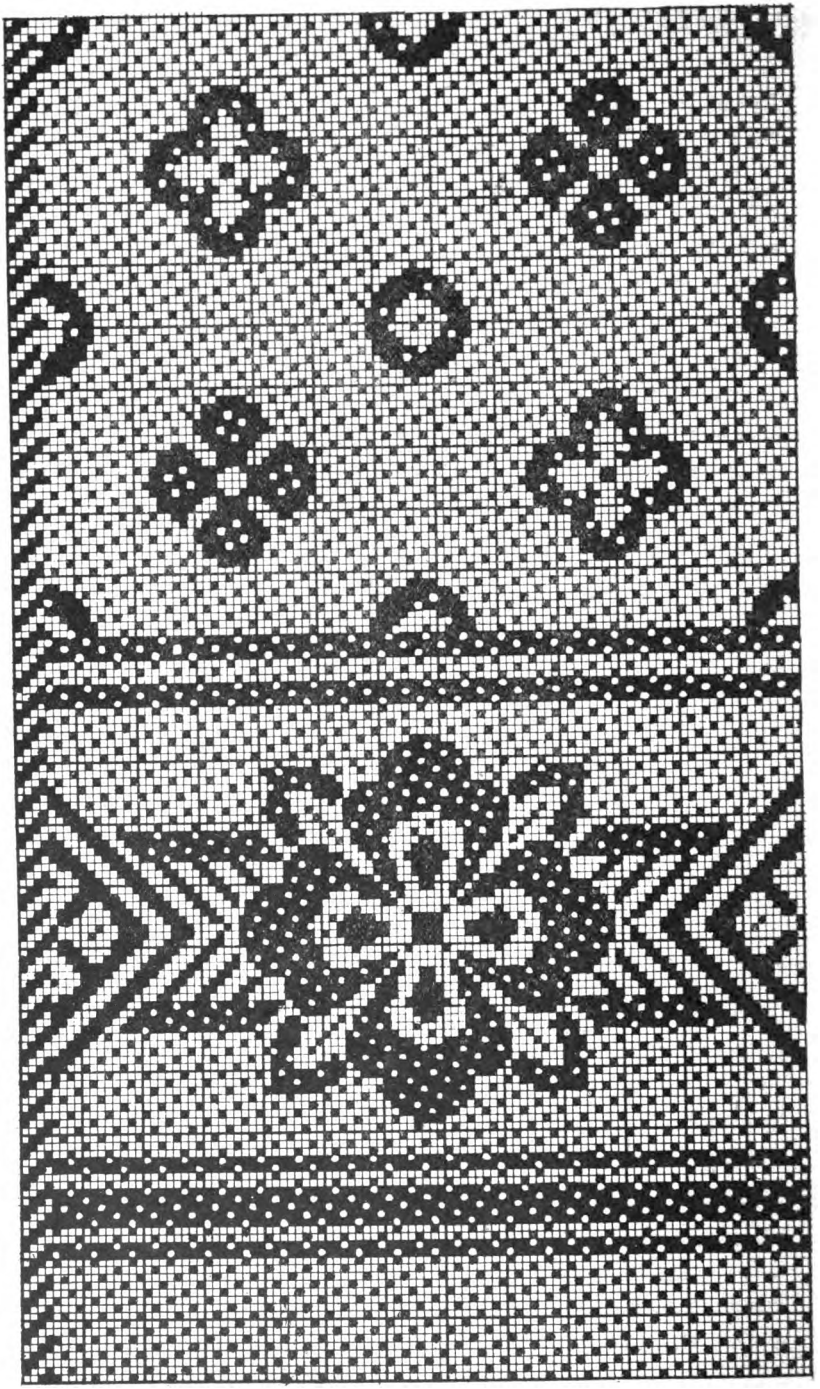


Fig. 70

Digitized by Google

and it is required to find what size of pattern will work on it, divide the number of hooks in the jacquard by the number of threads per inch in the cloth required, and the quotient will be the size of the pattern warp-ways, in inches. The length or weft-way of the pattern can then be arranged to suit the number of cards, or the pattern can be made any length to suit the style of design. Fig. 71 is a pattern of the same style as Fig. 69, and it might be wanted to use it instead of Fig. 69 for cloth of the same make, say 40 to 45 threads per inch. This could not be done, as it could not be put on the design paper, but it would suit very well if intended for cloth with 80 to 100 threads per inch, which would admit of its being sufficiently enlarged (say four

FIG. 71

times the size of the sketch) to be correctly represented by the checks. Fig. 69 would be better on cloth having 50 to 60 threads per inch, coarser sets requiring larger forms.

In preparing a design for point paper, the sketch is usually first made out and selected by competent judges as suitable for the fabric required, as well as for the taste of the market in which the goods are to be sold. When selected it has to be enlarged to suit the size it is to cover on the point paper. Sometimes the enlargement is made on another piece of paper, and is then transferred to the point paper; this is perhaps one of the best methods of proceeding, but it is not so quick as if the enlargement were made upon the point paper direct. It is usual

Digitized by Google

to rule squares on both the sketch and design paper, which bear to each other the same proportion that the size of the sketch does to the size of the design paper required to be covered. This guides the draughtsman, as everything in the small squares on the sketch should be put into the corresponding large squares on the enlarging paper or point paper.

A pantagraph is sometimes useful, and proportional compasses are a great assistance if very correct enlargements are required. When a careful outline of the pattern is made upon the design paper, it is then painted. Some painters dot round the outlines, and in large forms leave them to be filled in by assistants; others paint in solid as they go along. Vermilion and scarlet and crimson lakes are the paints mostly used. The first is easily washed out, but the lakes are more transparent, and admit of the checks on the paper being clearly seen through it, which is a benefit to both twiller and card-cutter. Scarlet lake, with from a half to a quarter its quantity of crimson lake mixed with it, makes a very good paint. The ordinary water-colour cakes are the best paints to use, but powdered colour is sometimes preferred on account of its cheapness. In Fig. 70 the painting is all black, with white twilling on the flowering.

Simple flat ornamental forms, if of sufficient size, are not difficult to put on the design paper, but more intricate forms and shaded effects require a considerable amount of skill, and are tedious, unless to an experienced hand, the difficulty being to get the checks on the design paper to express the figures in the best possible manner, and frequently it is necessary to slightly alter the forms to make them come nicely on the paper.

When the sketch has to be enlarged to, say, three or four times its size, a slight inaccuracy in the painting will have but little effect, as it will be reduced on the cloth. At the same time, advantage should not be taken of this to employ inferior hands at the work, as, the more correct the painting, the more correct will be the pattern on the cloth, although it be reduced in size; and a ragged-edged painting will never have a clear, defined appearance on the cloth. It is in coarse coloured work, such as carpets, that the accuracy of the painting is of the utmost

Digitized by Google

importance, as the pattern on the cloth is as large as, or may be much larger than, it is on the design paper; therefore all inaccuracies are magnified, and no forms that do not come satisfactory on the squares of the paper will have a good appearance on the cloth, so that to a great extent the design must be made to suit the paper. When the pattern is all painted on the design paper, both the ground and pattern for ordinary full-harness work have to be dotted over with the texture of the cloth. This is called twilling. In Fig. 70 the texture is a 5-end satin on both ground and flower. For twilling the ground the same colour is used as the flower or figured portion is painted with, and for the figured portion black is mostly used, sometimes white. The twilling dots on the figure mean blanks, as if these checks were left without any colour on them, or as the ground, and they are passed over by the card-cutter when the cards are being cut.

In twilling care must be taken not to run the dots up against the edges of the flowering so as to injure the form of the figures. In some cases, as at any flat portion, such as a horizontal or vertical line, or any portion of one, this cannot be avoided, but the red dots on the ground should here fall in against the black dots on the figure. It is necessary to begin one set of dots against the other set to carry this out as far as possible, and in some cases, when they will not join, the dots are set out of their places to make them come together. The two dots coming together bind the threads and keep the last thread of the ground on one side, and of the figure on the opposite side—according as it is the weft or warp that is forming the line—from hanging loose or sliding out from the others. The direction of the twill on the ground or flower may vary so as to suit the twill used, and whether a satin or sateen effect is required. Various kinds of twills are frequently used to give effect, but too great an irregularity of texture should be avoided, though a plain ground, with an 8- or 10-end satin for the flowering, may be used for handkerchiefs with a good effect; for heavier work a 5-end satin ground and an 8-end satin figuring may be used, but for firm, strong cloth an 8-end satin for both ground and figure is much better, letting either warp or weft predominate largely in the cloth.

Digitized by Google

Fig. 72 shows how a leaf or any piece of ornament may be shaded; care should always be taken not to let the texture be too close at any part in the shaded portion so as to make hard pieces in the cloth, as would be the case if a plain texture were used in a firm cloth.

Fig. 73 shows how a flower and bud should be painted so as to give a natural, or rather semi-natural, representation. The shading should be made to express the form as well as possible; a variety may also be made in the twilling on the flower, as may be seen on the front

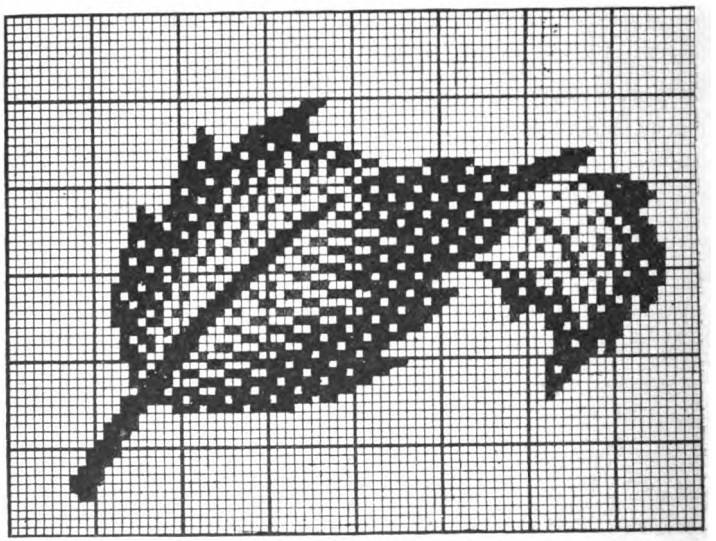


Fig. 72

petal, where a straight twill is used; this makes the cloth richer and the petal come out fuller. This pattern is rather small on the design paper to come well on the cloth; it would be better twice as large, as it may be seen that in many cases single lines of the design paper have to be used for divisions, and for full-harness work it is generally better to have at least two lines, representing two threads.

This painting, omitting the twilling, would suit for a pressure harness, with each line of the design paper representing two or three threads of both warp and weft. No twilling is required on a pressure-

Digitized by Google

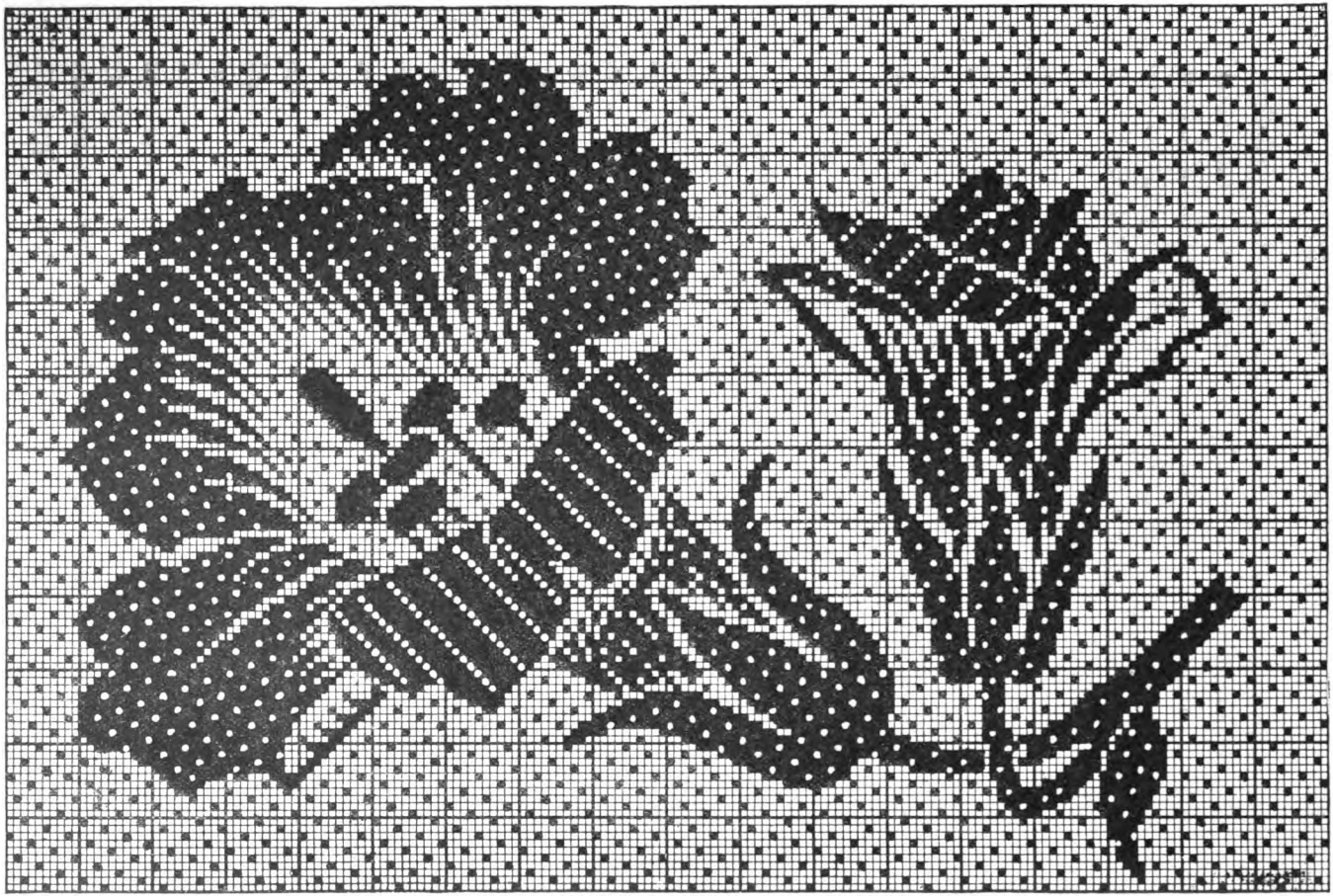


FIG. 73

Digitized by Google

harness pattern, as the texture is wrought by the front mounting; otherwise the pattern is the same, bearing in mind that as each check represents two or three threads, it will not be reduced on the cloth as a full-harness pattern would. The twilling of this pattern is the 8-leaf satin, which is generally used for fine damask, giving a much richer effect than the 5-leaf satin.

It will perhaps be well to make some reference as to the desirability of using these natural forms for designs, though it would be useless to enter into the oft-disputed point of whether it is correct or in good taste to attempt to imitate natural forms upon cloth, or whether even shaded or rounded forms should be treated upon a flat surface. To the latter I would answer without hesitation, by all means do so, but make the appearance satisfactory and keep them in good taste; and this can be done if the subject treated is duly considered.

The former, it must be admitted, is rather pandering to the popular taste than following the dictates of decorative art. One thing is certain, that the 'million' are better satisfied with floral forms than any other class of ornament, and the more loosely treated these are, or the further they are from ornament, the more pleasing they are to those uninitiated in the beauty of line, wanting which no ornamental forms can be pleasing to those educated in art. However, these natural forms suggest Nature, and their admirers have so little idea of Nature's beauties that they do not see the defects in the attempted representations. At the same time, it must not be understood that a pleasing design, or one in good taste, cannot be composed of natural forms—quite the contrary; for small, simple patterns, principally for light fabrics, they are perhaps more suitable than any other ornament, giving lightness and gracefulness of appearance, as may frequently be seen from the designs on the better class of dress goods, whether woven or printed; but the natural treatment must be kept subservient to the flow of the design. Generally, a moderately flat treatment without any strong attempts at light and shade is most successful, the treatment consisting of a graceful arrangement of forms drawn from nature. Everyone knows the beauty and grace of the Japanese designs; but this is not simply because they are natural forms: it is the arrangement of the forms that gives the

Digitized by Google

effect. Very effective patterns can be made for dadoes of coloured curtains from natural objects, as here they can have the upright forms suited to them; but for coloured work, generally speaking, and for carpets in particular, natural forms, unless treated flatly and conventionally, are rarely either pleasing or in good taste. With them it is difficult to obtain that intermingling of colours, be they bright or dull, that produces a neutral bloom and a satisfactory result. Another important point in a pattern, and often overlooked, or not understood, is that, unless the pattern, as a whole, is satisfactory, no variety or beauty of detail can make it a good design. The general character or lines of the pattern must first be made satisfactory, after which the detail may be made as interesting as possible, provided it does not injure the general effect, and is not incongruous to the nature of the design. As to whether flat surfaces should be treated with shaded ornament or not is a point that will always be in dispute, but it may be asked why should a designer be hampered with such restrictions? If he can produce a satisfactory pattern by using either flat or shaded ornament, or both, why not let him do so? The criterion should be whether the result is satisfactory or not. Of course such barbarous work as representing leopards or tigers prowling over carpets or hearthrugs, or even decorating them with the more homely duck or drake nestling, or waddling through water, cannot be too strongly condemned, highly though they were once appreciated, and though they still find favour with many: even shading forms or objects in such a manner as will produce a feeling of weakness, insecurity, or danger, can never be upheld—that is, such a practice as shading ribbons flowing over carpets or hearthrugs like snares, and buttoned down at certain points; or making the surface of the carpet appear very irregular, which has often been done, and is often seen in coloured tile pavements. Of course these remarks refer more or less to any fabric, but a little relief in a curtain would not be nearly so objectionable as on a carpet, so that almost everything turns upon whether the result produced is satisfactory or not—of course, to those competent to judge, and who are not overcome by biassed prejudices. Natural or semi-natural floral ornament will rarely be injured by a little shading, whether on a white

Digitized by Google

or coloured fabric, but it should not be overdone—a moderate amount of shading or a half-flat treatment generally giving a more pleasing effect. Conventional floral ornament is, perhaps, best treated flatly, or with a very little shading on some portions that require a little relief. A richer and purer effect in colour can be got with flat than with shaded colours.

Fig. 74 is an example of a small floral pattern of a class much used for dress goods, either woven or printed, and gives a very pleasing effect. One repeat of the pattern is bounded by the lines

FIG. 74

a b c d, or the whole might be taken as one repeat, and instead of having a row of pears on a line, have a pear and some other fruit alternately, and the same with the apples. This pattern is a semi-natural floral treatment, and if on a larger scale a little more shading on the fruit and a few turned-over leaves or half-open flowers would not injure it, but would add to its richness.

Fig. 75 is a sort of floral ornamental, or flatly and symmetrically treated floral pattern, somewhat after the Persian style, and though some would consider it stiff in comparison with the previous one, it

Digitized by Google

has a very pleasing effect, and could be used the size indicated for dress goods, &c., or if enlarged to two or three times the size it would make a very good curtain pattern. Small sprigs of flowers, grasses, grain, &c., scattered about over the surface of the cloth make generally a favourite style of pattern.

So far the patterns given are such as would require the designer to have a good knowledge of drawing and of ornamental and floral forms, and many consider that a designer must be a draughtsman; but such is not the case.

Fig. 75

Large quantities of patterns are made that do not necessarily require the designer to have any knowledge of drawing; this is called 'small pattern' or 'texture' designing.

A designer of this class should have a thorough knowledge of weaving and of the effect which the patterns on design paper will produce on the cloth. He must, of course, have a taste for the arrangement of forms, and can produce considerable variety by a judicious arrangement of fancy threads through the cloth, particularly in worsted or woollen goods. The following examples will show how great a variety of patterns can be produced without any knowledge of drawing. But a knowledge of drawing will be a great assistance, as it trains the eye to correctness of form. Fig. 76 is a pattern for dress goods; it may be made of cotton only, or with a cotton warp and worsted weft, and a good effect is produced by having the warp a different colour from the weft, say a gold cotton warp and a brown or giraffe worsted weft. Warp 60 to 80 threads per inch, and weft about the same. This is a pattern of the bird-eye class, and a very large range can be made in this style, both bold and effective, or fine and

Digitized by Google

neat, as may be desired. The smaller patterns may, of course, be woven with shafts, but larger ones require a jacquard.

Fig. 77 is another pattern, of the flushed stripe class, also suited for dress goods ; this is a silk handkerchief pattern for 90 threads and 96 picks per inch ; 60/2 China silk for warp, and 60's single China silk for weft. If the small dots on the pattern are cut on the cards, a finer and closer pattern will be produced than if the black squares

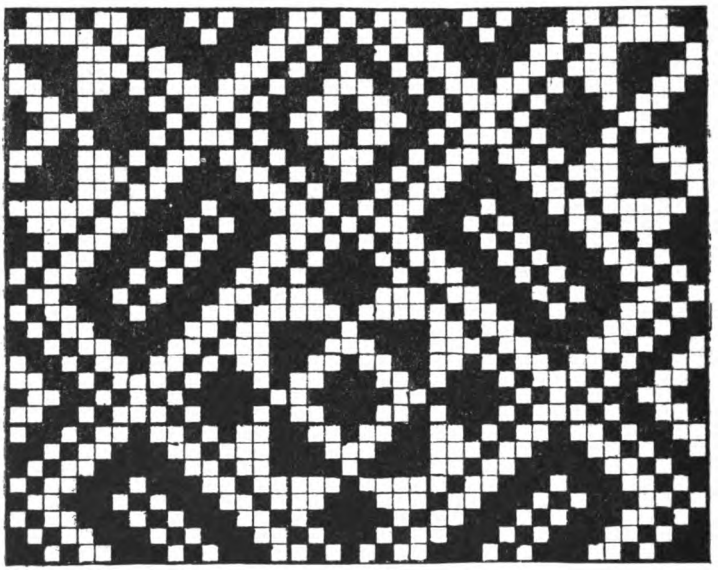


Fig. 76

only are cut, but of course it would be less effective unless on a coarser fabric.

Fig. 78 is a pattern that would suit for dress goods if woven similarly to Fig. 76 ; and if woven much coarser, say 25 to 30 threads per inch, it is suited for quiltings. Great variety can be made in this style of quilts, particularly when floral and other forms are interspersed through the texture, and also when the honeycomb texture is employed, an example of which is given in Fig. 79 in combination with diaper or bird-eye figures ; only a portion of this pattern is given,

Digitized by Google

but it shows all that is required. In either pure white, or with a warp of one colour and a weft of another colour, these patterns are very effective when made from good twist yarn and coarsely set in the reed; the flushing might be over twice as many threads as is shown in the patterns, and then more threads of warp and weft be used. It is perhaps to the woollen and worsted trades we must turn to find the greatest variety of patterns of the description we are now dealing with. True, the greater portion of them can be wrought on shafts, and

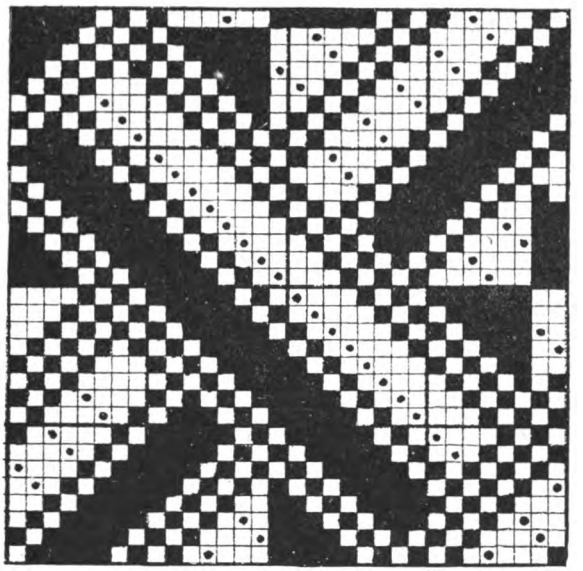


Fig. 77

perhaps a greater number of shafts are used in these trades than in any other branch of textile work, as shafts produce a firmer cloth than a harness; but when large fancy patterns are required, recourse must be had to the jacquard. Fig. 80 is an example of a fancy twill stripe which could be wrought on 48 shafts if desired, but might also be wrought on a small jacquard with greater simplicity, unless very heavy cloth is required. Patterns of this description require considerable skill in designing, and are in some cases more difficult as they increase

Digitized by Google

in size. It may be seen that the pattern or figure is composed of different textures, and to make a perfect cloth the various textures should all work together at an even tightness, or so that there will be an equal amount of take-up of shrinkage of the warp for each. When checks or large patterns are to be formed this is most essential, but in smaller patterns it can in a great measure be remedied by letting the

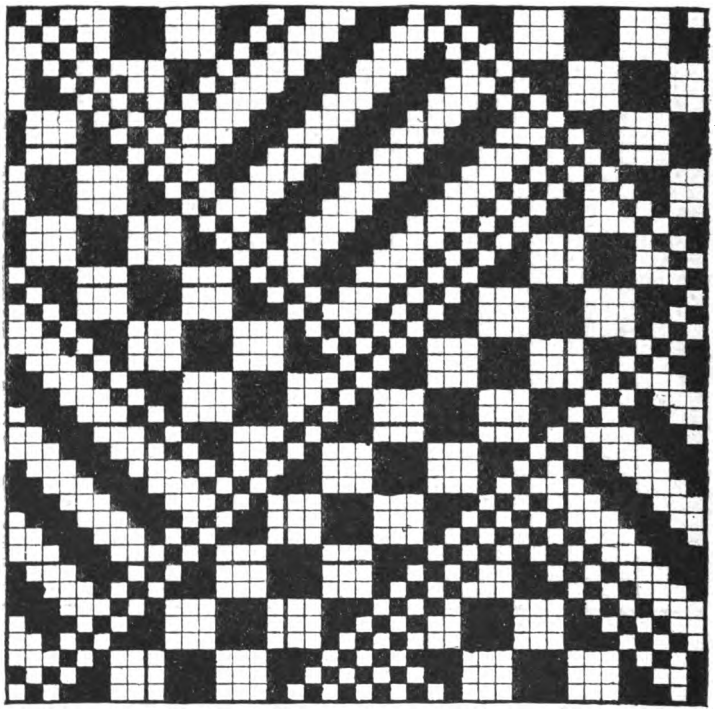


FIG. 78

various textures follow each other, so that if one tightens a little another will make a corresponding slackness, and all together will balance each other. Another important point is to join the edges of the various textures together so that there will be no break, or floats of warp and weft greater or less than in the textures themselves. In some cases tight and loose textures are wrought together to give a

Digitized by Google

special effect, and figures may be formed by the close texture pressing the looser threads together.

Another class of pattern by which a very good effect can be obtained by very simple means, is the hair line or tricot style. Fig. 81 is a dice pattern on this principle. The texture is plain cloth throughout, and the effect of pattern is obtained by using two colours of warp and weft, say black and white, and by arranging the draught and

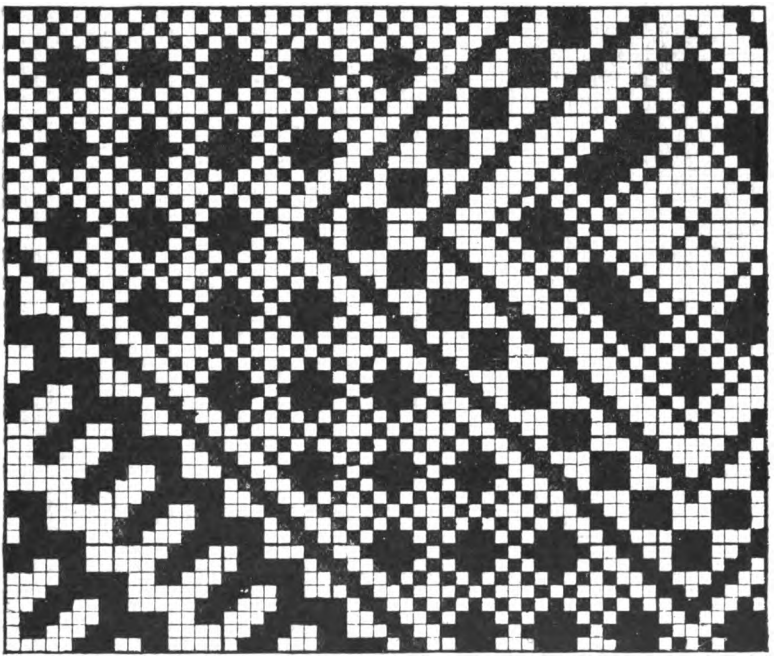


Fig. 79

treading so that the black weft will pass over the black warp and the white weft over the white warp on one dice, and the reverse of this for the next one, a horizontal and vertical lined effect will be produced, giving a subdued pattern. The dark checks on the design paper are the tricot or horizontal line effect; the grey checks the vertical lines or hair line effect. It will be seen at the edge of each dice how the colours are changed in both warp and weft by the two dots coming

Digitized by Google

together. The crosses along the bottom and to the left side of the design show the dark threads and dark picks coming alternately with the white ones.

Fig. 82 is a small figure pattern arranged in this manner, the reversing of the colours being done by the jacquard, as may be seen

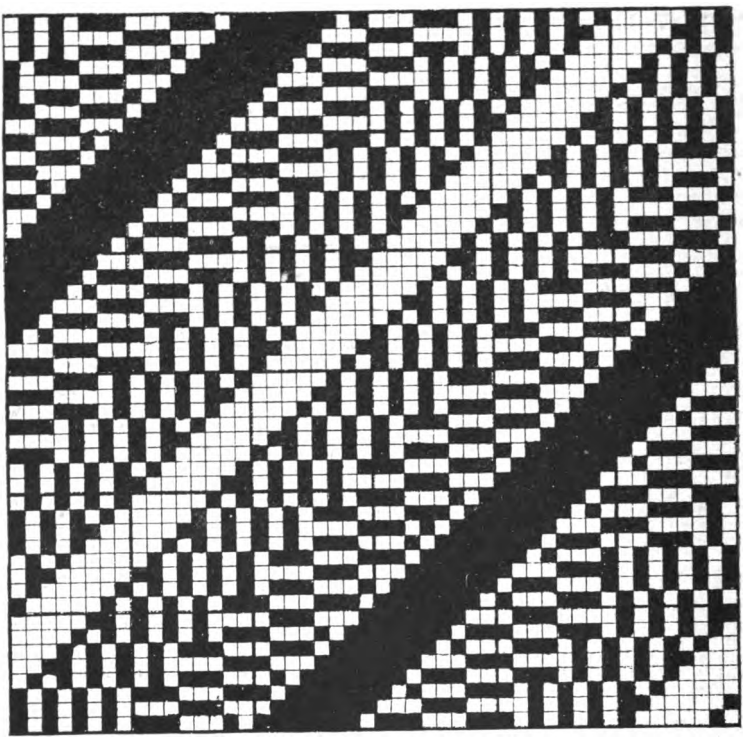


FIG. 80

from the dots on the design. Almost any figure may be treated in this manner, but simple patterns, not too irregular or broken in outline, will perhaps be found most successful.

These fabrics may be made in either woollen, worsted, or cotton for dress goods. About 36 threads of warp per inch of 2/30's worsted, and 32 threads of weft per inch, is a good setting for them; and in

Digitized by Google

any mild contrasts of yarns, such as two shades of grey, they are very pleasing.

Coming now a step further towards the damask or figure patterns, we have still great scope for variety, without much, if any, knowledge of drawing being required from the designer. This consists of

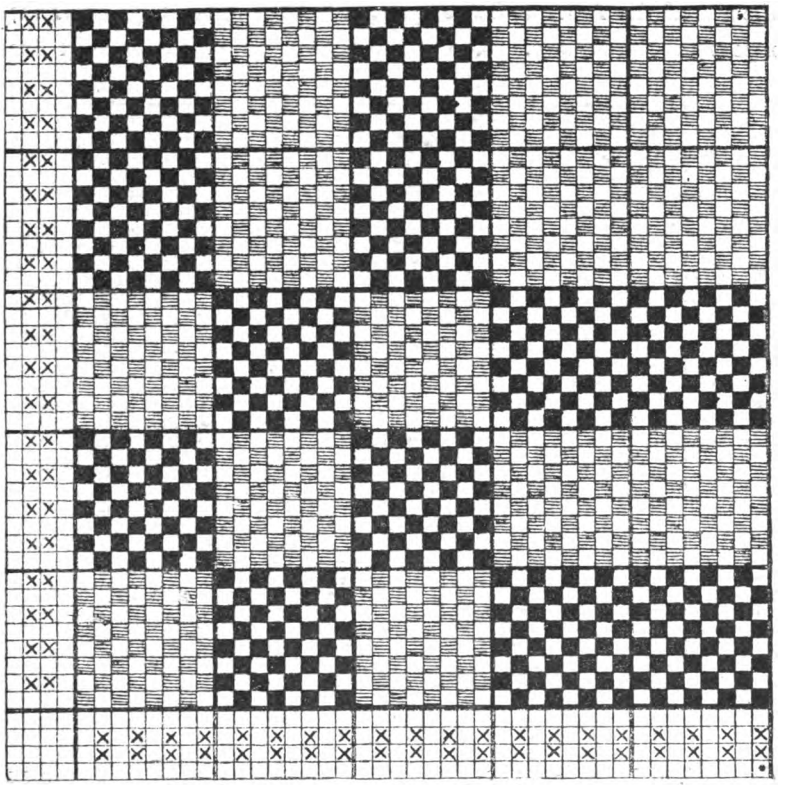


FIG. 81

spotting small geometrical figures over the cloth, the body or ground of which may be plain, twill, or any texture desired. Fig. 83 is a pattern of this description with a plain ground. The figures are arranged in satinette or 4-end satin order. Of course, the ground might be a twill if desired, and the figures may be of any form that

Digitized by Google

ingenuity can suggest. They may be solid, and a twilled texture used to bind them if the flushes of warp or weft are too great, and part of the figure might be warp flush and part weft flush; in fact any variety that the designer can arrange to produce a good effect on the cloth, which, if the warp and weft are of different colours, may be made very effective. Any arrangement for the figures may be used if suited to the size of the figure and the space they have to occupy to suit the repeat of the pattern. The 4-end satin gives two figures on one

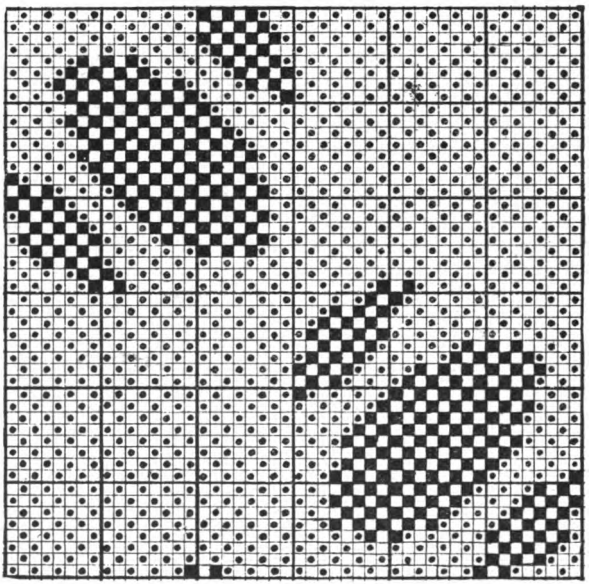


Fig. 82

diagonal, and two on the other diagonal alternately; one figure on each diagonal may be used, and also three figures on each with equally good effect, subject, of course, to some extent to the size and form of the figures. Five and eight-thread satin arrangements are two of the best that can be used if a greater number of figures are required in each repeat of the pattern. To arrange a pattern in satin order, the usual way is to rule the repeat into as many squares in length and breadth as there are threads in the satin to be used. Thus, for a

Digitized by Google

5-thread satin, rule the repeat into five squares in length and the same in breadth, or twenty-five squares in all, then place one of the figures into each of five of these squares, the order being that of the 5-end satin twill. A draughtsman would either sketch these figures on the design paper, or sketch one of them on a piece of plain paper, trace it, and transfer it to the different positions it would occupy on the design paper, and then paint each of them independently. But a designer, without a knowledge of drawing, would mark out the spaces on the

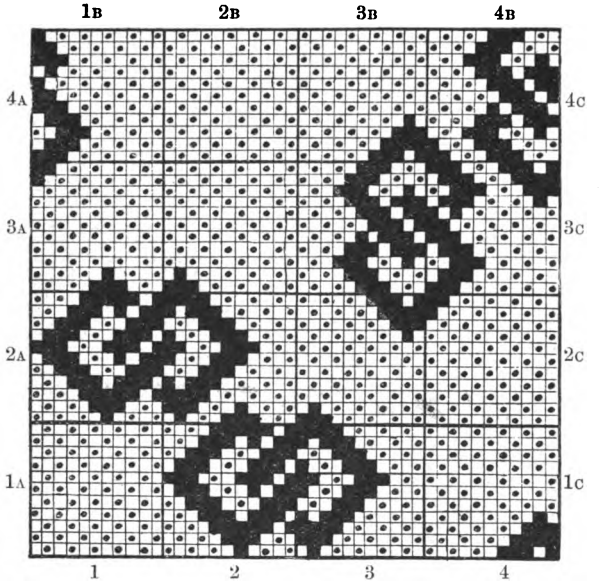


FIG. 83

design paper for each figure, and, having made one of the figures the required shape on the checks or small squares, would copy the others from this. In Fig. 83 let 2A be the first figure formed, it being started in the second square upwards and first row. Now, the second figure can be similarly begun in 4-thread satin order, which would bring it to square No. 2, and it is begun in the same position in this square that the first one was begun in square No. 2A. The third figure falls to the third square from 3A and 3, but as this figure is turned round for variety, the point for beginning it at figures 1 and 2

Digitized by Google

must be marked, and an imaginary square run round it, and it must be kept in its position in the square, or the centre of the figure may be found by counting the checks in either of the first or second figures and this figure wrought from the centre; or, again, as the figure is six checks greater in length than in breadth, it must be set three checks to one side, and the top point should rise three checks higher up above the large square of the design paper on which it should be

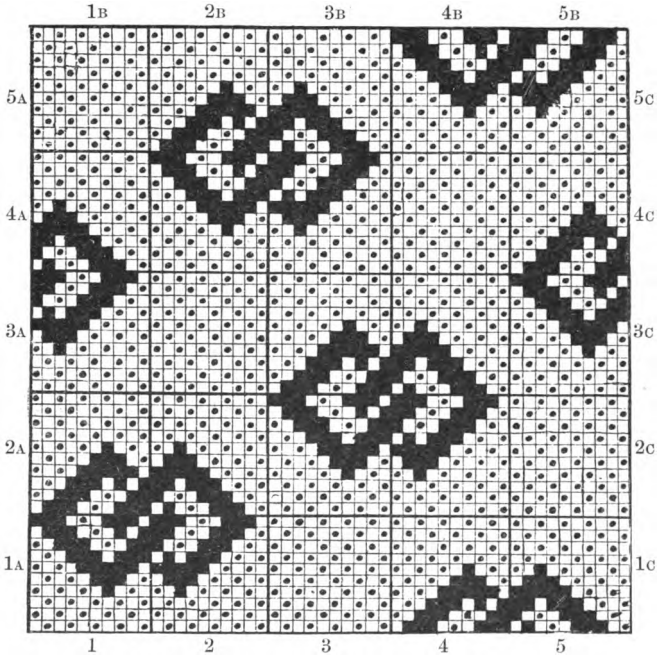


FIG. 84

started; but with a plain ground it is sometimes necessary to move the figures one check out of position to allow the plain to fall in regularly all round them. This figure is set one check down. Fig. 4 is copied from fig. 3, and is in the same position. With a twilled ground or irregular figures, it will not matter if the ground does not fall in quite regularly round them.

If it was required to make a pattern similar to Fig. 83, but with five figures instead of four, and preserve the same density of ground

Digitized by Google

structure round them, it could be calculated as follows :—Fig. 83 is on 44 checks broad and 44 long. Now $44 \times 44 = 1936$, and on this there are four figures, then $1936 \div 4 = 484$. As five figures are required $484 \times 5 = 2420$ checks for design. If there are to be as many checks across the design as up it, find the square root of 2420 for the number of checks, as $\sqrt{2420} = 50$ nearly. If the pattern is not to be square, the proportion may be found for each side by making two calculations, one for the greater number of checks squared, and the other for the lesser number of checks squared, and extracting the square roots for the two sides of the required pattern; or, suppose the warp to be to the weft in the proportion of 10 to 12, then state, as 12 is to 10, so is 50 to 42, the number of checks across the bottom of the pattern; and as 10 : 12 : : 50 to 60, the number of checks in the length of the pattern, and $42 \times 60 = 2520$, which is nearly the same as 50 squared $= 2500$ for a square pattern. But if this is for adding extra weft to the cloth, the size of the pattern would be reduced, which might bring the figures too close together and would alter the shape of them; in this case the addition should be made to the number of checks in length, making the pattern 50 broad and 60 long, or to contain 3000 checks, and the length of the figures should be increased in proportion. Of course this will produce a finer cloth. Fig. 84 is a pattern arranged with five figures on it.

A great variety of patterns may also be formed by arranging dice or squares in various ways, some of which, as may be seen on the Indian fabrics, make very pretty patterns. It will thus be seen that there is plenty of scope for the ingenuity of a textile designer without his being of necessity a draughtsman; but a knowledge of drawing will generally be of assistance to him. For the more elaborate patterns, the designer does not require to have the same knowledge of manufacturing that is required for these small patterns.

Twilling.—It has already been shown how the patterns are bound or twilled to form the texture of the cloth for ordinary repeating patterns on a straight over-tie; but when a turn-over or gathered tie is used, the twilling of one half of the gathered portion will, on the cloth, be the reverse, or run in the reverse direction to that of the other

Digitized by Google

portion, and this is often a disadvantage to this description of tie, as one half of the border or pattern, whatever it may be, will look coarses than the other. It frequently happens that to avoid the stiffness of a clean turn-over pattern, which must always have a clear cutting line through the centre of it, so that, if cut up, one half would, if turned over, be exactly the same as the other, a portion of single, or a turning portion, is placed in between the two turned-over portions, which in many cases adds very considerably to the effect of the pattern, though it is often almost useless. Fig. 85 is a pattern of the turn-over type, and, but for the interlacing of the bands in the centre, might be wrought with a simple gathered tie. For this pattern the portion marked B would require to be single, and A turned over to C. Perhaps it is in floral patterns that this form of tie is of most service. When a single tie takes up too much machinery, and a double over or gathered tie would make the pattern too stiff, a small portion of single introduced, as at B, is of great service to the designer in making a pleasing pattern.

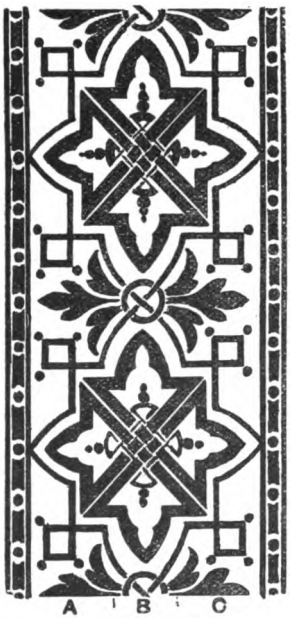


FIG. 85

When twilling a pattern of this description, the portion marked A would be twilled straight across, and this twilling would be continued to the centre of B, as shown in Fig. 86, which gives the idea, the spots in the centre being taken as the single portion. The portion marked C is repeated from the first part A by the harness, and does not require to be put on the painting; in the figure it is shown (in different type) as it would fall on the cloth. It may be seen that the twilling dots on the last line of A and the first line of C are alike, and that every pair of lines corresponds, moving from these to the edges of the pattern. Now a turn must be made in the twill in the single portion so as to make it join correctly with C, and this should be done in such a manner as to

Digitized by Google

prevent it from showing plainly on the cloth, or having too long floats on some of the threads while others are too closely bound. This must be done by setting the dots out of their places on a few lines in the

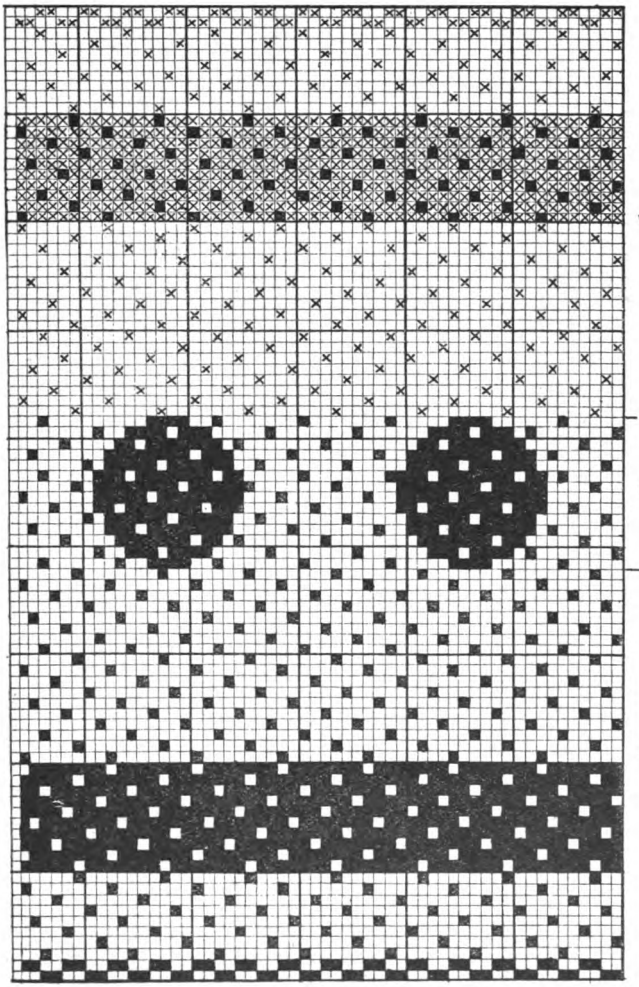


Fig. 86

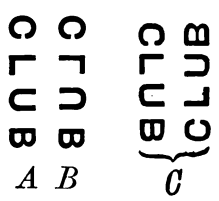
centre, so as to make the join produce as even a texture as possible. Advantage should always be taken of any portions of the pattern that come on this part, such as the spots in Fig. 86, to turn the twill round

Digitized by Google

the edges of them. By following the dots on the design paper, it will be seen how they are brought in at the join. Any twill may be broken similarly, but a different number of threads in the single will alter the arranging of the dots to join the two twills together; however, when the principle is understood, it can easily be worked out.

LETTERS, MOTTOES, ETC.

A turned-over mounting or gathered tie will reverse any ornament, but while for borders it makes the ornament come correctly, it prevents letters or words from falling in as they should be read. Thus, if the word CLUB were woven at one side of a cloth, as at A, and the harness mounted as a gathered repeat so as to turn over a similar border to the other side, the letters would fall as at B, making them read correctly to the under side of the cloth instead of to the upper side. Instead of making a gathered tie, it would be better to make a plain repeating tie for the second border, making the word CLUB on both borders as either A or B, according as they are to read correctly on the under or upper side of the cloth; but if it is desired to make the letters read correctly from both sides or edges of the cloth, as at C, it is plain that there must be hooks in the jacquard to work each border independently, as one is not a repeat of the other. Of course letters on damask will only read correctly on either the face or back of the cloth, not on both. The same principle holds good when putting names across the cloth, or for coats of arms and mottoes in the centre, as is frequently done in quilts, tablecloths, &c., but in this case it would be the cards that would do the work. Suppose the word HOTEL to be put across a cloth at one end, and it was required to have the same at the opposite end to read similarly from that end of the cloth, it would require to be painted thus, ⅂ƎLOH, or the cards might be cut from the painting of the former, turned upside down. Provided it was required to make these words read correctly on the under side of the cloth in the loom instead of



A B C

Digitized by Google

on the upper side, then the first border would be painted and cut as ꓶƎTOH and the second border as HOꓶƎꓶ This will be best understood by printing the letters on tracing paper and turning it round into the position required. In case of a motto or coat of arms wanted for a large cloth with two centres in it, one centre to be correct from one end of the cloth, and the other from the opposite end, as shown by the girdles at A and B, Fig. 87, the painting would be as in this figure if the upper side of the cloth is to be the right side, but if the under side is to be the right side, the first centre would require to be painted as shown in Fig. 88, and the second one would be as this turned round, the top where the bottom is, not turned over. It might be thought that the same painting would do for both ; either that cutting the cards from top to bottom, or backwards, or lacing them backwards, or working them backwards on the loom, would do for the second centre ; but it would not unless the cards were turned over as well—that is, to have the outsides of the cards turned inwards, and the right-hand end to the left. This would suit if it could be done, but could only be done when the jacquards are made with an equal number of needles to each side of the machine, as 25 rows, or 200 needles, to each half of the card for a 400 machine, instead of 26 rows to one side and 25 to the other, making 408 needles, as is usually the case.

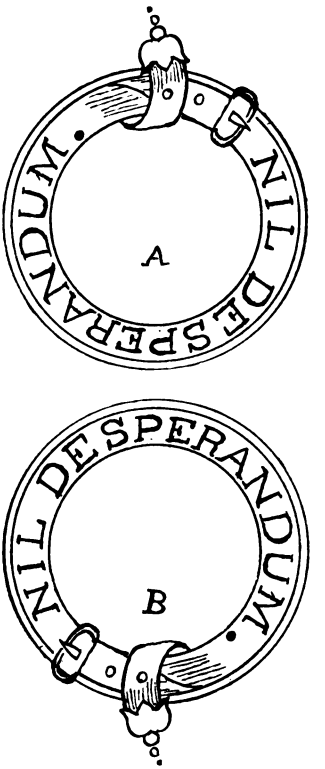


FIG. 87

In hand-loom districts, where old makes of machines are used, it is common to have 400, 500, or 600 needles to the machine, and the cards can be turned on the cylinders if required, and are also wrought

Digitized by Google

backwards or forwards to suit. By cutting the cards from the painting in the reverse order—that is, beginning at the end of the painting and reading and fingering backwards—cards from a painting of a first centre could be cut to suit for a second centre, as it has exactly the same effect as turning over the card; but all the rows of needles must be used except any left at the first, and these and any selvage must be brought to the end of the painting when cutting the second set of cards, so as to get them to the first end of the card. The cutting begins, as is usual, at the numbered end of the card. Repainting the centre to suit is the safest way to avoid mistakes.

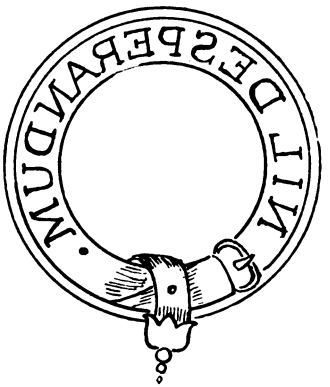


FIG. 88

When a name is running up the side of the cloth, lacing or working the cards backwards will reverse the reading of the letters from one side to the other, but not when they are running across the cloth. If the loom is mounted with the cards hanging to the front instead of to the back, the letters would also be turned from one side of the cloth to the other, and to be correct they would have to be painted or cut the reverse, unless the machine or mounting was built to suit.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER V

CARD-CUTTING AND LACING

THE mountings which have been given are of two descriptions—the Norwich, with the straight harness, and the London or twisted harness, with the cards hanging to either side of the loom, as the machine can be turned either way to suit. For the Norwich ties the cards are supposed to hang to the back of the loom, but it often happens that there is not space between the looms to admit of all the cards being hung at the back, and it is usual for one loom to have the cards to the back and the next one to the front. When the cards hang to the front of the loom the mounting is tied up so that when finished it will be the same as if mounted for the cards to hang at the back; and afterwards turned round so that the back will be at the front. In case the back left-hand corner twine is the first cord of the harness with the cards at the back, the front right-hand twine would be the first if the cards are at the front, and the drawing in of the yarn must begin at it. If the loom is mounted in this way, and the yarn drawn in from the opposite side, as if the cards were to hang at the back, the result will be a toothed or broken-up appearance round the edges of the pattern. The same cards will do for either mounting, but the pattern and twill will be reversed on the cloth—that is, they will run from left to right on the one, and from right to left on the other. The effect produced on letters was mentioned when speaking of them.

It was mentioned that jacquards are usually made with 51 rows of hooks or needles, of 8, 10, or 12 in the row, being for 4°°, 5°°, and 6°° machines respectively, which are those most used; 2°° and 3°° machines are used for small mountings, but they may be considered as half 4°° and 6°° machines. Sometimes the machines are made of any size

Digitized by Google

required—that is, with any desired number of rows of holes in the needle boards. The objection to this is that the cards cannot be copied on the ordinary repeating machines; but piano card-cutting machines can be made with the index to suit for cutting any length of card. When using 4°°, 5°°, or 6°° machines, or the double sizes, 8°°, 10°°, or 12°°, and more than one is required for the mounting, a second must be used, such as an 8 and a 4. or a 12 and a 6; a 12 and a 5 would not do so well, as the 12 has 12 needles in the row and a 5 has but 10. It would be better to use a 12 and a 6 and leave 100 hooks idle, if only 1700 are required. If a 12 and a 5 is to be used it may be done by having the cumber board made 12 in the row, but made finer in the proportion of 12 to 10; then, where the 12-row harness is to pass through it, every sixth row of holes can be left empty, and it will be all right for the 10-row harness from the 5°° machine.

Designs are painted upon the point paper for the purpose of enabling them to be transferred to the cards, which act on the needles of the jacquard, and cause the proper warp threads to be raised. The pattern is put upon the cards by punching holes in them, one hole being punched for each check on the design paper that is filled in with colour, or it may be the reverse of this, or otherwise, according to circumstances. The common method is to cut the red, and leave the ground or unpainted portion, and the black, which stands for ground. There is a card for each line of the design paper for damask patterns; the holes in the cards represent the dots on these lines, if each line was cut off and cut into separate designs or larger squares, then these squares set up lengthways and laid together. Take the pattern, Fig. 70, and cut the first line from left to right. The card is shown at Fig. 89 at A. Turn the pattern upside down and examine the first line to the right-hand side. The two first checks are empty; two holes in the card or two punches of the piano machine are passed over; the next three checks are painted, for these three holes are cut in the card, and the remaining three checks in the design being empty are passed over. The next design has the second and seventh checks filled and these are cut on the card, and so on with the others. The two small holes at each end of the card are for the lacing twine, and the

Digitized by Google

large one at each end for the peg on the cyclinder of the jacquard. The intersections of the fine lines on the card show where the holes fall when required to be cut.

This card would be for a 200 machine, the empty or unused needles being left at the first half of the card; 26 rows of 8 needles to the card. The card B given in this figure is the first of the heavy cutting, No. 17 on the pattern. Reading from the pattern as before, pass 2, cut 2, pass one which is black, cut 3, and so on, cutting the red and passing the black or twilling dots whether they be white, black, blue, yellow, or green; they are only there for convenience, to avoid the trouble of leaving the spaces empty when painting the pattern at first, it being simpler to dot them over afterwards.

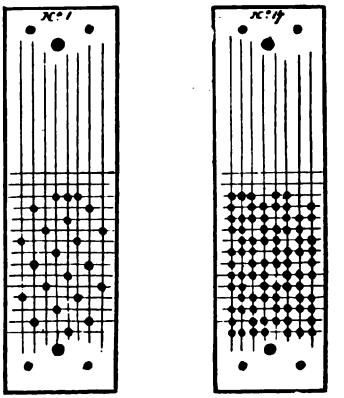


FIG. 89

The cards are numbered at the selvage end, which goes to the sneck side of the jacquard when working. The design may be read from left to right, but the usual method is to turn it upside down, and read from right to left, which comes to the same thing, beginning to cut from the numbered end of the card. Some begin to cut at the other end of the card, and read from right to left on the design without turning it, which is still the same. If the loom is mounted or the yarn drawn in, beginning with the front row of the harness instead of with the back row to the left-hand side, the cards should be read the reverse way from the design paper; or, what would be the same, turn them over after cutting them. This changes the top row of holes in the cards to the bottom, or from the back to the front of the cumber board. In case of the loom being mounted from back to front, and the yarn being drawn into the harness beginning with the front row in the cumber board, the cards, if cut in the ordinary way, would give the pattern a broken or toothed appearance. Turning the cards upside

Digitized by Google

down would remedy this, but would only answer if each part of the mounting consisted of full rows of needles, for, if any part began or ended on a broken row, turning the card would take the holes in it for this part row away from the needles: that is, say if the harness was connected with four needles at the top of the row and the card cut for these, the holes would fall on the four needles at the bottom of the row, if the card was turned upside down. The cards should be numbered on the side which is uppermost when they are being cut, and this side should come against the needles if the work is properly carried out.

The old method of cutting cards was for one to take the pattern and call out the holes to be punched, and they were punched out by a

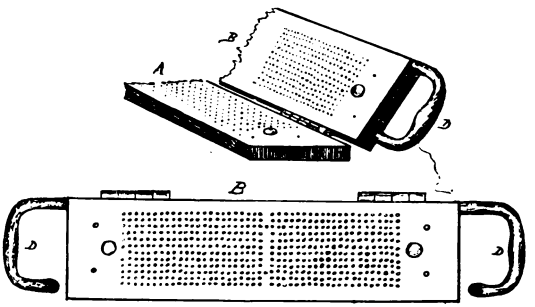


Fig. 90

second person, a perforated plate over the card being sometimes used as a guide to place the holes in their correct positions. A better method was found in the punching plates shown in Fig. 90. A and B are two plates hinged together. B No. 2 shows the full upper plate. The card is placed on the lower plate, and the upper one closed down on it. Punches are then filled by hand into the holes in the upper plate according as the pattern is read from the design; then the plates are passed through a roller press, which pushes the punches through the card. With small machines this suited very well; but the filling in of the punches was tedious for larger machines, and shortly after the introduction of the jacquard by Mr. S. Wilson, in 1821, he introduced a method for filling the plate

Digitized by Google

with punches to correspond with each line of the design paper, as follows:—Over, or in front of, the design a set of upright cords is placed, as in reading the patterns on the simple of the draw-loom. On these cords the pattern is picked, and weft threads drawn in, one for each line of the design paper, for plain damask. When all the design is finished the threads compose one repeat of the pattern in a loosely-woven cloth. The upright cords or leashes pass through eyes in a set of needles, arranged like those in a jacquard machine and each weft thread put in, when picking the pattern, shows which of the leashes are to be drawn. As each set of leashes is drawn the needles connected with them come into contact with a set of punches arranged in a frame or plate, and push them into a punching plate, which is then placed over the card, as in Fig. 90, and passed through a roller press. This method of picking the pattern for card-cutting is still in use, and an improved method of using the plates and rollers is still found very convenient for many purposes, such as copying cards and small patterns, &c. (See Copying Machines.)

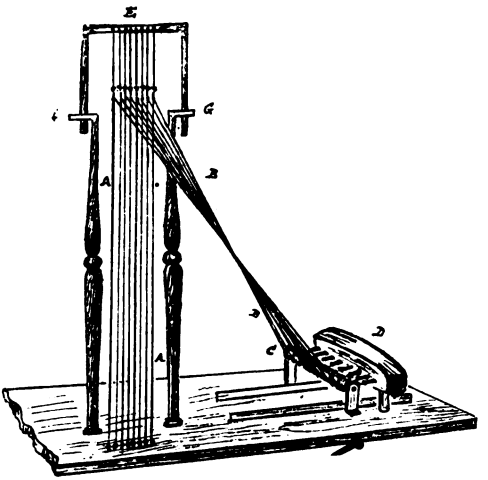


Fig. 91

Card cutting is now almost entirely done by 'piano machines.' They take the name of piano from the pins or keys which are arranged for the cutter's fingers, and to distinguish them from an older machine, which is similar in make, but in it the pins or keys which act as locks on the punches are wrought with cords instead of by the fingers. The cord machine is similar in make to the piano machine; but the cutter usually sits at one side, and has the board or stand for the pattern facing him. The treadles are also turned sideways; but the cord is put in at

Digitized by Google

the end, as in the piano machine. Fig. 91 shows how the cords are arranged. AA are the cords, 12 in number, which the cutter draws. BB are another set from the former ones to the keys, passing under pulleys at C. D is the punch-box. The keys have springs on them, which press them in over the heads of the punches; but at the top of the cords are indiarubber springs, fastened to the crossbar E on the frame which supports the cords, and these springs are strong enough to draw out the keys. When any of the cords AA are drawn down the cords BB connected with them are slackened, and the keys spring in over the punches, locking them, and punching holes when the treadle is pressed down.

The cords BB can be connected from the right-hand side of AA to the right-hand side of the punch keys, and run from right to left, or they may be the reverse of this, according to the way the cutter reads the pattern. Sometimes piano machines are fitted to work with cords to suit the cutter. In this case there is only one set of cords, as AA, set behind the punch block, and the cutter sits at the end of the machine. Instead of springs, weighted levers, or tumblers, may be used at the top of the cords on the bar E. When springs are used the bar should be lowered when the cutter is not working, by slackening the set screws at GG, so as to relieve the strain on the springs. When working the cord machine the cutter uses only one hand to draw the cords; but on the piano machine he uses both hands, and can proceed quicker with the cutting.

Fig. 92 is a view of Devoge's piano cutting machine. In these machines one cross row of the card is punched at each tread; the cutter sits in front of the machine, with the design fastened on the frame before him, as shown in the figure. The straight-edge, or ruler, across the design is for the purpose of guiding the cutter's eye along the line of the design paper that he is cutting from, and he screws it up or down a line, as the case may be, for every card he cuts. He keeps one foot on each treadle and his fingers on the keys in the punch block, the arrangement of which is shown in Fig. 93, and presses in a key to correspond with each dot on the line of the design paper on one design, or large square, for each tramp.

Digitized by Google

The numbered end of the card is put into the clip on the index carriage, and the guide for the card set to suit the width of the card used, so that the punch will cut the holes in the centre of the card. The lacing and cylinder peg holes are first cut, by pressing in the keys E for the peg hole, and for the lacing 2 and 7 for an 8-row card, 1 and 8 for a 10-row, and *a* and *c* for a 12-row. Any blank designs, or rows of the card, are now passed over, by running back the index carriage, if

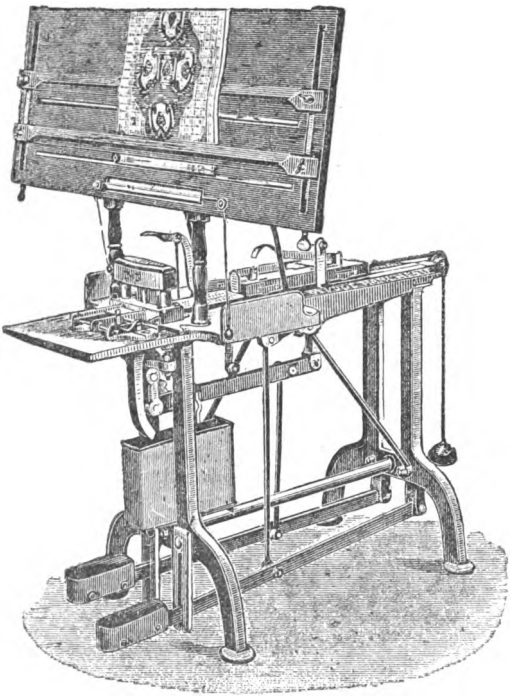


Fig. 92

the design does not occupy the full length of the card, it being the usual custom to leave all empty rows to the selvage or numbered end of the card, though it may in some cases be advisable to be otherwise. The selvage, if any, is usually cut first, and then the pattern.

Pressing down the right foot treadle, when any of the keys are pushed in, punches holes in the card with the punches locked, and the

Digitized by Google

left foot treadle, which works alternately with the other, is for moving the index carriage, which shifts the card from one row of holes that have been punched to the next one, so as to place it in position for the punches. In Fig. 93 the black dots represent the heads of the punches, 12 in number. The keys 1 to 8 are used for cutting an 8-row card; when any key is pressed in it passes over the head of its corresponding punch, and locks it, so that when the cutter presses down the treadle and the punch block is brought down on the card, the locked punch is pressed through it, while those not locked rise up. The keys *a* and *c* added to the 8 suit for cutting 10-row cards, and *b* and *d* added to these suit for 12-row cards. The four keys *a b* and *c d* can be pressed in with the two thumbs. E is the key for the peg hole.

A good cutter can cut from 100 to 150 cards per hour, but this is

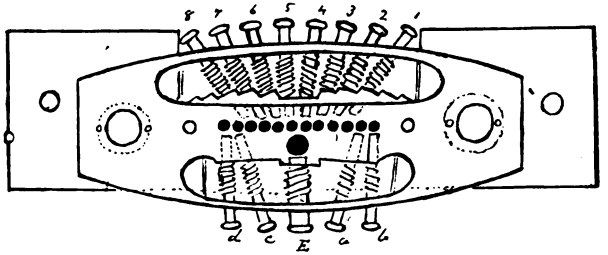


FIG. 93

laborious for constant work. Sometimes the cutting machines are driven by power, but as yet (1894) this is not general.

Messrs. Devoge & Co. can attach an arrangement to their machines so that they can be driven with a belt. The punch block is wrought by a lever driven by an eccentric, and is kept constantly rising and falling; the cutter fingers the pins so as to keep time with the punch block, and should he wish to stop, or should anything go wrong, he can stop the card at once by raising one treadle and pressing down the other, which throws the motion for shifting the index carriage out of gear, and the card stands stationary, and although the punch block continues to work it takes no effect when the punches are not locked by the keys. The machine works very smoothly, with very little noise, and with a little practice any boy or girl accustomed to card cutting can

Digitized by Google

easily become acquainted with working it. The index of the piano machine is generally made for 51 rows of holes in the cards, 400, 500, and 600 machines being those generally employed: 51 rows of 8=408 needles; 51 rows of 10 = 510 needles; and 51 rows of 12 = 612 needles, which, with a few odd needles on the 25-row side, represent the number of needles in a 4°°, 5°°, and 6°° machine. If larger machines with longer cords are required, the index of the cutting machine must be altered to suit them.

Card paper should be of such a quality as will not be easily affected by the atmosphere. When cards are for small machines, and are only required to work for a short time, an inferior paper will do for them, and save expense; but for large patterns which are intended to work for years it will come cheaper in the end to get a good quality of paper—in fact, the best that can be made. Specially prepared oil-saturated paper is made for the purpose of preventing the atmosphere taking too much effect on it. For hand looms, sometimes the cards are painted with red lead, and sometimes with shellac varnish, or shellac (best red) dissolved in methylated spirits.

Cards are made of different weights of paper; some prefer them thin, and others thick. A moderately thin, tough paper is the best. About 16 to 18 cards to 1 lb., for 400 cards, is a good medium weight.

After the cards are cut they have to be laced into a chain to revolve round the jacquard cylinder on the loom. The usual method of lacing is to have a frame with pegs or studs set in it at a distance apart to suit the size of the jacquard cylinder. The cards are spread on this frame as shown at A, Fig. 94, and laced with a steel needle, thicker in the centre than at the ends; it is about 2½ in. long, and has an eye in the centre, through which a piece of fine twine is tied in a loop, and the lacing tape can easily be drawn through this. The cards at A are numbered 1, 3, 5, but all the numbers would follow in rotation if the jacquard had only one cylinder; if a double-cylinder machine, half the cards would be laced forward, as at A, and the other half (the even numbers) backward, as at B. The odd numbers usually go to the back of the loom, and the even ones to the front.

Several kinds of cord and tape are used for lacing cards, but two

Digitized by Google

plies of round cotton cord, well soaped or waxed, is usually the most satisfactory for wear.

When lacing cards, the lacings should be crossed over, each one passing from left to right of the other in turn, at each hole and between the cards. This is important, to keep the cards straight.

The cards should be tightly laced, as the lacing is almost certain to stretch a little; so that they are better for being rather tight for the cylinder at first, otherwise, they are liable to become too slack after a little wear, and if such is the case they will not fall properly on the cylinder pegs. This and other causes—such as irregular expansion or contraction of the cards, badly cut cards, and a long draw on the cards —occasion considerable wear on the peg holes, and now eyelets are being tried in them to avoid the breaking-up of the holes; but it is

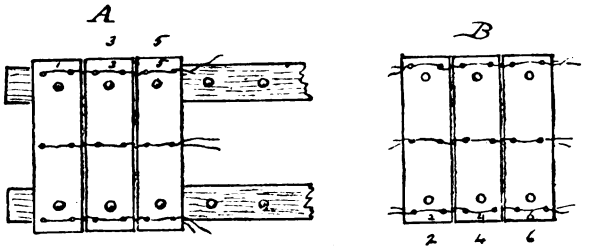


FIG. 94

probable that good paper and careful work will prove a more suitable remedy. The card should not be deeper than the face of the cylinder; better a trifle less, to allow for the lacing to pass between them, and then if laced as tightly as possible they will still be pliable and work freely. Cards are usually numbered with pen and ink, but the numbers may be stamped on with an indiarubber stamping machine similar to that used for paging books.

Lacing Machines.—The Singer Sewing Machine Company brought out a machine some years ago for lacing cards, and it performs its work very well, though many object to it, as it stitches a lacing tape along the cards, instead of lacing them in the usual way. The machine is a 3- or 4-head sewing machine, according as three or four rows of lacing are to be used on the cards. The lacing is a tape; one tape is

Digitized by Google

laid below the cards at each row of lacing, and another above, and both are stitched together through the cards.

Another machine was invented by Count Sparre more recently which laced or sewed the cards through the ordinary lacing holes, much in the same manner as hand lacing, except that the lacings are looped on each other through the holes instead of passing up and down through alternate holes.

A still later one, by Messrs. Reid & Fisher, of Dunfermline, and Mr. Parkinson, of Bradford, has further improvements; this machine is now working very satisfactorily. Other machines have since followed.

Copying or Repeating Machines.—There are several varieties of machines for copying or repeating a set of cards after they have been cut by the piano machine, and it often happens that this is required in case of several looms being put on the same pattern; or it may be that a set of cards for one loom is made up of two or three parts repeated several times.

One of the simplest of the repeaters is a small treadle machine in which the card is repeated by rows, the holes of the cut card acting upon needles that push in the pins above the punches, which are similar to those in the piano machine; and each row is punched by depressing a treadle. This is a slow method of repeating, but suits for small factories where it is not worth while having a more expensive machine. Any boy or girl can repeat the cards, instead of requiring a card-cutter to read them.

A more useful machine is the railway press repeater; it is taken from the old method of cutting described on page 142. The cards to be repeated are placed on a cylinder the same as that used in the jacquard, and pass down over the ends of long needles similar to the jacquard needles, but arranged in a box, and with long helical springs on them. In a thick plate, or box, in front of the needles is a set of punches, and the stamping plate rests in front of the punch box, close up against it. By means of a treadle the needle box can be drawn forward, and where there are holes in the card to be copied the needles pass through them, and, pressing on the punches, push them from the box into the stamping plate. The punches have heads on them that will not pass through

Digitized by Google

the stamping plate, but will go into the holes in the box or frame, and when they are pushed into the plate it can be drawn away and turned over so as to prevent them from falling out. The plate is then placed on a box-plate made to hold the card to be cut, and somewhat similar to that shown in Fig 90. The box or hinged plates are set on a slide frame with rollers to travel on, and at the end of the frame is a strong roller press. The plates can easily be run forward to the press, and the card punched by running them under the roller; it may then be taken out, and as many impressions from the plate cut as are required. When finished, the stamping plate is taken back to the punch box and placed against it as before; then, with a comb, or block of wood, set

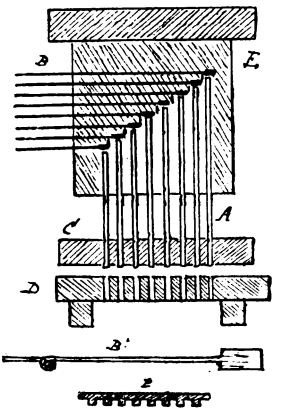


FIG. 95

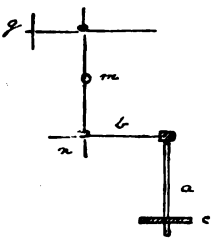


FIG. 96

with pins, all the needles are pushed out of the plate into the punch box. Another card can be brought before the needles, and the plate filled as before.

This machine is very useful for copying damaged cards, even when a repeater as those about to be described is at hand. A damaged card can be held between the needles and punches, and the plate filled, same as when copying a set.

Figs. 95, 97, and 98 show the principle of working three of the best-known repeating machines, which will copy a set of cards at the rate of from 40 to 60 per minute. Fig. 95 shows the arrangement of the punches in Nuttall's patent repeater. The punches are shown at

Digitized by Google

A, and the stoppers or keys at B; the cards to be punched pass in between the blocks C and D. B^1 shows the shape of one of the stoppers which, when over a punch, locks it, and causes a hole to be cut in the card. The stoppers all stand over the punches when at rest; the cards to be copied are hung on a cylinder, and act on a set of horizontal needles, *g* (Fig. 96); these needles have upright wires, *m*, *n*, passing through eyes in them, and also through eyes in the stoppers *b*. The upright wires act as levers, working on centres, *m*; and when one of the horizontal needles *g* is pushed back by the card to be copied, the corresponding stopper *b* is drawn from above the punch *a*, which allows it to rise when the card to be cut is raised up against it by the block D (Fig. 95), between which and the punch block *c* the cards to be cut pass, so that no hole is punched in the card; but where there are holes in the card to be copied, the needles *g* are not pressed back, and the stoppers are allowed to remain over the punches, locking them, and causing holes to be cut in the card pressed up against them.

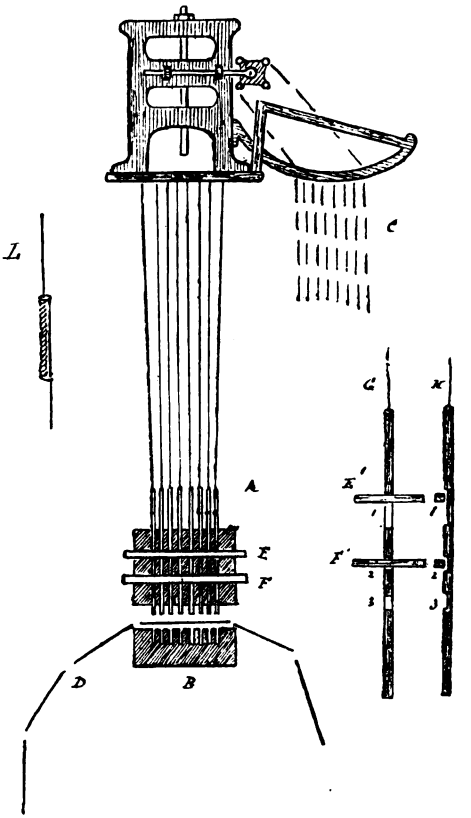


FIG. 97

This machine has been superseded by one in which upright rods act as stays on the punches. These rods stand on the punches, which have concave tops on them; the upper ends of the rods rest under the

Digitized by Google

bars of a grid, or rebated plate, shown in section at P (Fig. 95). When in this position the punches are all locked. A set of needles are connected with these rods, and when the card to be copied presses on them, those that are pushed back move the top of the rods connected with them from under the bars to the spaces between them, which allows

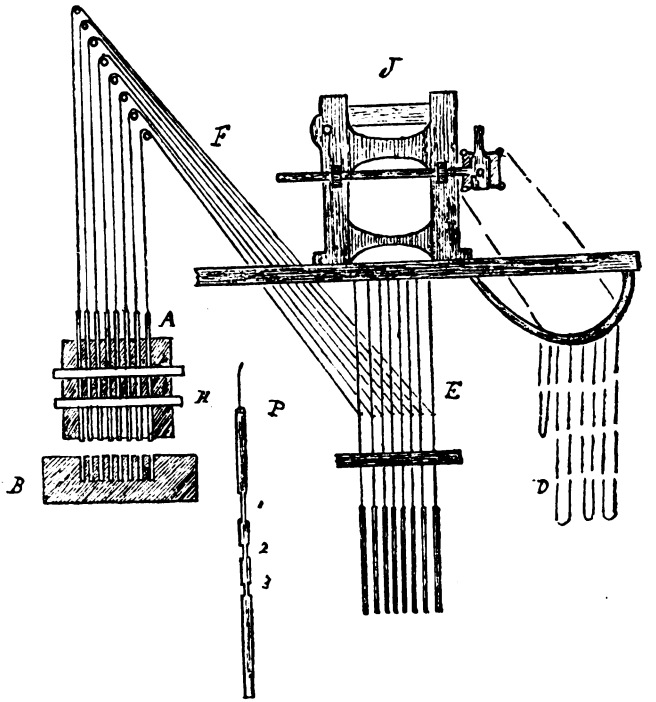


FIG. 98

the rods to rise up with the punches when the card to be cut is pressed up.

The principle of a repeating machine made by Mr. McMurdo, of Manchester, is shown in Fig. 97. The cards to be copied hang on the card frame of a jacquard, as shown at C. From the hooks of the jacquard to the punches A are wires in the form of a single harness. The blank cards D pass in over the block B, which is stationary. Enlarged front and side views of a punch are given at G and H. At 1, 2, and 3

Digitized by Google

are shown the notches cut in the punch, through which the slide bars E and F pass. These slides are also shown at E^1 and F^1. The bar E is stationary, acting as a stay for keeping the punches in the box, and the notches in them, at 1, are long enough to let them slide up and down on the bar. The slide F is drawn out before the jacquard is drawn, and pushed in again afterwards; if any of the punches are raised by the jacquard, the notch 3 will be raised to the position of the notch 2, and the slide bar will pass through the lower notch, thus holding the punch up, and when the punch block is pressed down, holes will be cut in the card where the punches are locked in the upper notch. When the punch block is being sunk to punch the cards, it is necessary to have a spring in the wires that connect the punches to the jacquard hooks, and this is effected by having the wires made with a sliding joint and a small spiral spring on them, as shown at L.

The principle of Devoge's repeater is shown in Fig. 98. This is one of the oldest machines in the market, and there are various opinions as to whether it is excelled by any of the others, or not. It is somewhat on the principle of the French repeating machines, being wrought by a jacquard and harness, E, to which a second harness or set of cards, F, is attached, and passes over pulleys to the punches A. When the harness E is drawn by the jacquard, the cords F are slackened, allowing the punches to drop, and they are locked in the punch box by the slide bar, H. The cards to be copied are shown at D, and those to be cut pass through at C. The punch block is stationary, and the block B rises against the punches with the card on it.

The blank cards require to be laced to make them ready for the repeaters, and also to have the peg holes cut in them; blocks are provided for the purpose of cutting the lace and peg holes. An enlarged view of a punch is shown at P.

WIRING CARDS

After the cards are laced, if intended to be wrought on power looms in the usual way, they require to be 'wired'—that is, to have pieces of straight stiff wire, about 2 in. longer than the cards, tied across them

Digitized by Google

to the lacing, so that they may be hung on the racks or frames prepared for them on the looms. The wires should project 1 in., or rather more, at each end of the cards; they should be tied to the under side of the cards, so as not to come against the jacquard cylinder, and it also bears them better, being under the lacing. A piece of waxed twine is mostly used for tying them on.

The distance between the wires depends upon the number of cards, and the height they are when on the loom. For a small set, a wire to every fourteen or sixteen cards is a very good distance apart, but for a large set a wire to every twenty or twenty-four cards will be sufficient in order to give a longer drop and take up less lateral space.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER VI

SPECIAL JACQUARDS AND HARNESSES

CROSS-BORDER JACQUARDS

A DIFFICULTY has always existed in working cross borders on handkerchiefs, cloths, &c., so as to avoid having to shift or change the cards, and also to do without the expense of getting a complete set of cards cut for the whole cloth. It may be also that different patterns are required on the cloth, such as cross bands of small figures, and if, say, twenty cards would make a repeat of one figure, and it was required to weave, say, 100 repeats of this, and then change to, say, fifty repeats of some other figure, the same difficulty would arise as with cross borders. When there is only a short distance between the changes of pattern, it will generally be found more profitable, all things considered, to have the complete set of cards cut, so as to require no changing, particularly if the pattern will run for a length of time; but when the patterns or cloths are long, the cards become very expensive, and even if it would be desirable to get a complete set for the full cloth, it may be that there would not be space on the looms to hold them, over 15,000 cards being sometimes required to weave a complete tablecloth.

Many methods have been adopted to remedy the inconvenience and to save expense. A few of them will be given, but it must be left to manufacturers to judge whether they would prove an advantage to them or not.

For weaving cloths or curtains it is a common practice to have the cross-border cards and one repeat of the centre pattern cut. The card rack is made as in No. 2 (Fig. 99).

When either the border or centre cards are working, they are put

Digitized by Google

into the hollow part of the rack or card frame, as at F, and the other set is hung on the flat rest of the frame, at either D or E. When a change is to be made, a card-shifter has to go up and change from one set to the other, lifting the set that had been working out of the hollow of the frame, and putting it back or forward on the rest D or E, and bringing the set which is to work down into the place of those removed. This, of course, is expensive, gives a great deal of trouble, and is severe on the cards; at the same time, in many cases it is found to answer as well as any method yet adopted, particularly where space is a consideration, and when two or more sets of cards are used, in case of two or more machines.

A better plan is to have a sliding-card frame, as shown in No. 1 of

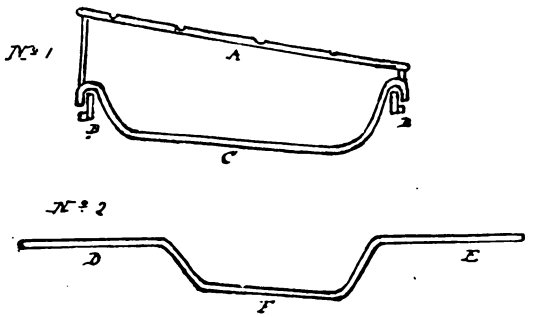


Fig. 99

the same figure. A is the frame for the rollers over which the cards travel, B, B are two bars on which the card frame C, with the roller frame A attached, travels. The card frame is only shown in end view. Two of these must be for each set of cards, and the whole frame must be fastened together complete for all the cards required, so that it will all slide on the bars B, B. Suppose there are two machines working there must be four card racks; on two of these the centre cards are hung, and on the other two the border cards. Either set can be placed opposite the cylinders of the jacquard, and wrought as long as is required; then they must be taken off the cylinders, the card frame shifted till the other set of cards comes into their place, when they can be put on the cylinders and wrought over. This is a very good plan for working

Digitized by Google

long cloths, but takes up a good deal of space, and for more than two machines might in many cases be unsuitable.

Another method is to have two sets of card irons, one above the other; the border cards are hung on the lower frame, and the centre cards on the upper one. The centre cards will work in the usual way, and when the border is to be wrought the cards for it are taken round the centre set, which, of course, are taken off the cylinder. The rollers must be made to shift so as to direct the cards properly into their respective frames; the top frame is smaller than the bottom one, and farther out from the machine. If hooks and eyes are sewn on the first and last cards of these sets, the weaver can hook them together when a fresh pattern is required, so that the one set will carry the other round the cylinder. Then, by drawing a cord, the rollers should

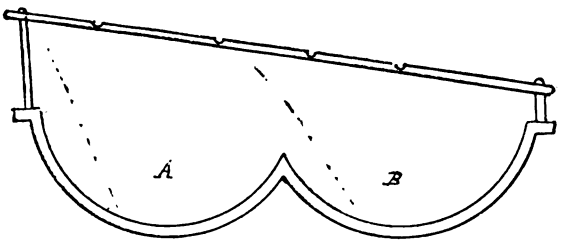


FIG. 100

change position so as to direct the falling cards into the proper frame. The card irons are of the usual shape, and the distance between the upper and lower ones may be regulated by circumstances.

Another simple method is to have the card frame made with a double curve in it, as shown in Fig. 100. One set of cards hang in each of these curves, as at A and B. The set in the curve A can be wrought over as long as required; then these cards can be taken off the cylinder and the set at B put over it. One thing must be observed: that the frame and rollers be so placed that the cards can be guided into the receptacle B, and to do this there must be a considerable fall for the cards, so that for a loom with a low framing this might not be feasible. Otherwise, it is a simple method of arranging two small lots of cards, and if one lot is much larger than the other, let A be a narrow

Digitized by Google

curve, and the small lot of cards hang in it, which will lessen the slant of the cards falling to B.

Although such arrangements as the foregoing are required where there is much machinery used, it is evident that for frequent changes they would take up quite too much time. Several machines have been made for the purpose of changing from one set of cards to another without having to move the cards. The principle of these machines is to have two cylinders, one at each side ; one set of cards is placed on one cylinder, and the other set on the other cylinder, so that by working one or other cylinder, as required, either border or centre may be woven. No. 1 (Fig 101) shows a plan that was tried some time ago, but did not work satisfactorily. The needles passed through a needle board at each side of the machine, as at A and B, and had small spiral springs fastened on them inside the needle boards. The border cards could be put on the cylinder at A, and the centre cards on that at B. The cylinder at A could be wrought as a single-acting machine till a change of pattern was required; then the cylinder at B could be brought into action, and that at A remain stationary and clear of the needles. The heads of the hooks were made heart-shape, as shown, and the blades of the griffe could revolve into the position shown by the dotted lines, so as to suit the working of the cylinder at B ; this was effected by the weaver pulling a cord. This machine was given up, as it was difficult to keep it in order.

Another method is shown at No. 2 (Fig. 101), where there are two griffes—one at F, and the other at G ; one cylinder works at E, and the other at D. Only one set of springs is required on the needles—behind the needle board E—as the spring of the hooks is sufficient to act in the opposite direction. When the cylinder D is working the lower griffe is stationary, and when the cylinder E is working the upper griffe is stationary. The cylinders and griffes are brought into action as required by suitable mechanism. This machine has not been considered sufficiently successful to make it worthy of being persevered with.

The principle of Davenport & Crossley's border jacquard is shown in Fig. 102. The upright hooks are as in an ordinary machine. Four of the needles are shown at *b*, and are made in the ordinary way,

Digitized by Google

with the exception of the eyes in them for the small upright needles *d* to pass through. These needles *d* are connected with a set of horizontal

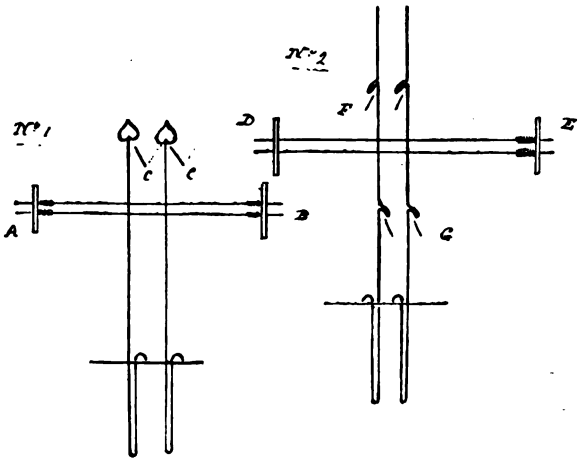


FIG. 101

ones, as shown at *a*, and act as levers between them and the needles *b*, the bars behind them serving as fulcrums ; so that when the needles *a*

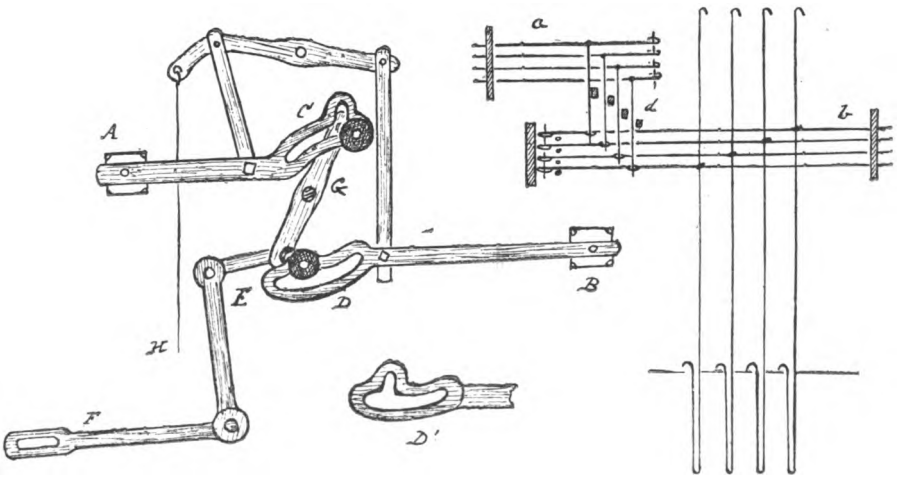


FIG. 102

are pressed back by the cards, the needles *b* are also drawn back through the medium of the uprights *d*. The cards least in action are put on

Digitized by Google

the cylinder for the needles *a*, and the others act on the needles *b*. The cylinders can be brought in or out of action by the motion shown at A, B, C, D, E, F, G. A and B are the cylinders, working on swing motions; C A, D B, are connecting-rods for giving motion to the cylinders; either of these can be brought into action as required. G is a rocking lever carrying a stud on each end, which work in the slots C and D; these slots are shown at D^1, where the notch at one side of them will be clearly seen. When the stud on the bar G gets into this notch, the cylinder will be driven out and in, but when not in the notch the stud can slide along the slot, allowing the cylinder to remain stationary. By pulling the cord H either cylinder can be wrought as required through the connections shown, one of the connecting-rods being raised and the other lowered. F, E are the levers for driving the rocking bar G. This machine works very well, though the principle of its construction is not all that could be desired, and it requires a considerable space. It can be made a double-lift machine by having two hooks to each needle and two griffes as in the ordinary double-lift, single-cylinder machine.

The principle of Devoge's border jacquard is shown in Fig. 103. C C is the rocking bar, for driving the cylinders, working on the centre D. It is driven by the levers F, G, and the connecting-rod E. The notches A and B fall over the studs on the cylinder frame, and can either be let down or raised, as required, by the cords K, L and the levers H, I. The machine is an ordinary double-cylinder one, and either griffe can be wrought to suit the cylinder that is in action. This machine can be used as an ordinary double-acting one, as a single-acting one raising both griffes together and bringing in both cylinders together, or as a border machine working one griffe and one cylinder at the same time.

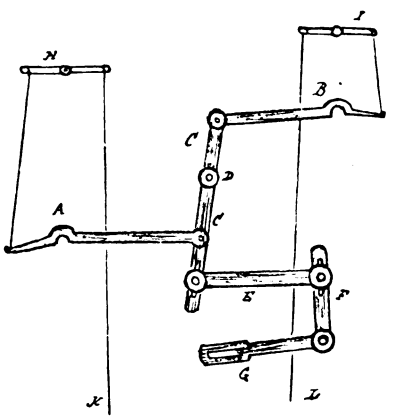


FIG. 103

Digitized by Google

Another method, similar to the above, is to have a double-cylinder machine with the cylinders wrought by the griffes, then have a stud on the crank-shaft wheel for raising one griffe, as for an ordinary single-acting jacquard, and the two connecting-rods from the griffes made so that either will work on it. A hook or catch can be put in any convenient place, so that when one connecting-rod is on the stud the other can be hooked out of the way. The rods can be made to slide on to the stud easily, and be fastened with a pin, so that the weaver can readily change from one to the other.

OPEN-SHED JACQUARDS

To obviate the vibration of the harness as much as possible, as well as to economise the wear and tear of it and to minimise the friction on the warp threads, especially in weaving patterns requiring heavy lifts, such as warp-faced patterns, Messrs. Priestley & Co., of Bradford, patented an open-shed jacquard, the principle of which is shown in Fig. 104. It did not, however, prove successful, as the tacklers found some difficulty in working it.

The machine is an ordinary double-lift jacquard with one cylinder, and works in the ordinary way. The hooks are made as in Fig. 104, where it may be observed there is a turn or catch on the lower portion of the hook, at A. Above these catches is a set of bars, *b*, like a stationary griffe, and when the hooks are raised by the upper griffe, in the ordinary way, they spring over these lower bars and rest on them when the griffe begins to fall. All the hooks raised would thus remain up, were it not that the cylinder, pressing in for the second griffe (the machine being double-acting), which begins to rise as the upper one begins to fall, presses back those hooks that are not to be raised for the following shot, and as they are held by the griffe above, they spring back at the bottom, and, clearing the bars *b*, come down with the falling griffe. In this way the hooks, when once raised, remain up till pressed off by the card, so that in the case of working a warp stripe with an 8-leaf satin binding the hooks would only fall for every seventh pick.

Another machine has since been tried, but did not work satisfactorily.

Digitized by Google

In this machine the lifting hooks are formed with loops or hooks, in addition to the top hooks. The hooks are lifted in the ordinary way by the griffes; and upper knives, made to reciprocate horizontally, catch the raised hooks and support them. By suitably timing the motions of the card cylinder the hooks may be kept up as long as required by being transferred from one set of knives to the other. The shape of the hooks and needles is shown in Fig. 105. The needles may be as at b or b^1. This machine acts as an ordinary double-lift jacquard, but has only

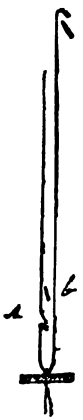
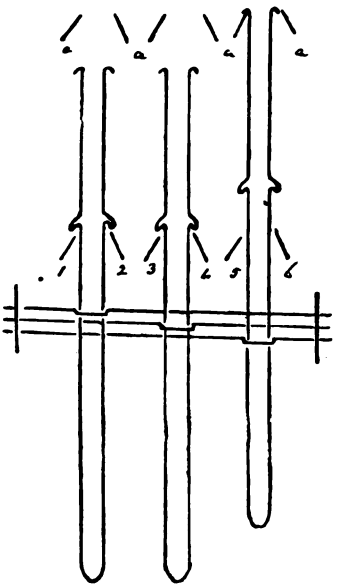


Fig. 104



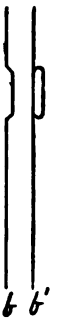


Fig. 105

one set of needles, which pass through needle boards at each side of the machine, and are acted upon by two card cylinders. No springs are required, the hooks acting as springs to keep the needles in position. The cylinders are driven by a tappet, and can be held against the needles as long as required; one cylinder must press on them when the griffes are passing, so as to prevent those hooks which are descending from being taken up by the ascending griffe. There are two griffes; three of the knives of the one are shown at 1, 3, 5, and three of the other at 2, 4, 6. When these knives lift the hooks by the lower loops

Digitized by Google

or hooks on them, they deposit them on to a set of knives, *a*, *a*, *a*, *a*, in an upper grid or grating, which has a lateral or horizontal motion.

The lower knives raise the tops of the hooks slightly above these upper knives, so as to clear them, and the upper grid is then moved sideways, taking the knives from under one set of heads of the hooks and placing them under another set. Each time the griffe rises all the hooks not acted upon by the cards will be deposited on the upper grating, and will be transferred from one knife to another at each lift, till the card acting upon the needles keeps them clear of the upper grating and allows them to fall with the descending griffe. In this machine the tugs or tail cords, as used with double-lift machines, are not required, the double hooks serving for two single ones. Other efforts have been made in this direction, but the plan of using small pulleys on the tail cords, between the pairs of hooks, to which the neck twines are hung, is the only one worth mention. The same principle will be found for working the shafts in Fig. 115, and is more suitable for a few shafts than for 400 to 600 hooks, or pairs of hooks.

THE VERDÔL JACQUARD

Everyone accustomed to work large patterns on jacquards, especially on power looms, must have found the inconvenience resulting from a large set of cards. The space taken up, the time and trouble required for changing them, to say nothing of the cost, have been sufficiently felt, but have hitherto had to be borne with as a matter of necessity.

For working fine tablecloths with from 150 to 180 picks per inch, or for curtains where from 3 to 6 cards are required for each weft line of the design, and when from 2 to 4 jacquards are used, the inconvenience and cost of a set of cards ranging from 10,000 to 50,000 are very considerable. The small jacquards described at Fig. 80 make a great saving in the space taken up by the cards, as well as in the quantity of card paper used; but it has been thought that a still greater saving could be effected.

M. Verdôl, of Paris, has for a length of time been endeavouring to perfect a system of substituting a continuous roll of perforated paper

Digitized by Google

for the cards, and has succeeded in doing so, though it is doubtful if he will be so far successful as to supersede our present method of working. These machines were taken up by Benson's Patent Jacquard Company, of Belfast, in the year 1876, but did not then give satisfaction, the greatest obstacle in the way being the effect of the atmosphere on the paper; and as the needles are very closely set together, it was found impracticable to keep the paper set so as to act correctly on them. This difficulty is now claimed to be overcome by having procured paper which is said to be less liable to be affected by the atmosphere than the brass plates of the machine. Several of these machines have been tried in Scotland, but it will take some time to prove them thoroughly and get the workmen accustomed to them, as they are much finer than the jacquards in general use.

The Verdôl machine consists of a small jacquard, the ordinary French make of machine, which is usually made with 440 and 880 hooks for the single and double machines respectively. In addition there is a frame or box attached to the front of the machine, against the needle board, containing another set of horizontal and vertical needles or wires, which act upon the ordinary needles of the jacquard, according as they are acted upon by the perforated paper. Fig. 106, Nos. 1, 2, and 3, shows the principle of the machine. B, B show the needles, and D, D the uprights or hooks of the ordinary jacquard; only four of each are given, but sixteen are used. N is the face-plate or needle board, and O is the clap-board used for bringing back the needles, which have no springs on them; but the hooks are turned up double, and the back or turned-up portion of them, coming against horizontal wires or bars, shown in section above the needles, acts as a spring to keep them steady. This portion of the machine is a complete jacquard of the ordinary French make. In addition to this there is the apparatus on which the perforated paper acts, and which communicates this action to the jacquard. It consists of a box or frame containing two sets of wires—one set horizontal, as A A, about 6 in. long, and terminated at one end by a small head, as shown separately at A^1, which are called hitting wires. The other set is vertical, as C C, of fine wire, having a loop on one end, by which they are suspended in a frame, and

Digitized by Google

a loop in the centre, which passes round the horizontal wires. These are called the vertical needles or feelers; one of them is shown separately at C¹. The points or lower ends of these needles pass through a horizontal brass plate, G, called a guide-bar. The hitting wires pass through a guide-plate, M, placed so that their heads will come exactly against the points of the needles in the jacquard, as shown in the figure. The other ends of the hitting wires lie loosely in the loops of the vertical needles, C. Underneath the guide-bar G is the curved brass

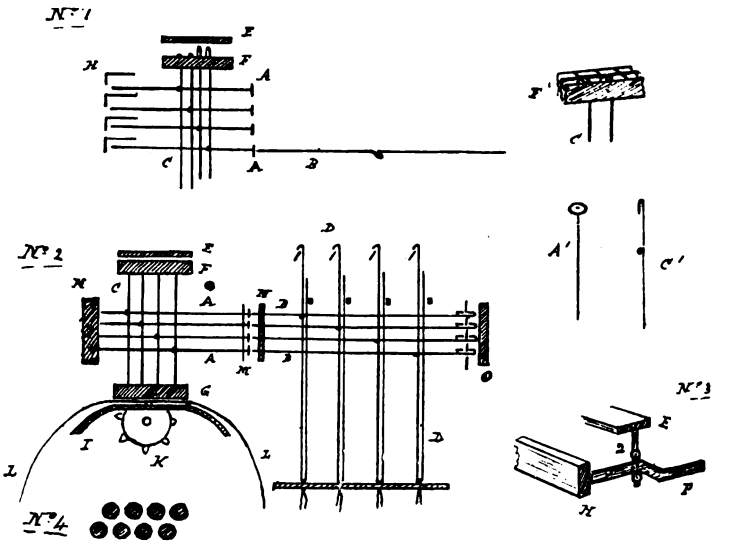


FIG. 106

plate I, which is in lieu of a cylinder. Between the cylinder and the guide-bar G the perforated roll of paper I I passes; there is just sufficient room between them for it to pass freely through, as it is moved forward by the stud wheel K. The paper may pass from one cylinder or reel to another, or may hang in folds in the same way as cards usually hang. At the points of the hitting wires is a grid or pushing frame, H, with an iron angle-bar across above each row of wires, as shown in section in No. 1 at H. There is a clap-board above the small vertical needles, which is shown raised at E in No. 1, and down in No.

Digitized by Google

2; this is raised and lowered with these needles, and serves to bring them all down when raised. E[1] shows the way in which these needles are hung in the frame that supports them. When the machine is working the frame H has a horizontal traverse coming against the ends of the hitting wires when they are pressed up by the card on the cylinder, and, pressing them against the needles of the jacquard, push them back as an ordinary card cylinder would. It may be seen in No. 1 that two of the feelers are down and two are pressed up, as they would be if two holes were cut in the paper and two uncut; the two that are up raise the hitting wires connected with them, and it will be observed that this raises the points of the hitting wires so as to come against the angle-iron of the grid H when it is coming forward; whereas the two hitting wires that are not raised will pass through, and not be pushed back. This enables the card paper to act on the needles of the jacquard in the same way as if coming directly on them, as cards do. The cylinder has a slight vertical motion, rising about $\frac{1}{8}$ in. The needles, when the cylinder is down, do not pass through the plate G; it is perforated through and raised by the cylinder ascending. When the frame H is pressed forward the clap-board O is pressed back.

The card paper is of a special make, thin and tough, and is strengthened along both sides and in the centre by strips of paper pasted along it where the stud holes fall. No. 3 shows the motion by which the clap board E is raised and lowered by the sliding of the cranked bar F between the two studs 2. No. 4 shows the size and pitch of the holes in the hard paper. These are traced from the paper, and lie diagonally, two rows of 8 making one row of 16 hooks in the jacquard.

These machines are working in large numbers in France, and appear to give more satisfaction there than here, partly because they are better known, and the French workmen are better adapted to handle the small parts belonging to them. A coarser machine is more suited for the ordinary workmen to be found in the factories of this country. But it is strange if a machine of a pitch about half-way between the French jacquards and ours would not be better than either; not taking up so much room as ours, and not so minute as the French. However,

Digitized by Google

in many cases the machines we have in use are none too large to give sufficient latitude for the errors often found cropping up in work, none of which should occur, of course, though they often do, through carelessness or otherwise. For instance, the card cylinder may be a little off the pitch, and the cards may be affected by damp, or may not be correctly cut to suit the cylinder; the points of the needles may be a little bent by the cylinder, or by the carelessness of the weaver when turning back her cards, and the cylinder may not be set quite fair for the needles. Mr. McMurdo, of Manchester, has made a very nice machine of the same pitch as the French ones, with 1,296 hooks, 16 row cards. It works as a double-acting machine with two cylinders and two griffes, but only one set of needles acting on the two sets of hooks. Two of the hooks are shown in Fig. 107; each needle clasps two hooks and passes through a needle board at each side of the machine. There is no spring on the needle, the hooks forming the spring, the tops of the hooks coming against the cross-rods at A A. Otherwise, this machine works in the usual way, and is very compact where a large number of hooks are required in a small space.

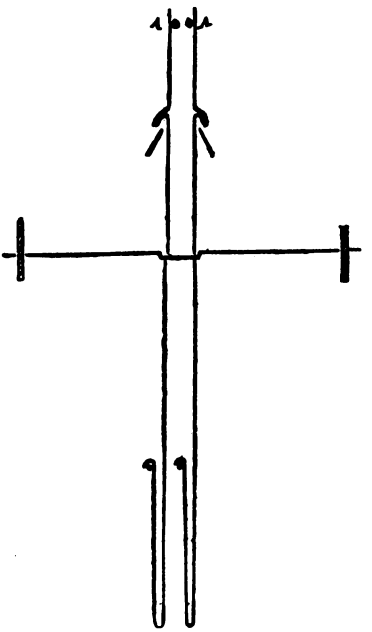


FIG. 107

The card-cutting machine used for the French system of work is a very elaborate contrivance, being more like a jacquard loom than any of our card-cutting machines, at least in so far as the harness is concerned. The principle of it is seen in Fig. 108. A shows the set of cords by which the punches are wrought. The method of preparing the pattern to attach to these cords has been referred to before, but will be repeated again further on. These cords pass over the pulleys

Digitized by Google

B and down through a reed to the lingoes C, which keep them in tension. Another set of cords pass from these over the pulleys D and down to the punches F. When any of the cords at A are drawn the punches connected with them are dropped, as raising the lingoes lets the cords pass over the pulleys D. When a punch is let fall, it is caught by one of the angle-irons of the grid G, which is pressed forwards when a card is to be cut. The card paper is on the roller H, and passes down in front of the punches at I, which, when pressed

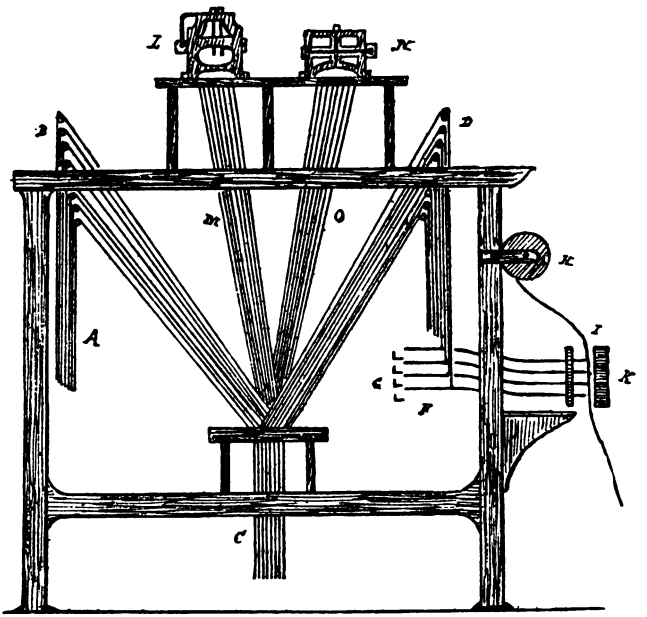


FIG. 108

forward, punch the paper between them and the block K. Any punches that are held up pass through the grid over the angle-iron bars. Only four punches are given, but sixteen are used in the machine; they are here drawn out of scale to show them more clearly. This portion constitutes the cutting machine; it is worked by two persons, one behind, to draw the cords, and another in front, to punch the paper by depressing a treadle each time a draw is made. In addition to cutting from the pattern the paper can be cut from other sets of cards, as in a repeating

Digitized by Google

machine—cut either on the English or French system. N is the French machine, and a set of cards can be put on it and copied, the cords O acting on the punches; English-cut cards can be put on the machine at L and copied, the cords M acting on the punches. Of course, when one portion of the machine is working, the other parts remain idle, and it might be better to have them separate if much work is wanted.

The pattern is prepared for this machine by hand, working one repeat of it as follows:—The design, painted on point paper, is placed on a frame in an upright position, and over each line on it is stretched a vertical cord, which is taken as warp. The picker then takes a bobbin of weft and inserts it under every cord that passes over a painted dot on the first weft line of the pattern, keeping it in front of all the cords that pass over blank spaces, just in the same order as a shuttle would pass through if the shed were to be opened by a jacquard. When this is done the next line of the design paper is picked similarly, and so on, till a complete repeat of the design is loosely woven with cords, which are made of well-twisted harness twine. This process is somewhat similar to reading the pattern for the draw loom, *which see*. For coloured work a shot would require to be worked in for each colour on any weft line, the same as it is to be woven. When this is prepared, it is taken to the cutting machine and the warp tied to the cords A, the weft showing the warp ends to be drawn for each card.

HALF HARNESS AND MUSLIN HARNESSES

So far we have been speaking entirely of 'full-harness' work. Though the principle of mounting is much the same in all classes of harnesses, there are certain deviations peculiar to each.

One drawback to the full harness is the amount of machinery required to give a large extent of pattern, an upright hook and a needle being required for each thread in one repeat of the pattern. In a half harness only half the amount of machinery is required on the same fineness of cloth to give an equal extent of pattern; but it is only for a few classes of goods that this method of working is suitable, leno

Digitized by Google

curtains and muslins being the principal. Leno curtains will be mentioned under gauzework, as they are wrought with a gauze mounting, but on the half-harness principle. Figured muslin curtains, with a plain ground and coloured flowering, are called 'crêtes,' or 'crête curtains'; these are now generally wrought in a full harness. Figured muslins are much of the same class of cloth, but are not figured with colour and tint for the half harness, known as the 'common spotting harness,' or 'book harness.' For working them the harness is mounted in the ordinary manner, but only half as many cords are required for it as there are threads of warp. Only half of the warp is drawn into the harness, the other half—every alternate end—passing through it, and being drawn into a plain leaf of heddles, which is hung close in front of the harness. In fine work two leaves of heddles may be used as one, to prevent crowding.

The ground of the cloth is a plain texture, and was formerly wrought by having two leaves of long-eyed heddles in front of the harness, into which all the warp was drawn, this probably being more convenient for the hand-loom weaver; and besides, a more even plain ground can be made with the heddles than with the harness and one leaf of heddles. Two shots of ground, or fine weft, are given to one shot of figuring, or coarse weft, usually cotton rove; but to avoid using a pick-and-pick loom when working by power, the coarse shot may be made by throwing two finer ones into the same shed. In power looms the ground is wrought by raising the plain leaf of heddles and all the harness alternately, and the figuring shed is formed by drawing the harness with a card acting on the machine. The pattern is painted solid, without any twilling or binding on either ground or flower, so that the figuring shot will be in a plain shed for the flower, but will be loose or unbound over the ground, and is afterwards cut off in a cropping machine.

The plain shed, into which the thick weft is thrown, must also contain the shot of thin weft thrown in either before or after it, according as the figuring shed follows the plain shed made by raising the harness or the heddles; for supposing the heddle shaft to be raised and a ground shot thrown in, then the shed reversed by raising the

Digitized by Google

harness and another ground shot thrown in, then the figure shed formed by raising 50 or 100 hooks of the harness, this opens portion of the last shed, and the figure weft will be thrown in along with the last shot of ground. When both wefts are white this is of but little consequence, but when using coloured wefts for the figure the ground weft would be liable to show along with them and injure the pattern. This was originally overcome by adopting the 'paper harness' from the shaft mounting for weaving paper spots. In this mounting two sets of shafts and two harnesses are used, one behind the other. Half of the warp—all the odd numbers of threads—was drawn on the back

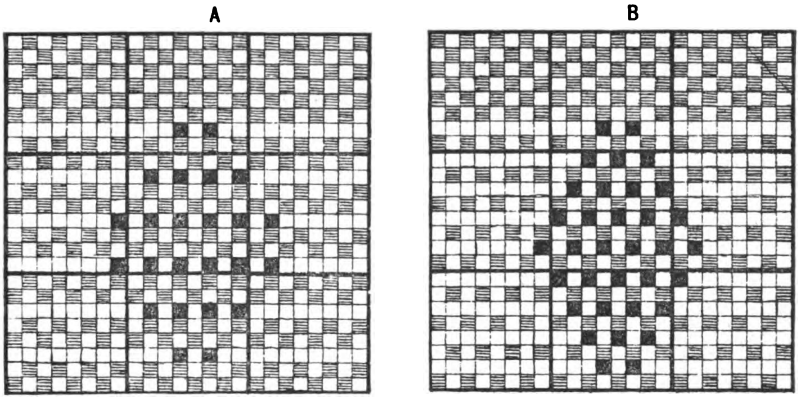


FIG. 109

harness, and the other half—all the even numbers—on the front harness; this would be sufficient to make the cloth, but a pair of leaves of long-eyed heddles were used for working the ground, acting as pressers. On this method of working, a ground and a figuring shot are thrown in alternately, as either half of the warp can be raised by the harness for the figuring shed, and a richer spot is thus given; but still, the rove or figuring shot would fall into the same shed as the ground shot, which may be seen by examining the two spots given in Fig. 109, A being wrought on the common spot or half-harness mounting, and B on the paper-spot mounting. The grey shots are the ground, and the black ones the figure. However, in the paper-spot mounting it is

Digitized by Google

not necessary to throw the rove into a plain shed; any suitable twill may be used for binding the figure, and will give a much richer effect on one side of the cloth than plain, and tie down the ground shot, which will go into a plain shed.

This principle of mounting is now done away with, as it has no advantage over the ordinary full-harness mounting, which can also have a pair of presser leaves of heddles in front for working the ground, if desired; but they are unnecessary in a power loom, except when a very level ground is required.

A twilled or flushed figure may be formed with the common half harness, but only having half the warp for binding causes it to be loose and ragged round the edges.

To work a large pattern, perhaps the most economical way, at least in the hand loom, is to use a pressure harness with two threads in the mail, and with four presser heddle leaves in front. The number of leaves regulates the twill on the figure. The cloth may be woven pick-and-pick, ground and figure, or 2 picks ground to 1 of figure. When the harness is drawn for the figure all the heddles must be sunk but one leaf, and sinking the two front and two back leaves alternately, raising the back ones when the front ones are sunk, and *vice versa*, will form plain cloth with the draft 1, 2, 3, and 4 over the leaves. A 4-leaf twilled figure can be made with this mounting, but still it will not have the advantage of the full harness, in which the figure can be varied in twill, and bound round the edges.

SPLIT HARNESS

The term 'split harness' is sometimes applied to the pressure harness when wrought with two threads in the mail, this constituting a splitful of warp, so that each cord of the harness controls a splitful of warp; but this is only the finest description of pressure harness.

The split harness, or 'shaft monture,' was invented in the silk district of Bethnal Green, shortly after the introduction of the jacquard, for weaving rich silks which have about 400 threads of warp per inch, but much less weft—perhaps about one-fifth of that number of threads.

Digitized by Google

The harness is wrought with the ordinary jacquard, but there are two mails and lingoes attached to each neck cord, as shown in Fig. 110. A, A are the neck twines, B is the cumber board, and D the mails. If this mounting were wrought with the jacquard only, it would produce the same effect upon the cloth as if two threads were drawn into each mail of an ordinary harness. This would, of course, take away the fine appearance of the cloth. To avoid this a set of shafts, C, C, are passed through loops in the twine above the mails, and are attached to a set of hooks in front of the jacquard, or at each side of it, or may be wrought by a separate dobby. Twenty-four shafts are mostly used, and are usually flat enamelled iron bars. These shafts are for working the ground of the cloth, and can raise each row of mails separately, as shown at No. 1 leash, thus splitting the pairs of threads that are connected with each hook of the jacquard. One or more of these shafts, according to the texture required for the ground, are raised at the same time that the jacquard draws the figuring shed. No ground texture is put on the pattern for the cards, but the figure must be twilled, or have the binding marks cut on the cards for it. The binding of the figure will be in pairs of threads—that is, two threads of warp must sink together under a weft shot, though on the design these two threads will appear as one, as they are wrought by the same hook of the machine. On account of the number of warp threads, rising and sinking in pairs will not much affect the appearance of the figure; though it must be coarser than if the threads were bound separately, and will also have a rougher or more ragged outline; but to get a large figure with so much warp would necessitate a great amount of machinery if the threads were drawn into separate mails with one to each cord of the harness.

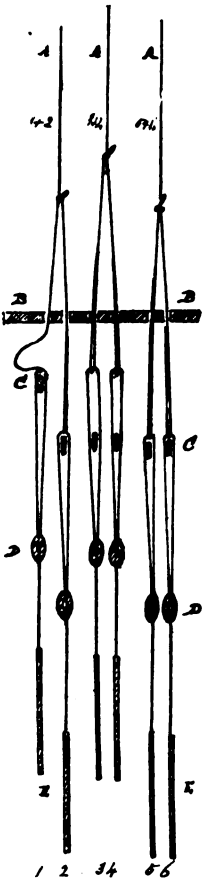


FIG. 110

Digitized by Google

This method of working is surpassed by the twilling machines now in use (see Twilling Jacquards), though they are more intricate, and would not suit well for a hand loom, as they are heavy to draw.

PRESSURE HARNESS

This is the old draw-loom system of working, and, old as it is, is still in use on our modern hand and power looms on the finest description of damasks, and is not likely to be surpassed for making a good piece of cloth. Much firmer than a harness, and producing the largest possible pattern with the least possible cards, mounting, and machinery it took up its position in the days of the drawboy, and has held itsown, with the aid of the jacquard, against all the inventions of modern times. The principal advantage of this system of working is that a much larger pattern can be produced with the same quantity of cards, mounting, and machinery, than by any other means; but the pattern wrought by a pressure harness will not compare with one wrought by a full harness for fineness of outline or detail. When weaving large table-cloths with 100 or 120 threads of warp per inch, and from 50 to 72, or even 90 in. in the single pattern--that is, when the pattern is all, or nearly all, single—the amount of machinery that would be required to work it on a full harness could not be crowded on a loom, the French system being the only one by which it might be attempted; and even then the difficulty of keeping the machinery and cards in perfect working order would be very great, not to mention the cost of mounting, patterns, cards, &c. The quantity of harness and machinery is reduced in a pressure harness by drawing two or more warp threads into each mail in the harness. Suppose we take 60 in. of cloth with 100 threads per inch=6,000 threads, and allow 3 threads to each mail in the harness, or each hook of the jacquard, 2,000 hooks, or four 500 jacquards, would be required to work the pattern. As many as six 600 jacquards are sometimes required on this description of work when very fine; but three or four 500 or 600 machines are more commonly used on either hand or power looms. To work one of these finest patterns in a full harness 10,800 hooks would be required—say, six 600 machines with

Digitized by Google

3 threads to each mail=10,800; and almost double this number of cards, even with working them backwards and forwards, would be necessary.

In early times, when the drawboy took the place of the jacquard, 6, 8, or 10 threads were put to each mail, or went to what would now be one hook of the jacquard; and patterns were not usually so extensive as they are now, so that the cords of the harness were greatly reduced in number, but with a proportionately coarser effect of pattern. The difference between a pattern wrought with a full harness and one wrought with the pressure or any of the twilling harnesses, is that the outline is clear and defined in the full harness, and the detail and points of the figures can be turned on a single thread, whereas in the others the edges of the figures will be jagged or in steps, and the points must turn on whatever number of threads are lifted together. The pattern on the cloth must therefore have somewhat of the rough, square effect of the design on point paper, though, of course, reduced in size, but will be worse in this respect—viz. that whereas the edges of the figure on the point paper are clear and well defined, on the cloth they are not so, the rough edges to some extent blending the figure into the ground, and not giving the clean, sharp effect of a full-harness pattern. Shaded effects are also coarse on a pressure harness, but can be made effective if broadly treated. Cloth with 100 or 120 threads per inch does very well to have three threads to the mail, and from 80 to 100 threads per inch suits very well for two to the mail. Any coarser set than 80 threads per inch requires to be woven in a full harness to produce good work, and for superior work nothing less than 100 threads per inch should have two threads to the mail, though 80 per inch does very well.

When several threads are put to the mail, it is also usual to put several picks to each card. The fewer picks, the finer will be the pattern; but a good method of regulating this is to make the checks formed on the cloth square, a little more or less according to the fineness of the pattern required. Thus, if the cloth is wefted square, or a little over that—say, 100 warp by 100 to 110 weft threads per inch—paint the design on, say, 8 × 8 or 8 × 9 paper, and give as many shots

Digitized by Google

to the cards as there are threads in the mail. If the cloth is to be wefted one-half over square (100 × 150) the same pattern will still do, but with half as many more shots to the card than there are threads in the mail. If there are two threads in the mail there will be three picks to the card, but if there are three threads to the mail there must be four picks to one card and five to the next one. This would be for a pattern on 8 × 8, or square paper. If painted on 8 × 9 paper, which would give an extra card to every eight, and if the weft must not be increased, then four or five picks must be taken off the number given to the eight cards and put to the ninth one, for four cards with four picks to each and four with five picks to each = 36 picks, and thirty-six picks put to nine cards would allow four picks to each. This would make the edges of the pattern a little finer; and if the design was painted on 8 × 10 paper it would be finer still, as there would be more cards to a given number of picks.

In this way any alteration required can be made on the number of picks per inch given to cloth woven on a pressure or twilling harness, without distorting the pattern by varying the number of picks given to each card to suit the shotting. Neither is it necessary to have the same number of threads in each mail; the warp might be mailed 2's and 3's or 3's and 4's, but the more regular they are, the better. If the fineness of the cloth requires to be altered, it may be woven in the same harness without any alteration by varying the number of threads in the mails. For instance, a warp of ninety threads per inch mailed 3's and one with 120 threads per inch mailed 4's would work in the same harness. Similarly, the same set of cards would suit for making different widths of cloth by making the harness narrower in the cumber board and altering the mailing so as to keep the cloth the same set, or it may be made a finer set and not alter the mailing. In either case the pattern would be reduced in size.

Fig. 111 shows a portion of a pressure-harness mounting which is similar to that of the draw loom. It is mounted in the same manner as described for full harness, only that the warp must be divided by the number of threads to be drawn into each mail in order to find the quantity of harness required. The kinds of mails used are shown at A

Digitized by Google

and B, Fig. 111; it does not do to have more than two threads drawn into each eye of the mail, as they are liable to twist round each other; two will separate easily, but a greater number will not. Ordinary full-harness mails answer very well for a two-thread harness. The mails are levelled in the same position as for full-harness work, viz. about $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. below the level of the back and front beams for hand-loom work, and a little lower for power looms. The lingoes are heavier than those required for a full harness; the weight depends upon the strength of

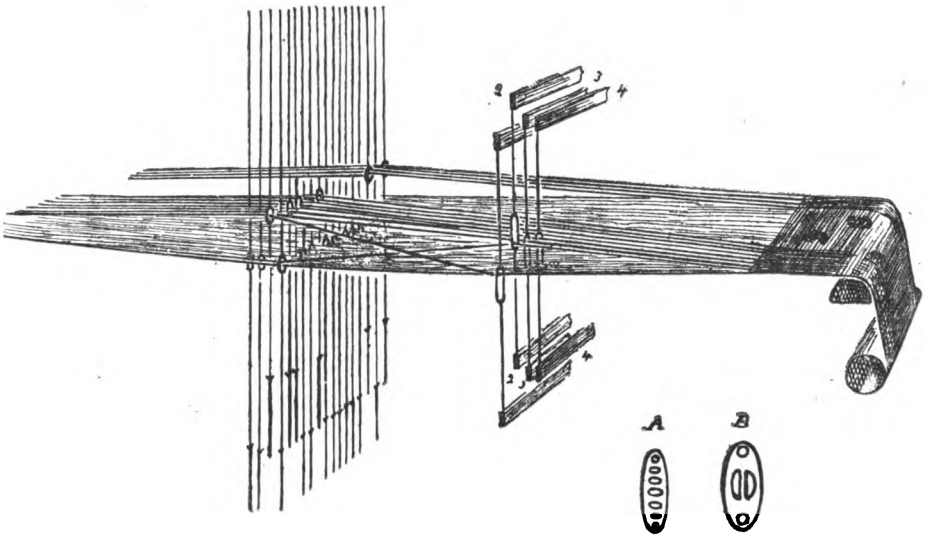


FIG. 111

the yarn and the number of threads in the mail; 10 to 12 to 1 lb. are used in power looms for linen damask with two threads in the mail, having about eighty to one hundred threads of warp per inch. For hand looms they are usually made of lead, thicker and shorter than the wire lingoes, and called 'leads'; 11 to 15 per lb. suits for three- or four-thread harnesses. Light cotton work, such as muslin curtains, only requires lingoes of about sixty or seventy to 1 lb. for hand looms, but from twenty-five to thirty per lb. are used in power looms for two-thread harnesses.

The principle of working the pressure harness is best explained by

Digitized by Google

the diaper mounting shown in Fig. 2, where a back set of heddles takes the place of the harness, and a set of ground leaves of long-eyed heddles stands in front of the back ones. After the yarn is drawn into the harness or back mounting in the usual way, it must be drawn into the front or presser heddles, using, generally, a straight draught for a satin ground. If Figs. 2 and 111 are examined, it will be seen that when the shed is opened by the harness or back mounting, the heddles in front sink part of the raised warp and raise part of the sunk warp. The mounting raises all the warp of the figuring portion on each card or line of the design paper, and leaves down all the ground warp, so that it is necessary to have the heddles in front to bind the warp and weft, or form the texture of the cloth. For an 8-leaf satin eight shafts are required; one of these must be raised and another sunk for each shot, so as to raise the binding threads of the sunk warp and sink those of the raised warp, the harness forming the outline of the pattern, or raising the warp of it in a mass. The other six leaves of heddles stand in a middle position, and the long eyes allow the warp drawn by the harness to rise. When the machine is drawn it is held up till as many shots as are to be given to the card are thrown in, but the shed formed by the heddles must be changed for each shot. In working bars up the cloth one card would be sufficient, and when the machine is drawn it would be held so, and the cloth wrought with the heddles; of course, no machine would be required in this case, one leaf of heddles with the stripes of warp drawn into it would be sufficient for the back mounting. For dices two leaves of heddles would be sufficient for the back mounting, the warp of one dice to be drawn on one leaf, and that of the other on the other leaf; then one leaf would be raised and held up till one dice was wrought, when it would be lowered, and the other one raised and held up for the other dice. For fancy dices and diapers the plan of mounting in Fig. 2 is very suitable and simple, but for a variety of figuring or flowering the jacquard is necessary.

It will be seen that the presser heddles have three positions, viz. a sunk, a raised, and a middle position. The length of the eyes is to allow the harness to open the shed when the heddles are stationary, or in their middle position. They must be a little longer than is required

Digitized by Google

to open the shed at the back leaf of the heddles; for a 2-in. shed a $2\frac{1}{4}$-in. to $2\frac{1}{2}$-in. eye is used. When the heddles are stationary the lower loop of the eye should be fully $\frac{1}{8}$ in. under the sunk warp, and there should be the same clearance at the top when the shed is drawn; some allow more. The shed for a pressure harness is usually very small in front of the reed, and requires a very small shuttle to be used, from $\frac{1}{2}$ in. to 1 in. deep being the usual sizes. The depth of the shed that can be made depends principally on the elasticity of the yarn. With a linen warp a very small shed can be made, as the yarn has but little elasticity, and if overstrained will hang slack. For it the distance between the harness and the back shaft of the front mounting should be 10 in. to 12 in., and there should be a stretch of 27 in. to 34 in. behind the harness. The draw of the harness may then be 3 in. to $3\frac{1}{2}$ in., and the shed at the back shaft will be $1\frac{3}{4}$ in. to 2 in.; this will allow a shuttle of $\frac{3}{4}$ in. to $\frac{7}{8}$ in. deep to be used. For hand looms the shed is about $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. at the back shaft, and a shuttle of $\frac{1}{2}$ in. deep is employed. The shed must be made very clear and regular, and the smaller it can be kept, the better. With a good cotton warp 7 in. is a sufficient distance to have between the harness and heddles, and will admit of a larger shed being formed; but it is not desirable to have too large a shed, as there is a considerable strain on the yarn, and a small, clear shed is more satisfactory. This would be assisted by bringing the harness as close as possible to the heddles.

One drawback to this method of working is the distance which separates the harness from the fell of the cloth, or even from the reed; and if there is any obstruction to the warp rising or falling, such as roughness in the heddles or reed, or lumps on the yarn, it will not, unless very tight, fall into its proper place, and the shuttle may pass over or under it when it should not do so, giving a picked or darned effect to the cloth; slack threads may cause the same.

The warp must be kept as tight as possible, and all the threads should be at a uniform tension, the heddles straining each thread alike; the harness should be as close to the heddles as the yarn will permit it to be. The space occupied by the harness, heddles, and traverse of lay should be no greater than is necessary; then, with a small but clear

Digitized by Google

shed satisfactory work can be produced. When drawing a warp into the harness, a boy or girl sits behind, and hands the threads to the drawer-in, who takes them into the mails with a wire hook, and then either hands them to a second drawer-in sitting in front of the heddles, to be drawn into them, or passes them over and under a pair of rods tied across the harness so as to form a lease as she draws them in; and when she has all drawn into the harness, she begins to draw them into the heddles, a straight draught being mostly used for a twill or satin.

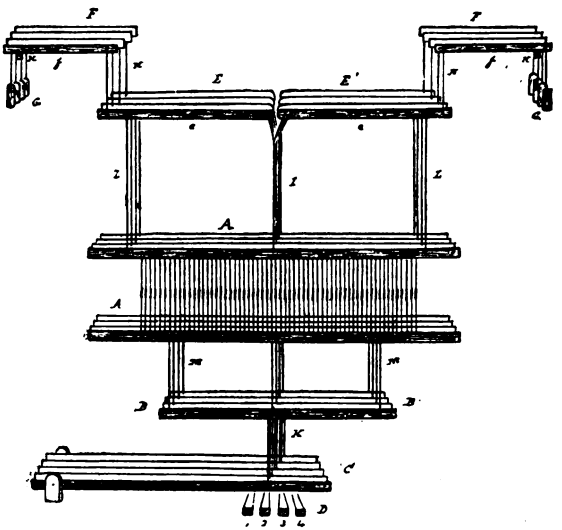


FIG. 112

The front mounting of a damask hand loom is shown in Fig. 112. A, A are the shafts, four in number, but eight are generally used for an 8-leaf satin; B, B are the jacks; C the lams, which require to be one more in number than the leaves of heddles; D the treadles; E, E^1 the upper marches or jacks; F, F^1 two sets of coupers or levers, with their fulcrums at *f*, and loaded at the outer ends with the weights G. Under the ends of these levers is a bar N, to which the weights draw them, and keep the heddles up to their middle position. The cords I are not fastened to the heddles, but pass down through them to the

Digitized by Google

lams C. The cords L connect the coupers with the heddle shafts. Each lam has two cords tied to it, except the two outer ones—*i.e.* the first and last one—which together act as one, to avoid crossing the cords. One of the cords I is tied to each lam, and also one from the jacks B; but the first and last lams have only one cord tied to each of them, one having the cord I, and the other that from B. Both these lams are connected with one treadle, and the others are each connected with a treadle. Of course, the cording is made in the usual way, agreeably to the pattern, two methods of twilling being shown in Fig. 113. When the weaver presses down a treadle, one leaf of heddles is raised by the cord I connected from one of the levers E, E^1 to one of the marches or lams C, and one leaf is at the same time sunk by the cord connected from one of the jacks B to the lam connected to the treadle. The other treadles act similarly when corded for a twill or satin.

The cording generally used for an 8-shaft satin is shown at A, Fig. 113. Sometimes the twill is run in the reverse direction. In either case it will be observed that the twill on both ground and figure run in the same direction, which makes one a sateen, or coarse twill, and the other a satin, or fine twill. In order to have both twills alike they require to be run in the opposite direction on the cloth, as shown at B, which will give a fine twill on both ground and figure, on both sides of the cloth, with single yarn. This does not hold good with every twill. When weaving, the weaver presses down the treadle which is connected with the jacquard (another treadle being required for this purpose) with his left foot, then works over the twilling treadles with his right foot, holding down the machine treadle till he gives as many shots to the cards as are required. When the card is to be changed the weaver lets down the machine and draws another shed, striking up the weft again without throwing in a shot or taking his right foot off the treadle. This clears up the shed, and makes the yarn steady before he springs

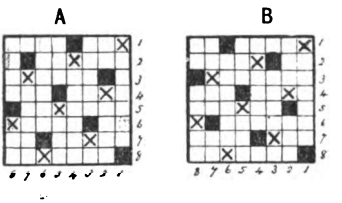


FIG. 113

Digitized by Google

another shed with the presser leaves, giving a regularity and firmness to the work which it is impossible to get otherwise, but which has to be done without in the power loom. The weft is struck up on the open shot, or before the heddles have closed the shed. Sometimes a sort of dobby is used below the lams, which enables the weaver to work the heddles with one treadle. In power looms a similar principle of front mounting is sometimes adopted, substituting a wyper tappet for the weaver's foot; but a better plan, as it avoids having the cords passing through the yarn and heddles, is to have a box tappet, on the Woodcroft style, made with solid plates, and struck to give the rising and falling motion. The connections from the tappet to the heddle shafts are made in the same way as the ordinary Woodcroft tappet. The jacquard may either be a single or double-lift one. Some prefer the one, some the other. The single-lift is more easily fitted up, especially if the number of shots to the card varies. When the shots on each card are alike, perhaps the steadiest method of lifting the machine is to have a box tappet struck one up and three down, or one up and two down, according to the number of shots on the card. This tappet acts on a bowl on a treadle, to which the rod for raising the machine is connected. For a double-acting machine there must be two treadles and tappets acting alternately. The cylinder can be driven from the rising and falling of the machine with a swan-neck or lever motion, or may be driven from an eccentric on the loom with a pinion on the crank shaft turning it one to three or four shots, as may be desired. When the shotting to the card is irregular there are several methods adopted for lifting the machine griffes, one of the best of which is shown in Fig. 114 for a single-lift machine.

A is the treadle to which the connecting-rod from the machine is fastened by a bolt through the slot at H, or the slot may be in any desirable place. B is a rack in which the end of the lever works, which keeps the treadle bowl steady to the tappet. E is the tappet on the tappet shaft of the loom, and is made so as to act at every shot. D is the fulcrum of the lever, and C is the stand, which is bolted to the ground and fastened to the side of the loom. This portion of the motion working alone would raise the griffe for every shot, the same as

Digitized by Google

would be required for a full-harness, single-acting jacquard; but when the griffe is raised by the tappet E, it can be held up as long as is desired by letting the bell-crank catch F fall in over it as shown. When the treadle A is in this position the tappet merely touches the bowl, depressing it about $\frac{1}{8}$ in., so as to clear it off the catch; this is to allow the catch to be easily pushed off when it is required to let the treadle up, or to drop the griffe. The catch is moved by the cam or tappet G acting on the bell-crank F. This tappet can be driven by a pinion on the crank shaft or by a catch on the slay. It may be a tappet struck to suit, or a barrel with a set of lags or pins on it, so that the machine griffe may be raised and lowered in any order that is desired.

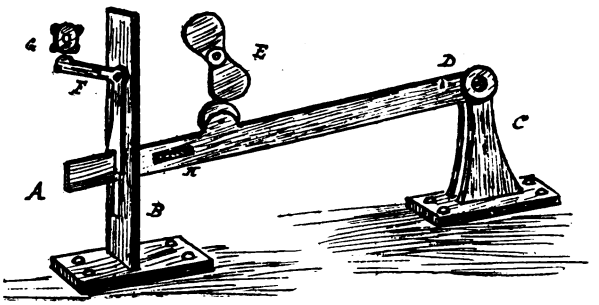


FIG. 114

An ingenious method of working the heddles of a pressure harness by the jacquard was invented in Bethnal Green shortly after the introduction of the original machine. It was used for weaving the richest silk damask, which had 400 threads of warp per inch and about one-fifth that number of weft shots, so that five threads of warp might be drawn into each mail without making the pattern appear any coarser in the warp than in the weft. A sketch of this mounting is given in Fig 115. A shows the hooks for working the heddles, and B those for working the harness. Eight hooks are given for working four leaves of heddles. It will be seen that a cord from two hooks passes round one of the pulleys C, and each of the heddle shafts is attached to one of these pulleys. These hooks may be raised by the griffe of the jacquard, which would require to rise and fall for every shot, or the

Digitized by Google

griffe may be held up for the number of shots to the card, and the hooks for working the shafts may be wrought by a small dobby. When one of each pair of the hooks A is raised, the heddle shaft connected with it is raised to the middle position, as shown by the pulleys

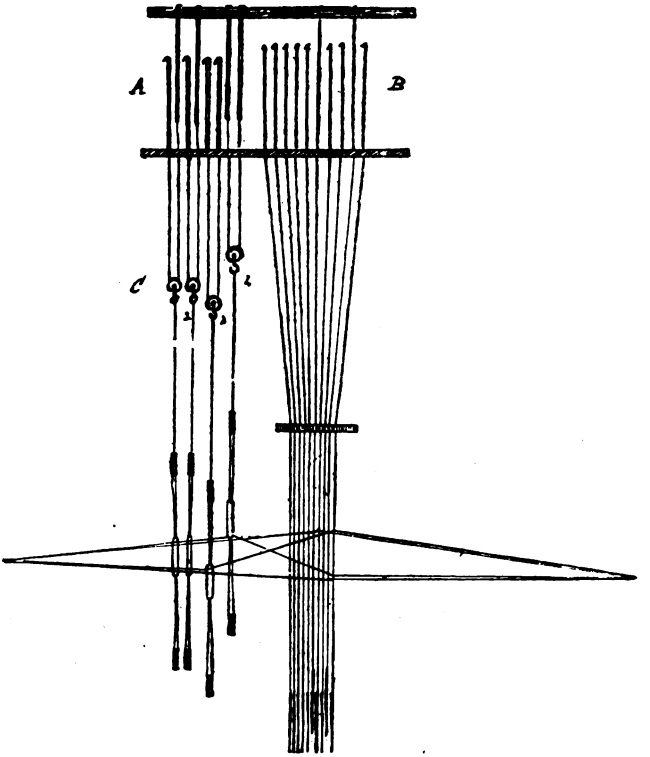


FIG. 115

1 and 2, and the leaves connected with them. If neither of the hooks is raised for any shaft, it will remain sunk, as shown in No. 3; and if both the hooks are raised, the leaf will be raised to its top position, as No. 4. The leaves are drawn down by weights or springs.

Digitized by Google

TWILLING JACQUARDS

As has been stated before, one of the drawbacks to a pressure harness is the strain which the warp has to undergo when forming the shed. This necessitates having a good warp, which adds to the cost of the cloth, and in low-class goods this consideration may hinder the sale. Many methods have been adopted for working the ground of the cloth without using a pressure mounting. Some of these are explained under 'half harness' and 'split harness,' but none of these methods would produce cloth like the pressure harness. A twilling jacquard to act similar to the pressure harness, but without using the front mounting, or by dispensing with the leaves of heddles, was patented by Mr. Shields, of Perth, in 1859. This machine underwent several improvements, and now there are two varieties of it in use, one known as the Irish or Bessbrook machine, being patented by Mr. Barcroft, of the Bessbrook Spinning Company Limited, county Armagh; the other as the Scotch machine, the improvements being made by Mr. Shields and others. The principal difference between the two machines is that the blades or knives of the griffe have a horizontal or sliding motion in the Scotch machine to enable them to get clear of the heads of the hooks, whereas in the Bessbrook machine they turn out of the way or partly revolve. A full description of the Bessbrook machine is here given. Fig. 116 is a view of the framing of the machine. K is the cylinder, which may be wrought by the swan-neck motion, as shown, but it is better to be wrought by a separate motion from the loom. D is a cord attached to the handle of the shears for reversing the cylinder; E is a brass bushing through which a shaft passes for raising the griffe. The shedding of this machine is exactly the same as that of an ordinary single-acting jacquard. The griffe rises and falls for every shot; the cylinder travels out and in, but does not turn till two or three or whatever number of impressions required are given by each card. To prevent the cylinder turning it is only necessary to raise the shears so that they will not catch it. This is done by means of the tappet A, shown

Digitized by Google

in Figs. 116 and 117. The roller H on the shears rests on the tappet, which is turned by means of the rack wheel, which is fast on it, and the lever L, which is loose on the stud. This lever is pushed backwards and drawn forwards by the rod I, which is connected to an arm, either on the shaft for raising the griffe, or on one for working the cylinder, and the catch on the lever takes a tooth of the ratchet wheel at each draw, so that with four divisions on the tappet, and 12 teeth in the ratchet, three shots would be given to each card. If it is required to work the cylinder the reverse way, it is only necessary to tie the cord D on the end of the shears to a spiral spring made

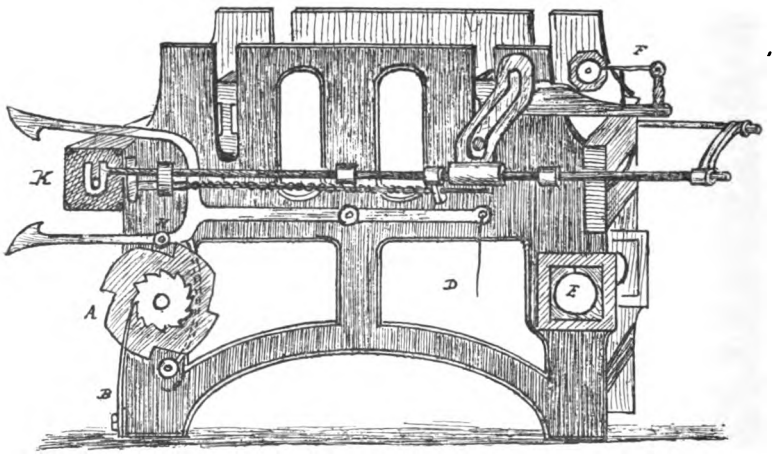


FIG. 116

fast to any convenient part of the loom, then the roller C will be acted upon by the underside of the tappet, and the under hook of the shears will turn the cylinder when required. B is a spring acting as a pawl to keep the ratchet from moving backwards, and there is also a spring shown over the catch which moves it forward; both these springs serve to keep the tappet steady. There are two sets of hooks and needles in this machine—the ordinary set for working the harness, as shown at A (Fig. 118), and a set of twilling hooks, one row at each side of the machine, which are much stronger than the others. The ends of the twilling hooks are hooked round bars, which pass

Digitized by Google

through the loops at the lower ends of the ordinary hooks, as shown at C (Fig. 118). These bars are kept in their places by a grid D, which is between the ordinary hooks and the twilling hooks. Each of the needles of the jacquard is connected with two or more of the ordinary hooks, as shown at A. The twilling hooks have also needles on them, but they are only for the purpose of keeping them in their places, and are not acted upon by the cards. The springs of these needles are on the ends next the cards, or at the back of the faceplate or needle, as shown at E. The centre support for the knives of the griffe is shown at F, with an end view of two knives GG. The ends of the knives enter the griffe frame at each side, so as to allow them to oscillate or partly revolve. This motion is given to them by a set of bars or flat needles, as shown at A (Fig. 119). A single needle is given at A^1. These needles have each the notch in them over the top edge of two or more of the knives, and are acted upon by a barrel C with studs in it, set to the twill. This barrel rises and falls with the griffe, and is turned from one row of pegs or studs to the next one each time the griffe falls by the head or lantern on it coming down on a finger, as shown at A (Fig 120). B in the same figure is a strong spring to keep the barrel steady and make it turn the correct distance.

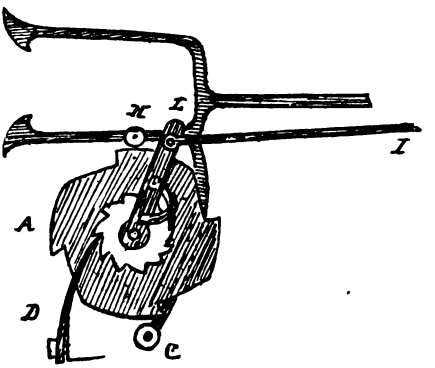


FIG. 117

The number of knives in the griffe must be regulated to suit the twill to be put on the cloth ; they must be a multiple of the twill, and this to some extent regulates the number of needles that must be in each upright row. For example, an 8-leaf twill may have 16 or 24 knives, which would be twice or three times over the twill. If there are 8 rows of needles to 16 knives, or 16 rows of hooks, that would be 2 hooks to each needle, or if there are 24 rows of hooks there must be 3 hooks to the needle ; but if only 2 hooks to the needle are required,

Digitized by Google

there must be 12 rows of needles to 24 rows of hooks. The same principle holds good for a 5-leaf, or any twill. Eight or 12 rows of needles would not be suitable for a 5-leaf twill, neither would 10 rows of needles be suitable for an 8-leaf twill, if the same number of hooks have to be connected with each needle; but 10 rows of needles with 20 rows of hooks or 20 knives will answer for a 5-leaf twill with 2 hooks to the needle, or would answer for an 8-leaf twill with 24 rows

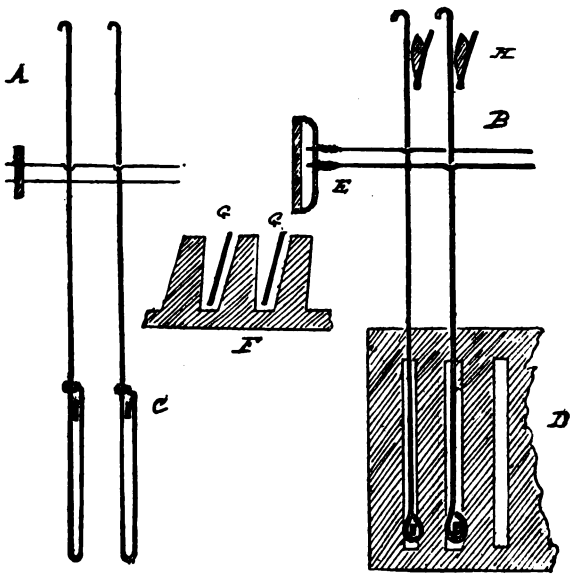


FIG. 118

of hooks, 4 of the needles to have 3 hooks to each, and 6 of them to have 2 hooks to each.

Each of the twilling needles, A, Fig. 119, must be connected with as many of the knives as there are repeats of the twill; thus, for 24 with an 8-leaf twill, the 1st, 9th, and 17th knives would be acted upon by the one needle, and so on with the others.

Now as to the action of the machine. When the pattern card presses upon the needles the griffe begins to rise, and when rising it must lift all the hooks required for the pattern except $\frac{1}{8}$th part of them

Digitized by Google

which must be left down (in an 8-leaf twill) to form the binding or texture of the cloth. In addition to this, $\frac{1}{8}$th part of the ground warp must be raised for the weft to pass under it and form the ground texture. This is all accomplished by the one rising of the griffe. When the griffe is down, one of the twilling needles, A, Fig. 119, is pressed back by a peg or stud in the barrel, which causes the knives

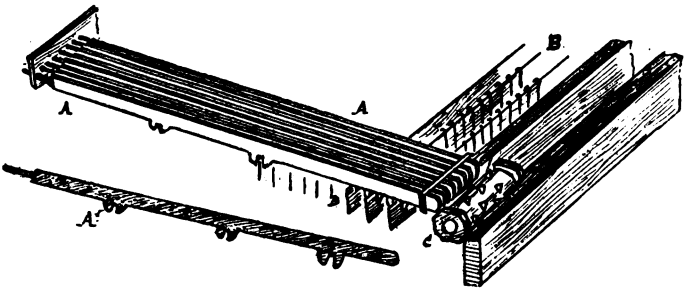


FIG. 119

connected with this needle to turn out of the way of the heads of the hooks, so that when the griffe is rising these knives will pass clear of them, leaving every eighth row of hooks down to form the binding of

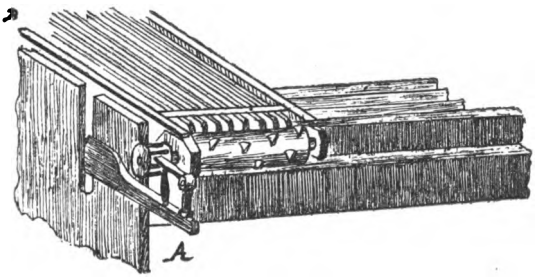


FIG. 120

the raised or pattern warp. In the Scotch machines the knives slide back instead of revolving. As shown at H, Fig. 118, there are projecting pieces of brass fastened on the knives between the twilling hooks. These hooks stand clear of the knives, but when the latter revolve the projections on them push the hooks forward to the next knife, which lifts them when the griffe is rising. The hooks draw up the bars to which their lower ends are looped, and raise the rows of

Digitized by Google

ordinary hooks through which the bars pass, thus forming the twill on the ground in the same way, but in the reverse direction, that the knives passing clear of the adjoining rows of hooks form the twill on the figure.

The working of the texture requires the griffe to fall for every shot, which would be otherwise unnecessary, and the card must come in against the needles each time to push off the hooks that are not to be raised. This causes wear and tear, which cannot be avoided with this machine, but they work very well, though they are not by any means perfect. There is a good deal of friction on the needles, which causes them to wear quickly; but being so much easier on the warp than the pressure harness, and more easily managed, they are extensively used for large patterns in the fine linen damask trade. They will not make so firm a cloth as the pressure harness, and have the objection that all twills formed with the harness have when there is a gathered tie—viz. that a portion of the cloth will have the twill running in one direction and a portion in the reverse direction.

Like all single-acting jacquards, these machines have no counterpoise in themselves, and being very heavy require one added to assist the loom to raise them. Sometimes this is accomplished by means of a carriage spring placed on a beam or on the top rail of the loom frame; and an arm from the shaft, which raises the griffe resting on the spring, will form a sufficient counterpoise, the spring being made as strong as is required for the purpose. Unless the springs, which are made similar to those used for carriages, are nicely tempered, and the different pieces made so as to slide freely on each other, they are liable to snap when the loom is running quickly. The griffe is generally driven from the fly-wheel on the crankshaft in the same manner as for ordinary single-acting jacquards. It is, however, a better plan to drive it from a crank on a stud wheel gearing into the tappet-shaft wheel. This does away with the necessity for a counterpoise unless the machinery is very heavy, in which case a few strong spiral springs will suffice. The horizontal shaft for raising the griffe, or griffes if two or more machines are used, must be very strong, so as not to twist with the tortuous strain, which is very great. Three of these machines, with 500 or 600 needles to each,

Digitized by Google

are required for tablecloth mountings when tied up for centred patterns —one machine to work the border, one the centre, and one the portion between the border and the centre; or two machines to work the double

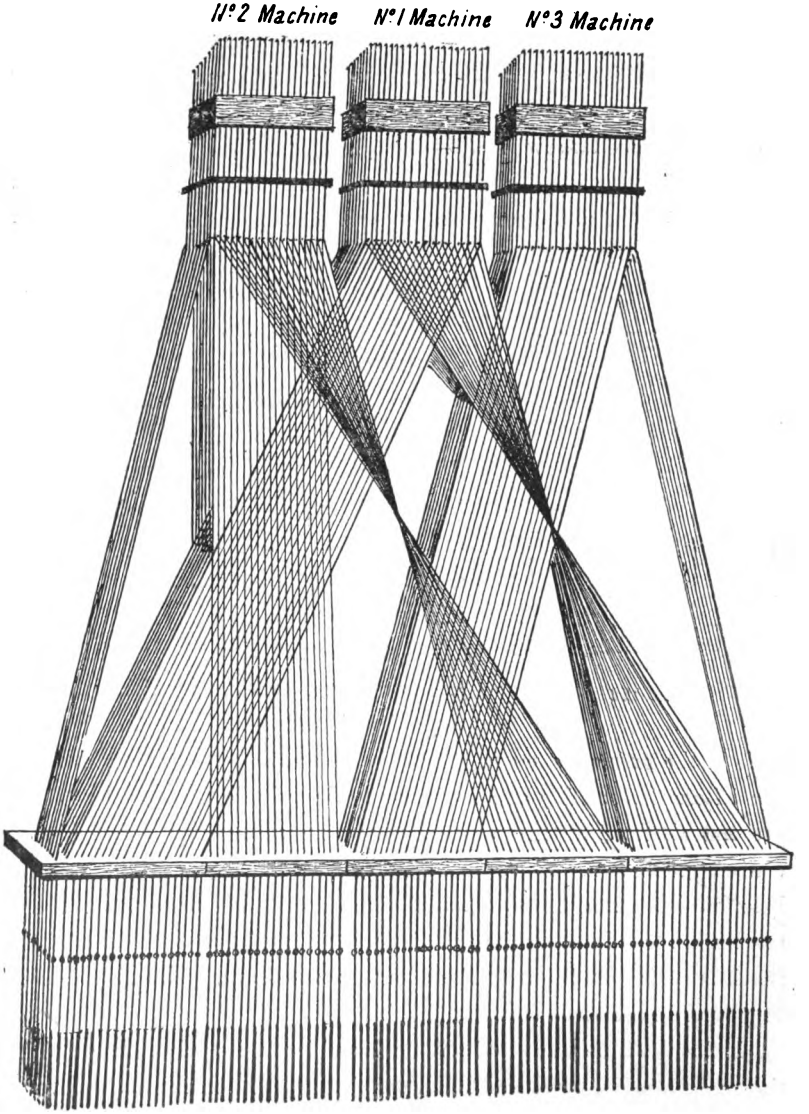


FIG. 121

Digitized by Google

portion, and one the single portion. Fig. 121 gives a view of a mounting tied up in this way, Nos. 1 and 2 machines being double mounting and No. 3 single.

The Karl Wein Jacquard.—This machine is a twilling jacquard on the same principle as that last described, but performs its work in a more scientific manner. It was patented by Messrs. J. Tschörner and K. Wein, Kesmark, Hungary, and was first introduced into this country at the Glasgow Exhibition of 1888.

The following is a description of the machine exhibited there: The principal feature of this machine is perhaps that each knife acts independently in a grid, and is wrought by a tappet at the side of the loom, so that any row of hooks can be raised or lowered at pleasure, and this without any change of card. Fig. 122 gives an end view of the framing, showing the upper and lower grids in which the knives or lifters slide. An end view of four of the lifters is given at A, 1 and 3 belonging to the top set, which work in the upper grid, and 2 and 4 to the bottom set, which work in the lower grid.

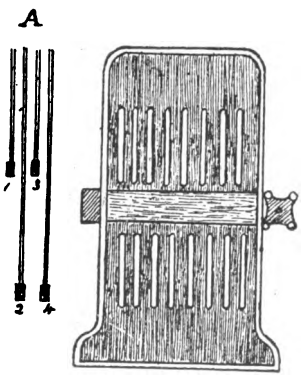


FIG. 122

A perspective view of eight of these lifters is given at B C, Fig. 123, with upright slide bars D attached to them, which slide in the rack or frame E. These bars are for the purpose of making the lifters rise steadily and horizontally, as (which may be seen) they are not all lifted at their centre. Only one connection is fair in the centre, which would no doubt be an objection with a heavy harness to lift; but this arrangement is made to suit for the machine sitting across the loom, for a London tie; and some method of making vertical connections from the levers to the lifters is necessary. The above does very well for a narrow harness if light.

If the machine was fixed on the loom for a Norwich tie, or with the cards to hang over the back, then the connections from the levers might all be at the centres of the lifters and the bars D would only be

Digitized by Google

required to steady them. The levers for raising the lifters are shown at F, with their fulcrum at I. G is a spring, one of which is attached to each lever to keep it down, as the tappet has not a positive rising and sinking motion, only raising the levers and allowing their own weight and the draw of the springs to recover them. One of the connecting rods from the lever to the tappet is shown at I. Fig. 124 gives the principle of this tappet. A is the lever or treadle with its fulcrum at A; the connecting rod B connects the point of it to one of the top levers F (Fig. 123), and C is a bowl at the other end of it which travels

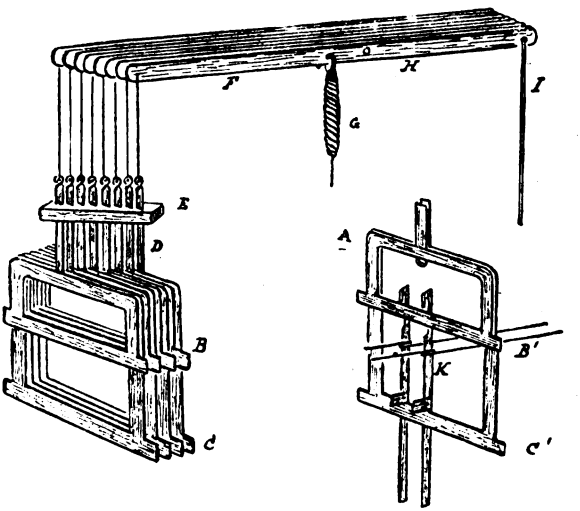


FIG. 123

on the tappet plate D. The tappet is made up of 17 plates struck to suit; 16 of these are for working the lifters and 1 for the cylinder; it sits at the side of the loom like a Woodcroft tappet. For an 8-end satin twill 16 levers are required, 8 for the bottom set of lifters and 8 for the top set. Fig. 123 A shows two lifters B^1 and C^1 with hooks and needles. A hook and a needle on a larger scale are shown in Fig. 125. The hooks are flat pieces of iron cut to the shape shown, with small projecting pieces, as *a*, riveted to them, by which they can rest on the bottom lifting knives, as at C^1 (Fig. 123 A), so that when

Digitized by Google

any of these knives are lifted a row of hooks will be raised by them. As before explained in reference to the Bessbrook machine, it is necessary when the pattern card presses on the needles for all the knives except one to act, and also for one of the bottom lifters to rise to form the texture of the cloth; the same must be in this machine, and can easily be regulated by the tappet, which should hold up the warp required for the pattern and work the ground texture as well. This is done in the following manner: Suppose there are 16 lifters, 8 top and 8 bottom ones. When the card presses on the needles, 7 of the top and 1 of the bottom lifters should be raised by the tappet, and the top lifter, which is left down, should be raised so far as to catch the heads of those hooks in the row belonging to it that are not pushed back by the card. For the next shot this lifter is raised and another one let down, but it is not let down far enough for the hooks to get off it, stopping at the same height that the first one was raised to, which is easily regulated by the tappet. If there are 3 shots to the card, another similar change takes place; then for the fourth shot all the lifters are dropped, the cylinder presses in, and all but one of the top lifters and one of the lower ones are again raised, and the twill proceeded with as before. It will thus be seen that the shedding for the twill acts as in a double-acting jacquard, but the lift at the change of card is similar to that of a single-acting jacquard. Of course the tappet must be struck to change the lifters according to the twill required on the cloth. In the Bessbrook machine there could be 16, 24, or 32 rows of hooks to 8 rows of needles by having 2, 3, or 4 hooks to each needle, or the number of hooks to each needle might vary and any number of needles might be used. There must be a knife for each row of hooks, but all the knives belong to the one griffe. In the Karl Wein machine there must be 2 lifters for each row of hooks, and 16 of them are enough to have for convenience. In the machine exhibited, 16 hooks, or 2 rows of 8, were attached to 6 needles, 4

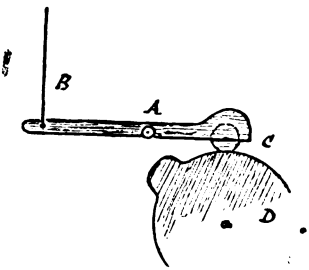


FIG. 124

Digitized by Google

needles having 3 hooks to each and 2 needles 2 hooks to each, as shown at B (Fig. 125), the thick vertical lines representing 1 row of hooks, and the thin lines the next row. There were 6 rows of needles in the needle board, and the point of each needle was cranked as shown at C; each row of holes for the needles in the needle board, or face-plate, stood between 2 rows of hooks: the first 3 needles were connected with 1 row of hooks and the second 3 with the next row, the cranks of the first and second set of needles being turned in the opposite direction so as to enable them to fall in with the rows of hooks. Of course there might as well have been 8 rows of needles with 2 hooks to each, or 4 needles to each row of hooks.

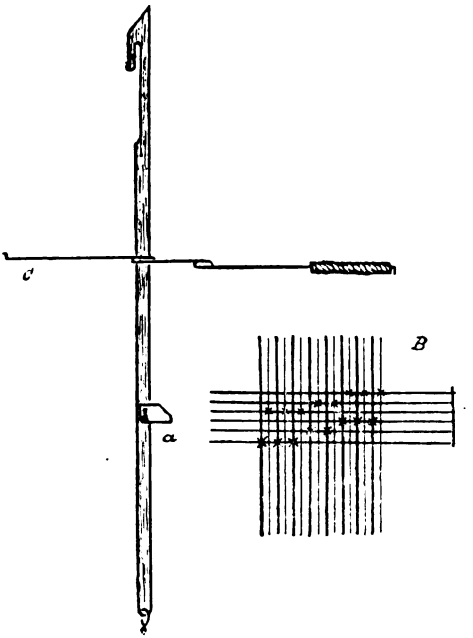


FIG. 125

If necessary to use more than one machine, some arrangement would require to be made for lifting them. It might be done by using a double set of levers with connecting rods similar to those used for twilling looms.

The twilling of the ground might be wrought by a griffe and hooks as in the Bessbrook machine, thus doing away with seven treadles and seven tappet plates, but this would make the twilling a single-acting shedding motion.

Since this was written the machine has been altered so as to make it more suitable to the requirements of the work in this country, but does not appear to gain favour, and this class of weaving is not very extensively used.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER VII

GAUZE

THE principle of weaving gauze with shafts and healds applies equally to making it with a harness, though perhaps the latter is simpler, as there is not the same trouble in the arranging of drafts; and, in intricate work, the number of doup leaves required for shaft mountings adds considerably to the trouble of the weaver and tackler.

The simplest, or in any case the most ready, method of weaving gauze in a harness, is to use an ordinary harness, and form the gauze by means of one or more doups and standards in front of it. Suppose we have a 400 machine with the harness tied up in simple repeats of 400; any desired pattern can be put upon the cloth to the extent of 400 hooks of the jacquard as in ordinary harness work, but it cannot be made of any texture desired—it must be made to suit the working of the doups in front of the harness. If the open work is to be a plain gauze with one shot into each shed, then the pattern must be plain cloth, as the doup standard must be raised and sunk alternately for each shot; but any desired form or figure can be made in plain texture on the 400 hooks, and the cloth will consist of a plain figure on a gauze ground; or it might as well be a gauze figure on a plain ground.

Those not acquainted with figured gauze work, have considerable difficulty in understanding how to make plain or gauze as required on the cloth.

It is easy to understand that working the harness without the doups can make plain cloth, and also that working the doups and standards, and portion of the harness, for alternate shots, can make gauze; but the difficulty is to thoroughly comprehend how, when working gauze, to neutralise the crossing of that portion of the warp

Digitized by Google

that is to form the plain figure. There are two ways of neutralising the crossing effect of the doups on any thread or number of threads that may be required for the figure: first, by not raising the mail or mails carrying the crossing threads, or threads in the doups, but forming the plain by raising the mails carrying the threads not in the doups, alternately with the doup standard; and, secondly, if the threads not in the doups are raised along with the doup standard, no crossing can take place; but this would not suit for working plain cloth, as these mails must be down when the doup standard is up in order to form plain cloth.

If a different gauze is required, say one with 2 shots into each shed, or between the crossings, then the solid texture might be a rib or mat; or if it suited the pattern, as in the case of dice work, two doups could be employed, so that one could rest when the other is working the gauze. Fig. 126 is a plain gauze and plain texture, common dice pattern, which could be wrought with shafts, but shows the principle of working with the harness as well. This could be wrought with one doup in front of the harness. To work the dice A the mails carrying the threads not in the doups would be raised alternately with the doup standard, and thus form plain cloth; and at the same time, to make the dice B a gauze, the mails carrying the threads in the doups would be wrought alternately with the doup standard. For the dices C and D, this would be reversed. In case of the gauze having to be made with, say, 3 shots into each shed, and 2 threads twisting round 2 to give openness of texture, it will be seen that it could only be wrought with one doup, provided 3 shots went to each shed of the solid dice, as the doup would require to be up for 3 shots in succession, and down for the same. If plain cloth were required it would be necessary

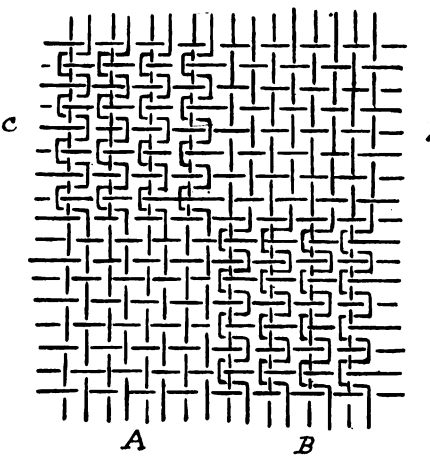


FIG. 126

Digitized by Google

to have a doup and standard for each dice, so that one could remain down when the other is raised for gauzing; this would allow the harness to work any texture on the solid dice, the doup of which is not gauzing. If it were required to work a diagonal stripe of plain and gauze, as shown in Fig. 127, with 2 weft shots coming in between each crossing of the gauze, 6 doups would be required in front of the harness, whereas if only one shot came between the crossings only one doup would be required. It will be seen that there are 6 splitfuls of warp to one repeat of the pattern, and that the change from the plain to the gauze is at a different time for each; therefore, on account of the doup standards having to be raised for 2 shots in succession when a portion of the cloth is plain texture, it is necessary for each splitful of warp to have its own doup so that it can be crossed without interfering with the plain texture in the other portion of the cloth.

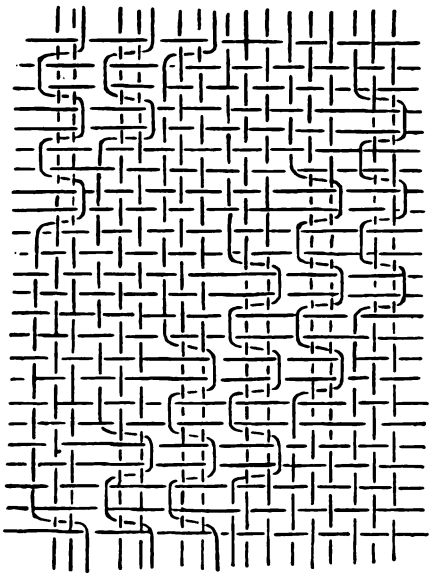


FIG. 127

This pattern would be better suited for a shaft mounting than for a harness with doups in front, but could be wrought with a gauze harness more easily than with either. The advantage of using a harness with doups in front, in this case, over a shaft mounting, would be that the plain stripe could be figured if desired, and the gauze stripe might go in steps of two or three splitfuls alike, which would give much bolder stripes.

When more than one or two sets of doups would be required to be used in front of a harness, it is advisable to adopt a true gauze harness, as the doup shafts come in the way of the weaver. A gauze harness

Digitized by Google

has the doups in the harness, so that they can be lifted independently, which admits of indiscriminate figuring on either the gauze or solid portion of the cloth.

When using doups in front of the harness it is not necessary that the plain or solid cloth should be all a plain or unfigured texture; any suitable warp figure may be formed on the plain by the harness, but weft figures cannot be made on the upper side of the cloth, because, though the harness can be raised for any number of shots in succession to form a figure by the warp, having it sunk would not in the same way form a weft figure, as in crossing the gauze a portion of the yarn would be raised by the doup standard, which cannot be prevented, unless by having more doups than one. A harness with doups in front is better suited for working stripes than any other class of work, and it is in this class of work that gauze can be made most effective.

When figuring with gauze, unless several shots are thrown into each shed, or between the crossings of the gauze threads, and 3 or more warp threads are twisted together, the openness of the texture is not sufficient to make a good contrast between the plain and gauze unless the fabric is very light; and even with 2 threads round 2, and throwing 4 to 6 shots into each twist, the contrast is not so great as might be desired when the cloth is heavy. A portion of the weft, say every second or third shot, might be made to pass either over or under the gauzed texture and interwoven only with the solid portion of the cloth, the flushed or loose weft to be cropped off afterwards. In stripes, not only can this be done, but the warp may be set much thinner or wider in the reed for the gauze: say every second or third split may be left empty; or it may be of a different description of yarn —a fancy twist if desired, or in threads of different colours. A fancy stripe with three threads to the split in a reed, set 30 splits per inch, and every second split of the gauze portion left empty, makes a very effective pattern for fine work, with say 80 picks per inch; or 120 picks might be used, and every third or fourth one not wrought into the gauze, but flushed over to be cut off afterwards. There might be 2 thick threads or 4 finer ones to each split of the gauze, and 4 to 6 shots into each crossing, this, of course, to be regulated to suit cir-

Digitized by Google

cumstances and taste; one thing must, however, be remembered—viz. that when made too bold or open the warp ribs are liable to slide on the weft, and this is the chief defect in gauze when made open, especially when a smooth, clean yarn, as linen, is used.

When working stripes, any pattern, or any texture or style of cloth, whether single, double, or pile work, may be used for the solid stripes,

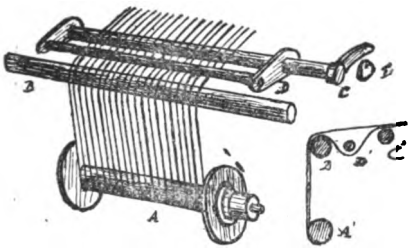


FIG. 128

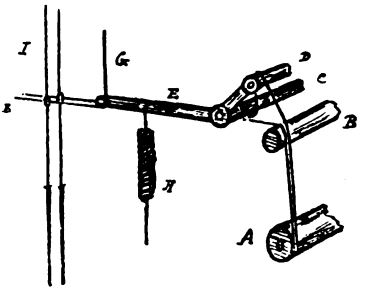


FIG. 129

or the whole cloth may consist of stripes made of combinations of gauze and solid textures. One set of stripes may be wrought quite independently of the other by having the yarn on separate beams, and when only one set of stripes is gauzed, the others are not drawn into

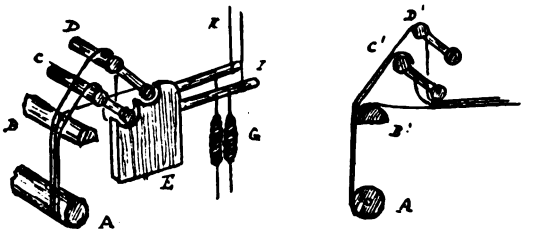


FIG. 130

the doup heddles, so are quite independent of them. The doup heddles may be spaced or otherwise as desired. When working with doups in front of the harness, there must be a slackener for the crossing threads for each doup standard, same as for heddle work. Figs. 128, 129, and 130 show some of the methods of slackening in use. In Figs. 128 and 129, A is the yarn beam, B the back rail, C and D the vibrating bars or slackeners, C acts as a fulcrum; and in Fig. 128 the bar D presses

Digitized by Google

the crossing yarn down and is raised by the tappet E, which may be either above or below a lever on the end of the bar C, a spring on the lever regulating it, to hold it against the tappet. In Fig. 129 the bar D is sunk to relieve the crossing yarn, by drawing up the cord G, which is attached to the jacquard or dobby, the spring H holding the lever E down when it is relieved. Fig. 130 is similar to Fig. 129, but for two doups; it is shown both in perspective and in end view, and will be clearly understood. C and D must be set at such a distance above each other as will permit of the traverse of D without C being moved. Two or more shafts of heddles might also be used which could hold the crossing yarn either up or down, same as the bars, till they are acted on by the jacquard or by a tappet.

Designing.—When designing a pattern for gauze, with doups in front of the harness, it is only necessary to set off a few hooks of the jacquard to work the doups and slackener, and design the fancy portion on the remaining hooks; or if the gauze and slackener are wrought with tappets the full jacquard will be available for the figured portion, the same as if no gauze were being made. If the doups and slackener are to be wrought by the jacquard the pattern can be painted on the remaining hooks, and the dots for working these can be added afterwards, agreeably to the texture of the gauze required. The doup standard and slackener should act together, and the doup or half leaf should rise when the harness carrying the crossing threads rises. If the doup standard is to be raised every second shot, as is required when plain cloth has to be wrought with one doup, it might be wrought by a tappet, and the doup or loose heald might be raised by the machine for every shot, as it must rise with its standard as well as when the harness raises any of the yarn drawn into the doup. The doup shaft is best held down by a light spring. Indiarubber about $\frac{3}{16}$ or $\frac{1}{4}$ in. in diameter suits very well. One spring at each side of either one or two ply of this should be sufficient. If the number of rows in the harness is such that it will correspond with the number of threads to be twisted together, or be a multiple of them, it will be all the more convenient, though it is not necessary for it to be so. For instance, if 1 thread is twisted round 1, =2, an 8-row harness would give 4 repeats of this

Digitized by Google

in each row; but if 1 thread were twisted round 2, =3, then 1 row of the harness would give 2 repeats, or hold 2 splitfuls of warp and 2 threads over, so that another thread would have to be taken from the back of the next row. For this a 6-row harness would be more convenient, which could be got by leaving 2 rows of the machine idle, and designing the pattern on 6-row paper, or ruling 8-row paper to 6-row after the design is painted. To work fancy textures with gauze by means of a harness with doups in front, both must be arranged to suit each other, unless a large number of doups be employed. For instance, a 2-and-2 twill could be wrought with 1 doup leaf in front of the harness by making 1 thread of the gauze twist round 3, and throwing 2 shots

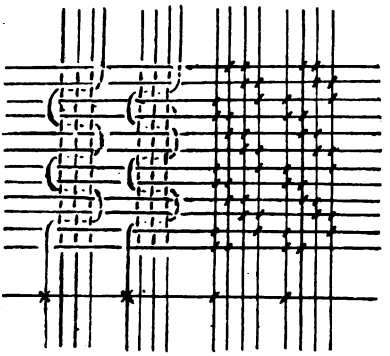


Fig. 131

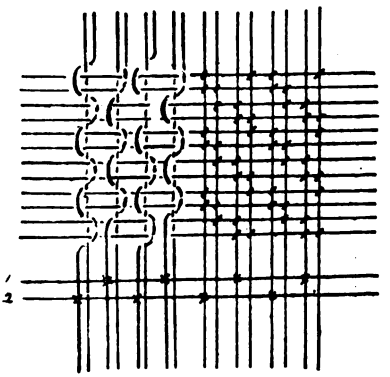


Fig. 132

into each crossing, as shown in Fig. 131. If 1 thread were to be twisted round 1 with a 2-and-2 twill, and 2 shots to the gauze crossing, 2 doup leaves would be required, as shown in Fig. 132. A 4-thread fancy twill can be wrought with 1 doup, as shown in Fig. 133, 1 thread twisting round 3 and 4 shots into each crossing of the gauze. Satins or regular twills are more difficult to work, unless by making an irregular gauze. Take a 5-end satin, which has the threads over 4 and under 1. The gauze might have 4 shots and 1 shot into each crossing alternately, and be easily wrought with 1 doup; but if 2 or 3 shots had to go to each crossing it would be different, as the doup would require to sink for 1 shot out of 5, in order to let the threads drawn into it bind in the

Digitized by Google

twilled portion of the cloth, or otherwise the binding would have to take place on these threads when the doup is down, which it could do if it suited otherwise. But it must be remembered that when solid cloth and gauze are working together, the former is made by raising the doup standard and those mails which carry the threads that are not drawn into the doup, leaving stationary the mails carrying the crossing threads, except where gauze is being made; therefore, in working a 5-end satin, if the doup held up any of the threads for, say, 3 shots, and then sank for 3, there would be no way of holding up these threads in the twill portion to make them pass over 4 shots, as a 5-end satin must do, for if the harness twines carrying these threads are raised, they will cause a cross to be made instead of completing the twill. Patterns of this description should all be wrought in a gauze harness. In the figures given the gauze crossings are represented by dotted lines where they are raised by the harness, for sake of distinction.

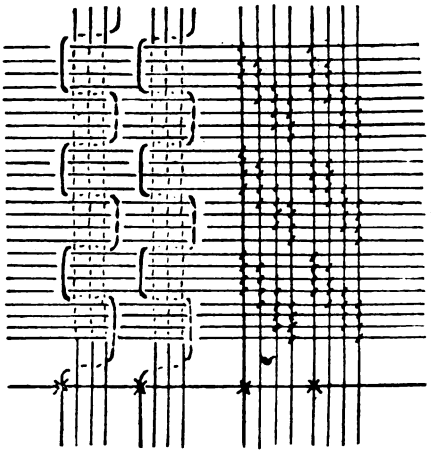


FIG. 133

HAND-LOOM GAUZE HARNESS.

A large quantity of goods are still being made in the hand loom on the gauze principle. These are mostly for curtains known as Cretes or Madras muslins, and for antimacassars or chair backs. They are chiefly woven in and about Glasgow, and in Newtownards in the North of Ireland. These goods are made on the half-harness principle—that is, half the warp is drawn into the harness and the other half passes through the harness and is drawn into a set of heddles in front. This mounting is shown in Fig. 134. It will be seen

Digitized by Google

that every alternate thread is drawn into one of the harness mails and all the threads are drawn through a pair of clasped leaves of heddles A B; those that are drawn into the mails are drawn through the under clasp of the leaf A, and those that are not in the mails through the upper clasp of the leaf B. The threads are next drawn through the doups as shown, those in the mails being in the back set, or upper doups. These doups are made different from those generally used, the doup or half-heald being connected with two standards; this is for the purpose of throwing less strain on the yarn. When the harness is drawn the shaft A is also raised, B being sunk, as well as

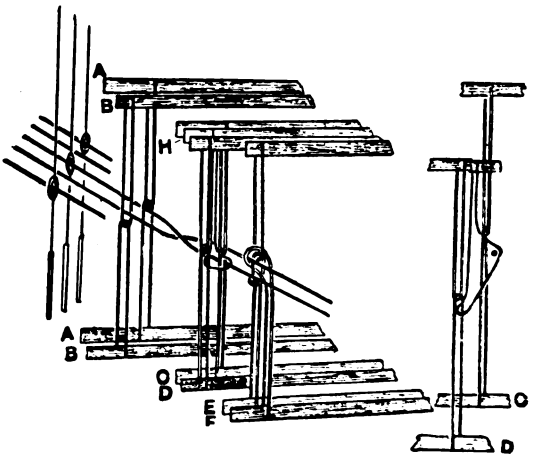


FIG. 134 FIG. 134 A

the front set of doups. As the yarn in the harness is also drawn through the back set of doups, it follows that they must be relieved to allow the harness to raise the yarn. This might be done, and sometimes is done, by sinking the ordinary doup shaft and letting the yarn draw the doup through its standard; but in this case the standard C is raised, which allows the thread to rise in the doup, as shown at Fig. 134A, without having to draw it up, and at the same time all the doups are kept firm in their places by the standard D, thus preventing any entanglement in a fine set of doups. The distance between the harness and back leaves is 4 in., and between the back leaves and gauze

Digitized by Google

mounting 3 in. The cloth is a plain gauze, and the figure is formed by throwing one or more shots of rove weft, either white or coloured, into the shed formed by the harness flushing over the ground and clipped off afterwards. To form the figure shed, draw the harness, raise the leaf A and the standard C, and sink the other leaves, making a rising and falling shed, or centre shedding. To form the gauze, for the open shed raise B C D and F, and to form the cross shed raise E and F, in both cases sinking the others. For these sheds fine or ground weft is thrown in, the flowering shots coming between them. The shafts A and B are for the purpose of keeping a clear shed, but might be done without. These goods are now largely made by power looms, principally with gauze reeds, which see.

GAUZE HARNESS

In a true gauze harness the doups are connected with the mails or leashes of the harness, the harness twines, or leashes, acting as standards for the doups, so that any splitful of warp may be crossed or twisted differently from the others, and any kind of texture can be wrought along with the gauze without having to consider the one in connection with the other, as in the previous harness. Figs. 135 and 136 show how these harnesses are tied up; the letters refer to the same parts in both figures. The harness is shown with four cords in the row, for the back harness and the doup mail in front, and this could be repeated twice for an eight-row harness. It is better to have the rows of the harness regulated in this way to suit the gauze to be made, and have the doup leashes in one or two rows at the front, but it is not necessary for it to be so, as the doups could come on any of the mails through the harness, if desired, in case of a harness being tied up, and it being wanted to add the doup leashes for gauzing; but this is rather confusing. In any case, this method of working is now superseded.

A is the doup or dead leash, B the doup standard, or what answers to the doup standard in heald work. C and D are the leashes carrying the plain or lying threads, and E the leash carrying the crossing

Digitized by Google

thread, the crossing in this case being one thread round two. F is the doup. Fig. 136 shows the harness drawn for the open shed, and it will be observed that the dead leash A is connected with the back harness E, so that when this leash is raised to form the shed it draws up the dead leash, also relieving the doup. There was one trouble with these dead leashes—namely, that they were liable to twist round the standards when close to them in the cumber board, sometimes being put through the same hole or the next one; but by having them

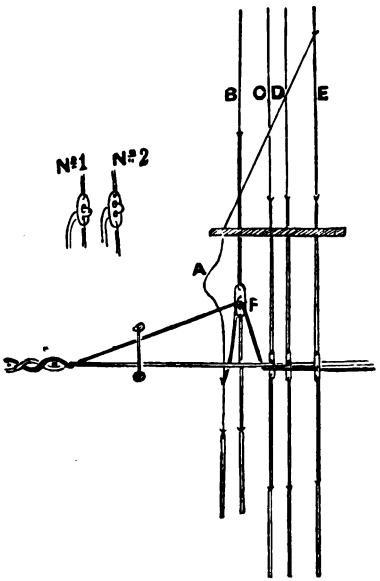


Fig. 135

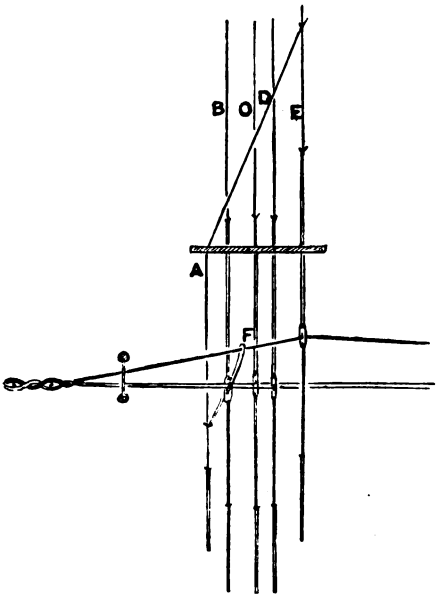


Fig. 136

in front and a little distance off this could be avoided. Wires or cords were sometimes stretched across between the lingoes to prevent the twisting. Fig. 135 shows the harness drawn for the cross shed, the doup standard being drawn up, drawing the doup up with it. The doup was fastened into the mails as shown at No. 1, Fig. 135; but a better plan is to have double-eyed mails, and fasten the doup as at No. 2. This form of harness is now superseded by one having all the doups on a shaft in front of the harness, which consists of two parts

Digitized by Google

—namely, the back harness and the douping harness (which is about $\frac{3}{4}$ in. to $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. in front of the former); the doups are connected with this latter harness, and all the doups may be on one shaft, whether for one, two, or more rows of standards in the front harness. The doups on the shaft are known as a 'slip heald' or 'slip.' This is a much simpler and more convenient method of working than the preceding.

Fig. 137 shows a simple and effective gauze mounting for a 4°° jacquard, the cords being carried up to the machine in the usual way. A is the breast beam of the loom, B the reed, C the back rail, and N the yarn beam. D is the slip heald, or doup, which is simply a half-leaf of ordinary clasped heddles, made of cotton or worsted, fine or coarse, as may be desired for the quality of work to be wrought. E is the front or doup mounting, connected with the two front rows of the machine, and passing through a small cumber board in front of that for the body of the harness; it is bolted so that it can be shifted to regulate the distance between the doup harness and that of the figuring. The distance between the two harnesses may range from $\frac{3}{4}$ in. to $1\frac{1}{2}$ in., or whatever is found most suitable to ease the strain on the yarn and make a clear shed. G is the cumber board, and F the body of the harness for working the figure.

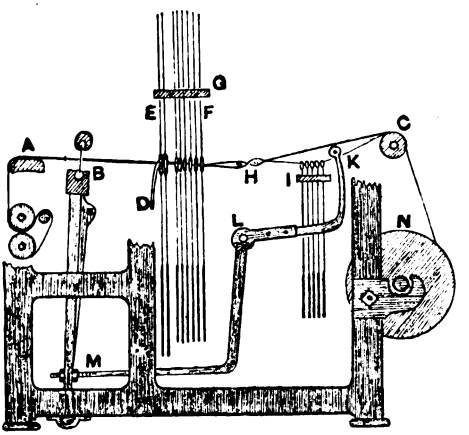


FIG. 137

The method of slackening the threads that are drawn into the doups is perhaps the principal feature of this mounting. When one or more slackening bars are used it is plain that all the threads that pass over the bar that is oscillated will be slackened at once, though for figured work it may be that only a very few of these threads should be slackened, and if the remainder or any portion of them are raised by the back

Digitized by Google

leashes they should be kept tight at the back so as to enable them to draw up the slack doups. It follows, therefore, that for giving good work and keeping the threads at a regular tension, every thread in the doups should have its own independent slackener. It is not absolutely necessary that this should be so; strong twist cotton or worsted yarn will work very well in a harness with one slackening bar vibrating for each shot, though it must throw an irregular strain on the yarn, and it requires to be tightly paced.

In Fig. 137 the slackening arrangement consists of a small back harness, as shown at I, through which all the whip threads are drawn; these threads then pass over one lease rod and under the next one, as shown, and then on to the harness to be drawn in according to the draught of the gauze. The harness consists of small mails attached to lingoes with twines in the same way as the lower portion of the ordinary harness is prepared, but the mails are rounded off above the eye or centre hole without having the top hole for threading the upper portion of the harness to. The cumber board of this harness must be nicely set, so that the lingoes will hang on the yarn without drawing the mails quite close on the cumber board, which soon would cut the twines. To regulate this the cumber board and back rail must be set in relation to each other and the mails of the harness so as to produce the desired effect. A medium position for working may be taken as follows:—Cumber board 12 in. behind harness and 6 in. in front of back rail. Back rail 2 in. above the level of the mails in the main harness, and cumber board of small back harness 3 in. below the level of the mails, or 5 in. lower than the top of the back rail. The back lease rod might then come in about 8 in. behind the harness. The weight of the lingoes on the back harness must be regulated to suit the strength of warp to be wrought; about 30 to 40 per lb. for, say, from 40/2 to 80/2 cotton would suit. The mails for the body of the harness may be 25's or 30's, or the same as for ordinary work, and those for the doup standards heavier, say 18's or 20's. In addition to this harness for slackening, or rather for keeping a yielding tension on the whip, there is a slackening bar supported by a lever K L M at both sides of the loom. This lever has its fulcrum at L, and is attached to the swords

Digitized by Google

of the lay at M, and therefore vibrates at every beat up. The slackener acts as a positive motion, and keeps the threads from tightening up or being drawn forward by the twisting; it acts on the body of the threads, and the harness acts on them individually.

This, when properly set, is an easy motion, and produces a good firm gauze. It is a Bradford patent. Now, in reference to the working of the gauze: The harness is levelled much in the same way as for ordinary work, the mails being $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. or $1\frac{3}{4}$ in. below the level of the breast beam. The doup mails should be a little lower than those for the harness, say $\frac{3}{16}$ in. or $\frac{1}{4}$ in.

The shed should be closed, and begin to open again when the reed is at the fell of the cloth. Too large a shed should not be made with the doups, on account of the strain on the yarn: a small clear shed gives much more satisfactory work. The front cumber board, containing the doup leashes, may be shifted a little forward or back if thought desirable, so as to get the cross shed to spring as easily as possible, the amount of elasticity in the warp varying this considerably. The slip heald is raised for every shot by cording it to the brander or griffe of the jacquard, which for gauze work is generally a single-acting one. Springs are used for holding down the slip—a light wire spring, or, better, a piece of round indiarubber about $\frac{3}{16}$ in. in diameter, doubled if necessary. Bridles should be attached from the shaft of the slip heald at each end and fastened to the cumber board so as to bear the draw of the springs when the harness is down; the cords connected with the jacquard for raising this shaft may then be left slack, and the size of shed may be regulated or made less than the draw of the machine, if required.

It is very important to have the doups nicely adjusted; on this depends their lasting capacity, and sometimes a very short time is sufficient to cut them to pieces if badly set. But if correctly done they will generally last for a length of time, particularly if occasionally turned on the shaft, which is more essential in working with a linen than with a cotton warp.

One of the doup standard mails with a doup through it is shown at No. 1 (Fig. 138), where it may be seen that the doup is simply drawn

Digitized by Google

through the eye of the mail, and not connected with it in any way. It is only held in this position by the warp thread passing through it, and whenever the thread breaks the doup falls out of the mail. This is a trouble to the weaver, at least till she gets accustomed to it, and mails, as shown at No. 2, have been made to hold up the doup. The remedy here is often worse than the evil. The mails wear the doups, particularly if the springs draw them tight down on the eyes of the mails; and besides, they have the disadvantage that the slip heald has to be built in them after the harness is mounted, whereas with the open mails the slips can be procured anywhere quite independent of the harness. The slip heald must be set so that when the harness is down the yarn will not be drawn through the eyes of the mails by the doup sinking too low. This may be guarded against by adjusting the bridles at each side, between the slip shaft and the cumber board. The loops of the doups should pass about $\frac{1}{4}$ in. through the eyes of the mails when at the lowest or bottom position, and the front mails being about $\frac{1}{4}$ in. lower than the others allows the loops of the doups to be just bearing lightly on the warp, all being held up straight. The slackening bar must be arranged to work in time with the doup standards, and should not slacken the yarn too much nor too little, just keeping it at a uniform tension. The great point with tender or weak yarn is to reduce all friction to a minimum, no matter by what it is caused, and if this is done the yarn and doups, if they are of a fair quality to begin with, should both work well; but a very slight difference in setting the doup may make a great deal of difference in the working of it. A doup that may be cut to pieces in working 20 yards of cloth might work 400 or 500 yards with so little alteration as not to be noticeable to those not accustomed to the work. The slackening bar must not rise so high as to raise the yarn that is above it, nor must it sink so low as to press the whip down on the back harness board, and it must be so regulated that within these limits it will give the proper amount of slackening, and prevent the whip warp from getting tight and drawing up the small back harness.

Worsted makes the best weaving doups for strong work, but for lighter work cotton is mostly used, being finer and cheaper. Some-

Digitized by Google

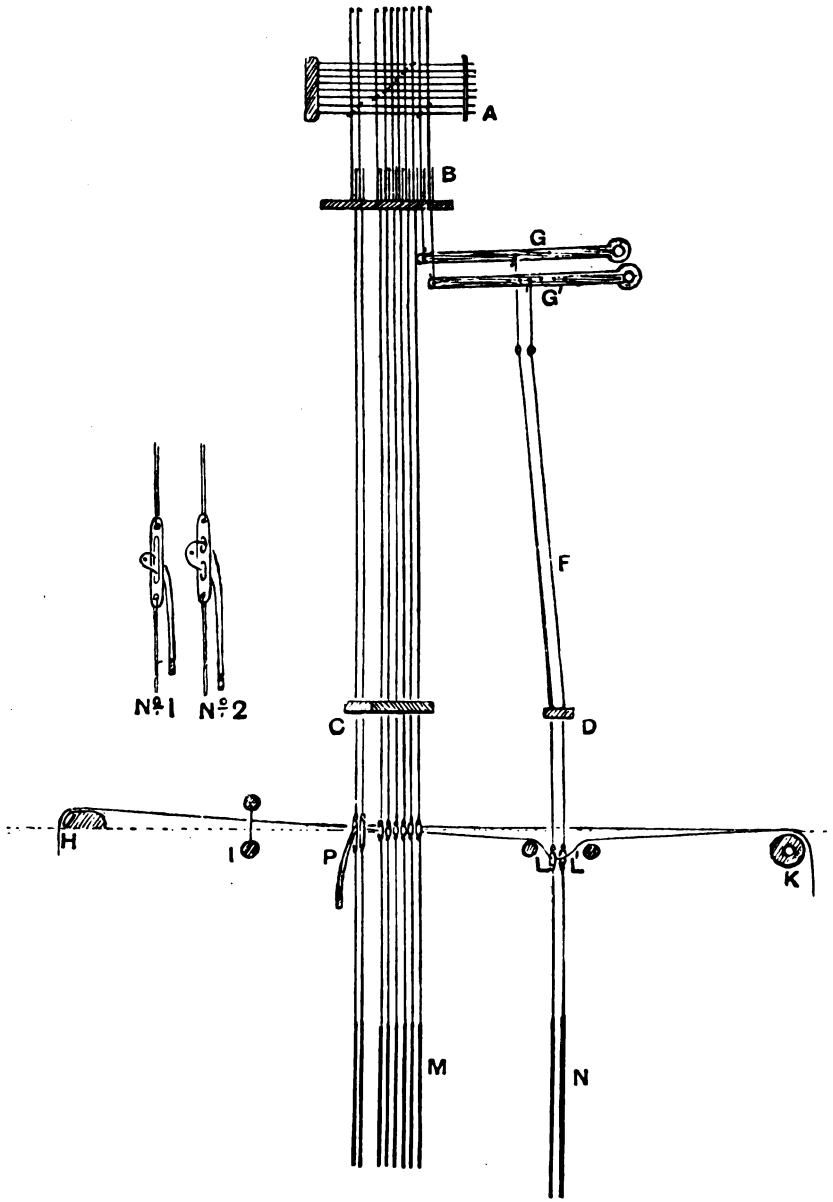


FIG. 138

Digitized by Google

times polished linen yarn is used and makes a very smooth doup, but does not give the wear.

Small metallic rings are sometimes used on the loops of the doups, and the warp drawn through these rings; this suits for yarn with much fibre on it, as it keeps the fibre from getting twisted into the doups, but the rings cut the doups faster than ordinary yarn working in them would.

Instead of a slip heald in front, doups with a lingo on each have been used, with the mails for the standards as shown at No. 2, Fig. 138, so that the doups cannot fall out of them, and the yarn when drawn up by the back harness in shedding raises the doups and lingoes up with it. The weight of the lingoes must be such as will suit the strength of the warp to be used—not too heavy for it to lift nor too light, so that in the cross shed the doups would be drawn through the mails. These doups being separate, are easily built in the harness and very easily repaired by the weaver when they break, but they break too frequently. It is, of course, only for a strong warp that this method of working is suitable, and even for it, although it works very well, the principle is not good.

The gauze harness which will probably be most frequently met with, at least in the cotton trade, is shown in Fig. 138. It is an older harness than that described, having been patented in Macclesfield in 1876 in a somewhat different form. The difference between this and the preceding chiefly consists in the method adopted for slackening the yarn, and the jacquard may also be specially built to suit for this. In setting this loom the harness and mails are tied up and levelled as before, but when working the back rail is kept down, as it usually is for gauze work, say about ½ in. lower than the eyes of the mails. Each whip thread has its own slackener, the slackening apparatus consisting of a harness wrought either by the same jacquard that works the figure, or by an extra one, when much pattern is required.

The connections of the needles with the hooks are shown at A, the two bottom needles being connected with the two front and two back hooks, the former for working the gauze and the latter for working the slackeners. This harness is intended for a 1-round 3-gauze, and is

Digitized by Google

mounted on a 10-row machine with an 8-row cylinder on it. It is not necessary that the back harness for slackening should be raised so high as the figuring harness is, and for this reason, as well as that it makes the harness more direct and avoids friction, it is tied to two sets of levers as shown at G and G^1; they are made of brass and are fastened on two rods, one about 4 in. above the other, so as not to come into contact with each other when rising or falling. The points of the levers are fastened to the two back rows of hooks as shown, and the harness is tied to wire hooks on these levers; F is the neck of the harness, D the cumber board, and N the lingoes, which are much heavier than those used for the figuring harness, from 6 to 10 per pound being the weights frequently used, according to the class or weight of the work.

The mails used on the back harness are similar to those used for the doups—that is, such as are shown at No. 1 (Fig. 138); but if these cut with the warp sawing through them, glass mails should be used. L L^1 are two rods or bars which support the warp that is drawn down between them by the slackening harness. The closer these bars are set together the greater will be the amount of slackening given to the warp when the harness is drawn; therefore these bars should be made to slide either way so that the desired slackness is obtained by setting them. About 3 in. to 4 in. apart is a good working width; the tops of the bars should be about 1 in. lower than the mails in the figuring harness, and the tops of the eyes of the mails in the back harness should be 1 in. or 1¼ in. lower than the rods.

Another method of arranging the needles in a jacquard for a gauze mounting is shown in Fig. 139, which is, perhaps, more convenient for the designer, as will afterwards be seen. In this harness there are 10 rows of hooks, the same as before—6 for the figuring harness and 2 for the doup standards. The doup standards are here on the hooks connected with the fourth and eighth needles, and come after the threads that the whip in them twists round, and fall in this position on the design paper, instead of both being at the end of a design —that is, on the seventh and eighth checks. For any order of twisting, the arrangement of the hooks and needles might be made to suit on the same principle.

Digitized by Google

It will be seen that in the leno jacquard, shown in Fig. 138, a number of levers and attachments are required to work the slackening harness. In order to simplify this, Messrs. Devoge & Co. have brought out a leno jacquard with which none of these levers, &c., are required, the slackening harness being tied to the two back rows of hooks in the machine. These two rows of hooks are lifted by a separate griffe, the lift of which is much less than that for working the body hooks of the machine, and which can be varied to suit the amount of slackening required. This machine is shown in Fig. 140, a view of the motion for raising the griffes of both back and body harness being given in Fig. 140 A. *c d* (Fig. 140 A) is the link connection between the bar of the griffe *a a* and the top lever L (Fig. 140), somewhat similar to what is used for an ordinary jacquard. To raise the small griffe at the back, it will be seen that there is a cross lever *e* from the links *d*, *c* to its fulcrum *h* on a bracket *g* attached to the top of the machine. The small or back griffe *b* is connected to this lever by the link *f*. The amount of lift given to the small griffe in proportion to that given to the large one will be as the length of the lever from the stud in *h* to that in *f* is to its length from the stud in *h* to that in *d*. The farther the fulcrum is pushed back in the slot in which it is fastened, the more the back griffe will be raised, the link *f* being always vertical. The back griffe is arranged to commence lifting slightly in advance of the front one, in order to lessen the strain on the doups. The needles are connected with the back and front hooks in this machine similarly to those in Fig. 138.

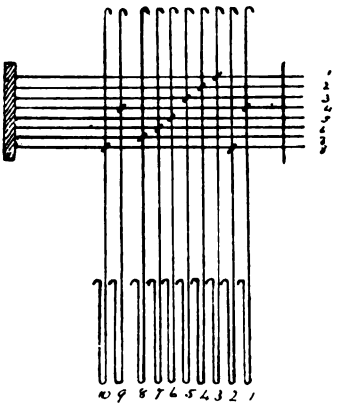


FIG. 139

The draft of a gauze in the harness is just the same as regards the doups as for shaft work ; the crossing may be made from left to right, or the reverse, but the pattern must be made to suit. Some mount the harnesses and paint the patterns from right to left. About Brad-

Digitized by Google

ford this appears to be the usual method, and it does not matter provided the mounting, drawing and designing be kept in accord; but here we shall keep to the same principle as is recognised all through—viz. mounting and designing from left to right, which is the correct method so far as drawing is concerned, and equally convenient in other respects.

To design a pattern for gauze: if it is to be a simple geometrical

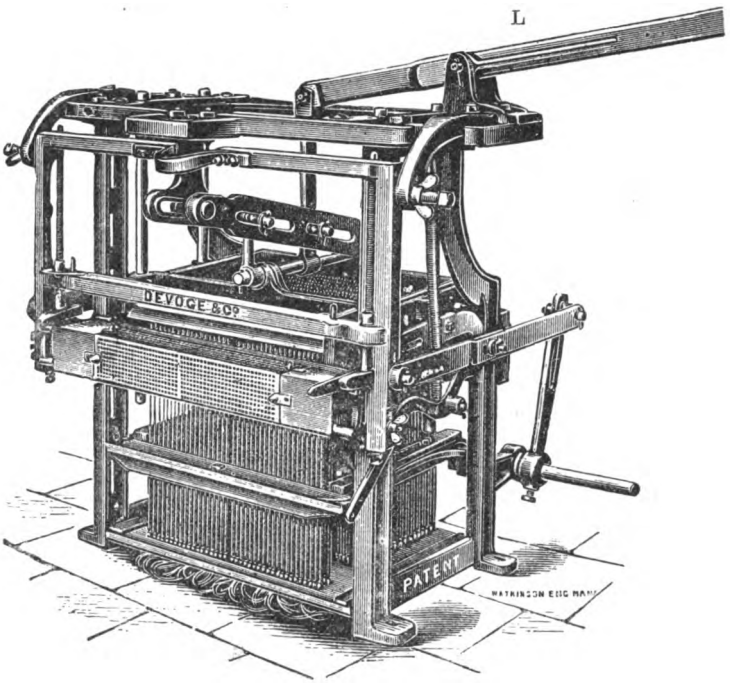


Fig. 140

pattern it may be put direct on the design paper; but if to be a figured pattern, a sketch should be prepared for it in the same manner as for ordinary figured patterns, whether for dress goods, curtains, or any other material. Any desired figuring can be made, providing sufficient space be left between the figures to admit of the open work being made. The figuring should be treated as the ornamentation of a plain or short twill ground figure, which is woven on a gauze ground;

Digitized by Google

the figure may be entirely plain or twill upon a gauze ground, in which case it must be sufficiently plain and solid to be effective, or it may be treated as damask figuring on ornamental patches of plain or twill on a gauze ground; or, again, the gauze may form the figure and the ground be plain or twill. Any variety may be made that ingenuity can suggest, and figuring with extra warp or weft may also be adopted if desired. When about to put the pattern on design paper, it may be observed that out of the 8 rows of needles in the machine only 6

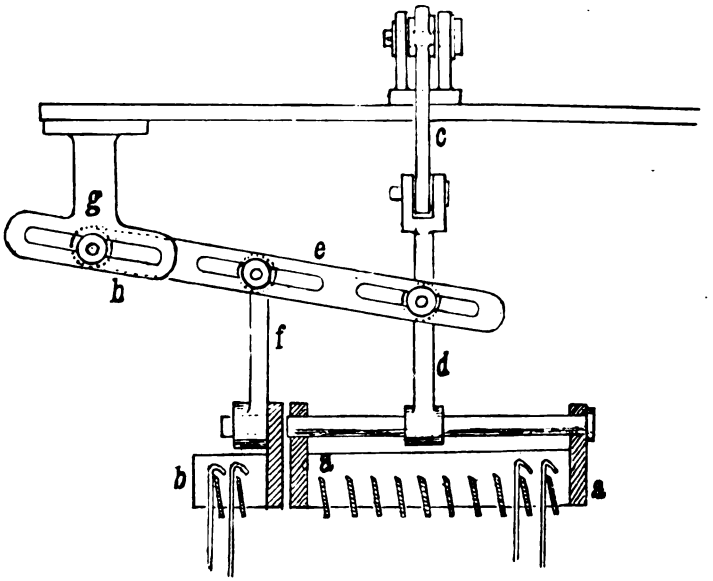


Fig. 140 A

are used for figuring, the other 2 being employed for gauzing; therefore, some means must be devised for getting the pattern on the paper so as to suit this. The simplest plan is that adopted in America —viz. instead of using two rows of hooks along the jacquard for the doup standards, to leave as many hooks at the first of the machine as will correspond with the number of doup standards required for one repeat of the pattern. Suppose for the same ties as those given—100 hooks for the doups and 300 for the figure—then the cords from the first or last 100 hooks would be taken down through the two front

Digitized by Google

rows of the cumber board, and those from the 300 hooks would make up the body of the harness. When mounting in this way, the jacquard would be better turned with the cards hanging over the side of the loom, as for the 'London tie.' This method of mounting enables the pattern to be designed for 300 hooks and painted on the design paper independently of the gauze, which can be filled in afterwards.

Fig. 141 is an example of designing in this manner, using 6 rows of hooks, to suit the gauze. The pattern is put on the rows of designs numbered 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8. No. 3 is for the selvage, and the working of the doups is on Nos. 1 and 2. This is for a 1 round 2

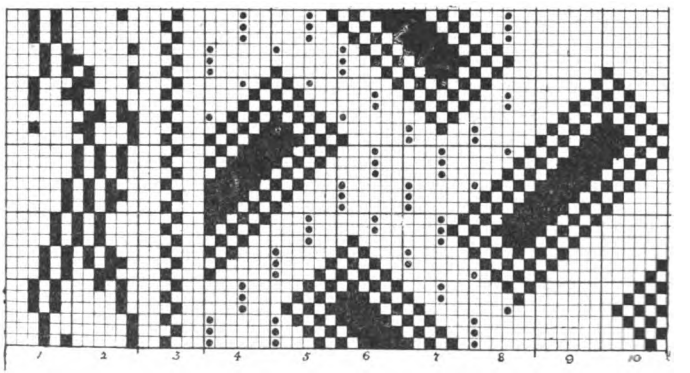


Fig. 141

gauze, 6 checks, or 2 splitfuls of gauze to the design; there would be 10 doups required for the 5 designs in the repeat of the pattern, and for these 10 checks are used of designs Nos. 1 and 2. The rising of the back leash of the harness to form the crossing is shown by the dots marked on the design, and as gauze is formed by raising this leash and the doup alternately, it is only necessary to take each line of the design paper for the doups, and, following up the markings for the back leashes, fill in for the doups to rise when the back leash is sunk for the gauze, taking care to keep clear of the figuring. In making gauze the doup should always rise immediately after the figuring ends, to form the first crossing, and it should also be up immediately before

Digitized by Google

the next portion of the figuring begins, so that in an irregular figured pattern the gauze might frequently require to be broken to effect this, as may be seen in Fig. 141. Take the first upright line of the pattern, design No. 4: the back leash is raised for three, then the doup for three, and the figure follows. Passing on to the tenth line it will be seen that the doup rises for three after the figure, and is also up for three before the next figure begins; but, passing on to designs 7 and 8, it will be seen that the risings of the doup and back leash would not fall in regularly in threes against the figure, as it would be better if they did, and therefore the gauze is broken so as to fall in; but in small patterns of this description, when it is of importance to keep the out-

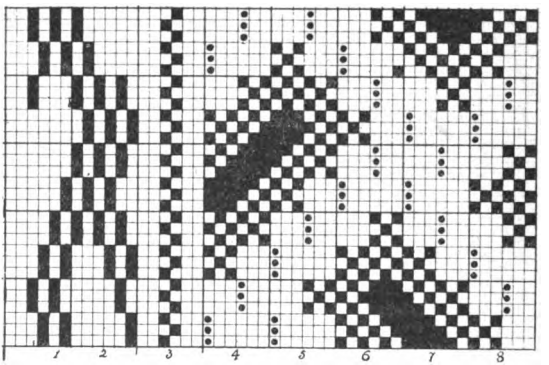


FIG. 142

line of the figure as regular as possible, this can and should be remedied; instead of the outline of the figure running diagonally on the design paper in steps of one check, it should go in steps of as many checks as there are threads to the twist of the gauze in the warp and shots in each twist in the weft. This is shown in Fig. 142, where all the twisting falls in regularly with the figure. This may to a great extent be carried out with irregular figures by the designer exercising a little judgment, and when filling in the gauze make up the plain edging of the figuring to fall in with it—that is, only to break the gauze where there is room to do it effectively, and where there is not, a few dots can be added to the plain. If Figs. 141 and

Digitized by Google

142 be compared, it may be seen how this could be done: examining designs 4 and 8 above the figures, the latter below as well; but Fig. 142 shows the proper method of treating these small geometrical figures. Another point to be observed is whether all the doup leashes are to be raised together to form the gauze, or whether it is to be formed by raising every alternate doup leash and every alternate back leash, as is done in these figures. The latter method is preferable for working, as it makes an even tension on every shed, whereas if one shed is a full cross shed formed by the doups, and the reverse of this an open shed with no crossing, the cross shed will be the tighter, and produce a certain amount of plucking, with a tendency to shire in some patterns; but in case of working dices or any pattern where the top and bottom of the figure extend some distance straight across the design paper, it would be impossible for the first shed of the gauze to be formed by the doup if only every alternate doup leash was raised. Some judgment must therefore be exercised in these matters, and the best effect obtained that will suit circumstances.

Now to put the patterns on design paper to suit the harness when the two front rows of the jacquard are used to work the doups, as in Fig. 138, also when any other rows are used, as in Fig. 139: the simplest way to do this—at least, for those not well accustomed to the work—is to design them on 6-row paper, as Fig. 142, and afterwards transfer them to 8-row paper, leaving the lines for the doups empty, the doup lines being afterwards filled in, as in Figs. 143 and 144. Fig. 144 has the advantage that each splitful of gauze stands alone, whereas when filling in the markings for the doups in Fig. 144, two splitfuls stand together; but a little practice makes one method as simple as the other. The dots represent the markings for the doups, and the shaded squares those for raising the back leashes to form the open shed of the gauze. The transferring of the designs from one sheet of design paper to another is, of course, a matter of trouble and expense, and may be avoided if an experienced card-cutter is to cut the cards. The design need not be transferred, but have the marks for raising the doups put on the same lines of the design paper as those for raising the back leashes for the open shed. This is shown in Fig. 145, the

Digitized by Google

shaded squares being the same as in Figs. 143 and 144; but the dots, instead of being put on lines left for them, as in these figures, are put

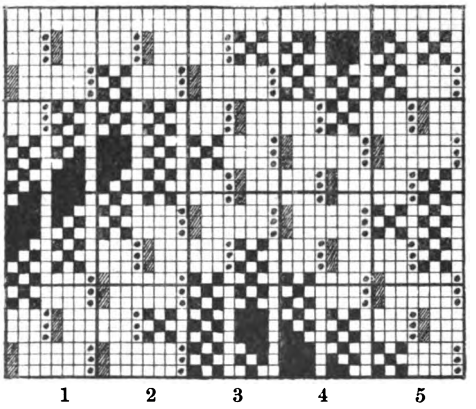


FIG. 143

on the same lines as the shaded squares, and the card-cutter sees to their being cut on the correct lines, as in Figs. 143 and 144. In designing, different colours would be used. The shaded square should

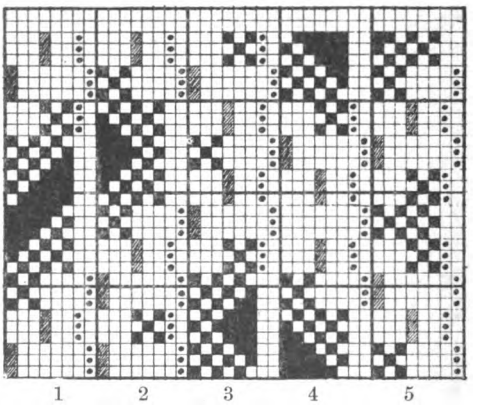


FIG. 144

be the same colour as the figure, as they are to be cut for the lines they are on, but the dots should be of a different colour, to be cut for

Digitized by Google

a different line of the card from that on which they are placed on the design—the dot on the first check of a design being the seventh hole in a row of the card, and that on the third check of a design being the last hole of a row on the card.

Fig. 146 shows a portion of an ornamental pattern as it would be designed for a gauze ground of two threads of warp twisting round two = 4 in the split and 4 picks into each crossing of the gauze. This would require a 10-row machine, eight rows for the figuring harness and two rows for the doup standards. When two threads are twisting round two, it is not necessary to have a doup for each, though it may be desirable; but it suits very well to have both threads drawn through the same doup. It will be necessary to have a stronger doup in this case, but if the warp is very light it would have so much more to do in drawing up the heavy doup than if each thread was drawn through a very light doup that the latter had better be adopted; otherwise a stronger doup, with both threads through one, is simpler. On the pattern, the doups are raised by the dots, which must be cut on the proper line of the card, as before; both lines are dotted as if each thread had its own doup, but only the front dots of each pair are necessary. The shaded squares are for raising the crossing threads with the leashes for the open shed of the gauze. In this pattern it is necessary that the outline of the figure should go in steps of four warp ways, as there are four threads to the twist; but it is not necessary that it should go in steps of four weft ways. A better outline can be given to the figure by not adhering to this, though the perforations in the gauze will be to some extent sacrificed by being irregular; but this would be so in any case in order to raise the doup standard after the figure when the doups and leashes are gauzing alternately; they might be regularly started at one side of the figure, but

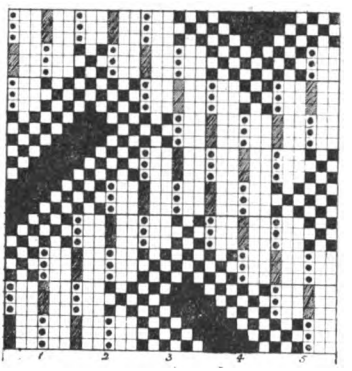


FIG. 145

Digitized by Google

this would probably make them more irregular at the other side. By following round the edges of this figure it will be seen that by a little care no blemish of any consequence need be left, though it will not be so perfect as when calculated to fall in as Fig. 145.

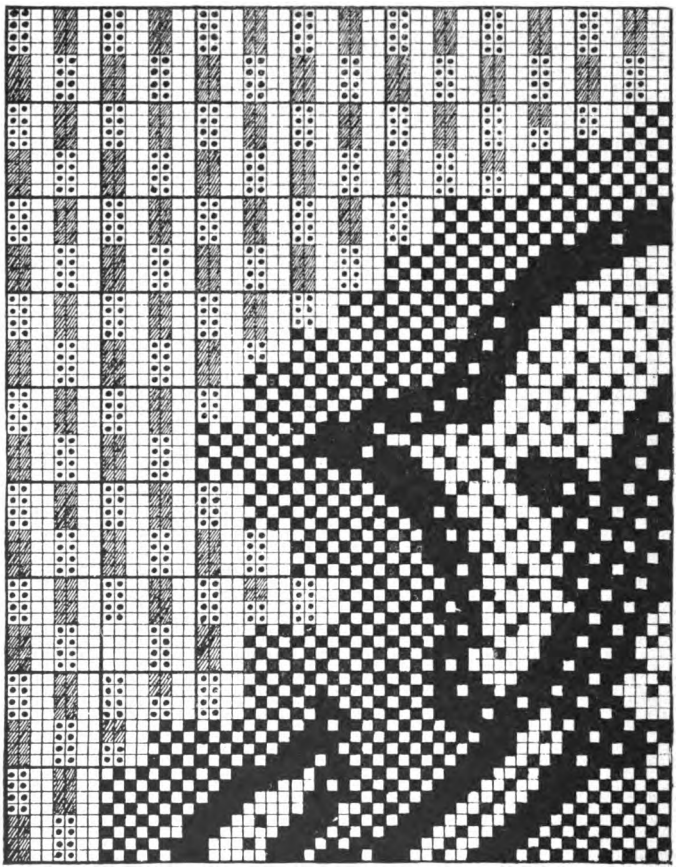


Fig. 146

Any variety of simple gauze texture may be used, as well as the plain and honeycomb gauze, but unless there is plenty of space and the figures are plain and large, no very intricate crossings should be attempted, unless for stripes, as they would probably mar the outline of the figure; but if not, they may be used where suitable.

Digitized by Google

Another important point in designing for gauze is that if the texture of the solid cloth is loose and that of the gauze pretty firmly twisted, the take-up of the warp may be very different when weaving. To avoid this the gauze and figure should be well intermixed, and not be in too great quantities in any one part—in fact, the gauze and plain should be constantly interchanging, and when the pattern is such that this cannot be, the textures must be regulated so that there will be about an equal quantity of warp taken up for each. A little practice will soon show this.

Nothing has been said about the description of jacquard used for working gauze, but the same principle holds good as for working with shafts. A gauze shed is taken to be a plain jacquard lift—that is, the shed formed by the single-lift jacquard raises the yarn and lets it down again before beginning to raise the following shed. This enables the doup and doup yarn to fall into their places before being drawn away to form a following shed. At the same time, we are not limited to a single-lift jacquard. If you have a double-lift jacquard, and want to work a small piece of gauze, do so; but do it correctly, or, in other words, take means to make a good job of it. Before explaining how to do this, it will be well to show where the difficulty exists. In a double-acting machine one griffe is rising when the other is falling, and in plain gauze the doup standard and leash carrying the crossing thread are raised alternately, one shot being thrown into the shed formed by each. Therefore, the same thread is up for every shot, and the thread round which it twists is always down. Now, when one griffe has raised the doup standard and the next one raises the leashes carrying the same threads, both will pass in the centre of the shed, and, as shown in Fig. 147, the crossing thread will be dragging up the lying thread from the position shown by the under dotted line, thereby causing considerable friction on the yarn, which must be detrimental to a fine or weak warp, and is inclined to drag the doup through the eyes of their standards; but as the harness in coming to the centre slackens the warp threads, and also as the slackener begins to act when the harness begins to rise, the threads will be further slackened in those sheds where the doups follow the back leashes, and this reduces the friction. It may, however, be

Digitized by Google

entirely avoided by raising the lying threads to the mid position to meet the descending griffe, and then let down with it. A simple method of doing this is to have the leashes carrying the lying threads through a separate slip of cumber board at the back, and knots on them above it, so that when it is raised all the lying threads will be drawn up with it.

The cumber board can be raised by a cam, or in any other suitable way. (See Journal Weaving for Scotch Carpets.)

These leashes might also be raised by means of a shaft through

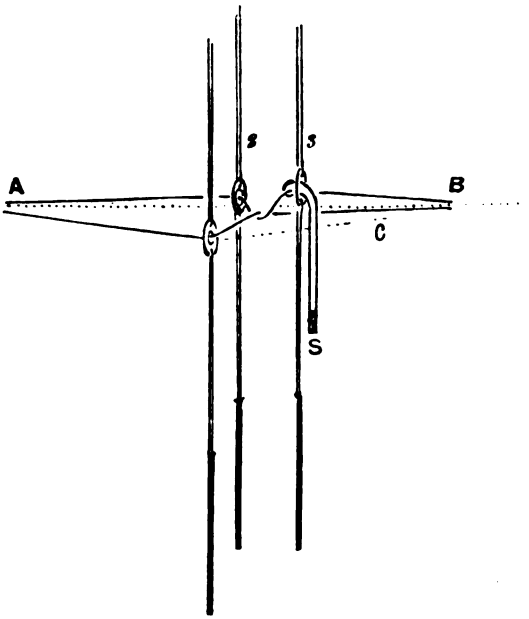


Fig. 147

loops in them, or with bars under the jacquard hooks, in the same way as is done in twilling harnesses (which see), but with a special motion to raise and lower them. In Fig. 147, the dotted line A, B shows the middle position or centre of the traverse of the yarn in shedding.

Although this is the proper means to adopt to work gauze satisfactorily with a double-acting jacquard, or with any double-acting shedding motion, it may be that small portions of gauze, such as a few stripes up a web, are wanted without the trouble of making any special

Digitized by Google

arrangements for it. Good strong twist cotton yarn will work very well, if nicely tempered, in a double-acting machine. The slackeners can be arranged by leaving a few hooks apart to work them with, and cords tied to these hooks and let down at the back, in the same manner as in the gauze harness (Fig. 138), which will do very well. When three or more shots are thrown into each shed of the gauze—that is, between the crossings—there will be much less friction than when the crossing takes place at each shot, as it is only at the crossing the friction takes place.

One source of annoyance in working gauze is the wear on the doups, which requires them to be changed frequently and adds cost to the production. It has often been attempted to work the gauze by other means, and for some classes of work this has proved successful. One of the best arrangements, and one that is largely used, is the gauze reed, which is almost entirely adopted about Glasgow for weaving leno curtains in the power loom; it is also employed for other classes of work, but is limited in its use. It will not supply the place of a gauze harness.

THE GAUZE REED.

This is principally used for working leno curtains or Madras muslins in power looms. The texture of these fabrics is a plain gauze ground, the figure being formed by one or more colours of thick soft weft, thrown in and bound for the figure, but flushed or floated over the ground, to be cut off afterwards. The reed is wrought in conjunction with a harness, the reed forming the ground of the fabric and the harness the figuring. The harness is mounted in the same way as a half-harness, or for half the warp, and the reed does the work of the doups. The gauze reed will suit for gauze up to 55 threads per inch in the reed, but is more used for fabrics ranging from 30 to 50 threads per inch. A portion of the reed is given in Fig. 148, in which it will be seen that it consists of the usual dents set in ribs, and a set of half-dents, perforated at the points which are set into the lower rib of the reed behind the others, and lie about half-way through the splits in a

Digitized by Google

slightly slanting position. The gauze reed works behind the slay and in front of the harness. It should be about $\frac{1}{8}$ in. behind the slay when the cranks are at the back centre, so as to leave sufficient room for clearance between them.

A good method of working the reed is shown in Fig. 149, which is a back view. A is a rocking shaft supported by brackets, as *a*, on the top rail of the loom; B is a lever projecting towards the front of the loom, and the rod *b* from it supports one end of the reed; C is another lever on the shaft A, projecting backwards, and the rod D connects it with the tappet treadles, so that when the treadle is pressed down the reed rises; about $3\frac{1}{2}$ in. is the usual height for it to rise. F is the upper rib of the gauze reed, and F^1 the lower one. G is the yoke of the reed. On the yoke is fastened a bar P P, connected with the strap which passes round the top rib of the reed. I I are two projections on the bar P P, through which the slide rod E E^1 passes and is fastened at the top to a bracket C on the top of the loom, and at the bottom it fits into a socket or stand N fixed to the ground; the reed slides up and down on this rod. H is a tube round the slide rod between the projections I I, and is about $\frac{1}{2}$ in. shorter than the distance between them; to the bottom of this tube is fixed the support H^1 for the dipping rod K, which, when the yarn under it is very tight, can yield $\frac{1}{2}$ in., along with the tube H. The reed is not positive in falling, but when raised by the tappet it falls by its own weight and that of the weight-box L, which slides on the rod E E^1. The weight-box is fastened by a rod M to the crank on the bar which supports the dipping rod, and weights it as well as the reed. Small weights, as R, about $\frac{1}{4}$ lb. weight, can be placed in the weight-box till as much weight as is required is put on. Fig. 151 gives a view of the gauze reed mounting, with the gauze or cross-shed open. Every alternate thread of the warp is drawn into one of the gauze dents, and every other one into the harness, as shown. The harness is levelled 2 in. or $2\frac{1}{2}$ in. below the level of the breast beam; or, having the slay levelled with the race $\frac{1}{2}$ in. below the breast beam when the cranks are at the top centre, push back the slay till the cranks are at the back centre, and place a straight-edge across the race, and the under edge of the

Digitized by Google

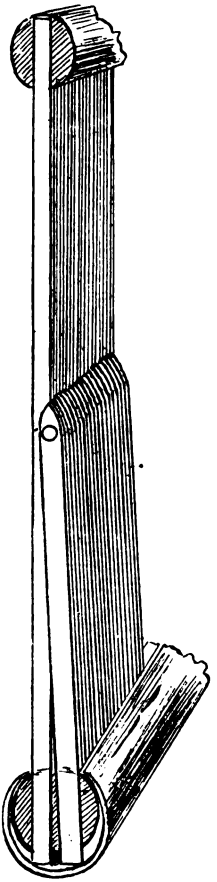


Fig. 148

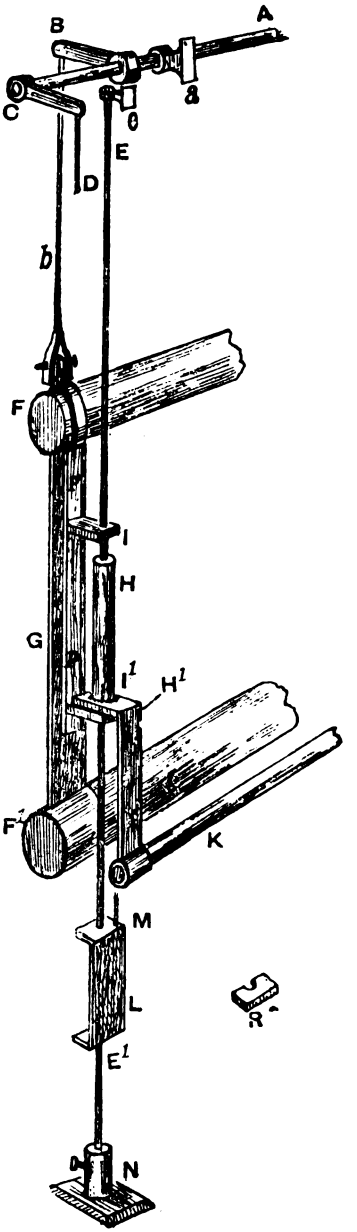


Fig 149

Digitized by Google

straight-edge where it passes the front row of the harness will give the height for the eyes of the mails. The back shell E should be set ½ in. below the level of the breast beam, and should be made to vibrate with a tappet, which should lower it when the gauze shed is opened, and keep it raised for the figuring shots. A shows the position of the weaver's reed, B is the gauze reed, C the dipping rod, D the heck or ravel which is on the harness under the harness reed or cumber board F; the ravel should be about 6 in. above the yarn and 3 in. below the cumber board, making the latter 9 in. or 10 in. above the yarn. The ravel is like a small harness reed with only one rib on it, which is

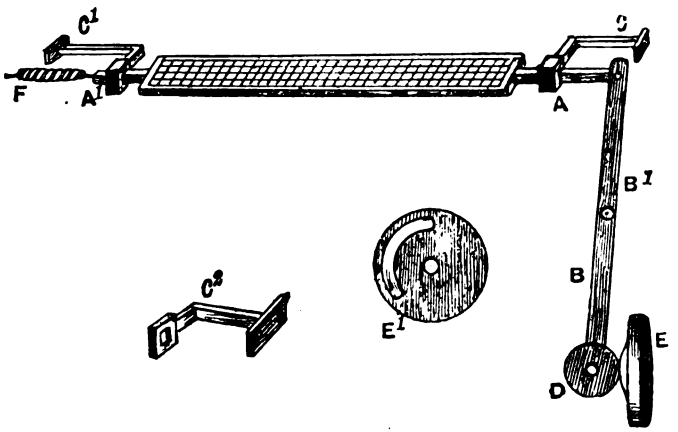


FIG. 150

placed behind the harness, being covered with an iron tube to strengthen it; in front a flat iron rod is fastened above the ends of the dents and serves as the second rib. Three wires are stretched along the ravel to keep the harness steady, in the same way that they are stretched along a harness reed, but three are sufficient, instead of having one for each row of harness. The ravel is shown in full in Fig. 150; it is about 1½ in. deep (or across it), and the cumber board 3 in. deep; it is for the purpose of drawing the yarn in the harness to either side, so that when the gauze reed is rising the half dents may pass to the right and left of the threads in the harness alternately; it is this which gives the gauze twist. Two bars A A^1 (Fig. 150) extend from the ends of the

Digitized by Google

frame of the heck; these slide in brackets C C^1 fastened to the sides of the loom. The lateral motion is given to it by a lever B B^1 with its fulcrum at B^1; this lever has a bowl D on its lower end, which is acted on by a wheel E driven at the proper speed to suit the shedding. E^1 is a face view of this wheel, which has a projection on it for shifting the lever.

Sometimes the motion is imparted to the lever so as to shift the ravel just when it is required—that is, before the gauze reed has risen to form the shed; and sometimes the ravel is shifted a part of the way at each shot of figuring, and has completed its traverse before the gauze reed has risen; this latter makes a more gradual pressure on the harness, and avoids any sudden plucking. When the wheel E acts upon the lever the ravel is drawn to the right, and when released the spring F, fastened from the side of the loom to the end of the ravel, draws it back again. The traverse of the ravel should be about $\frac{3}{4}$ in. C^2 is a separate view of the brackets C and C^1.

Sometimes the heck is on the yarn between the reed and the harness, instead of being on the harness; in this case there must be about 8 in. between the reed and the harness, and the heck or ravel rests about half-way between them. The harness is wrought with a double-lift machine and three tappets. One tappet which is much like a plain wyper tappet, but with less dwell on it, acts on one of the treadles, which is connected by a rod and lever to one of the griffes: this raises the flowering shed, the lift being about $3\frac{1}{2}$ in., and the flowering shot is thrown in as in ordinary work, the sheds being close when the cranks are at the top centre or a little over it. As soon as this shot is thrown in, when the cranks are a little over the back centre, the second griffe is raised by another tappet. As this takes place before the cylinder is in against the needles, all the yarn in the harness is raised; the reason for raising it is to get all the harness yarn clear of the half dents of the reed, so that it can be shifted over them by the ravel. The gauze reed is raised by the third tappet; it begins to rise shortly after the second griffe, or when the cranks are a little past the top centre during the same revolution. The yarn raised by the first griffe begins to fall at the same time that the reed begins to rise;

Digitized by Google

the second griffe raises the bottom yarn till it meets the top yarn of the first shed descending, at which time the ravel should be fully shifted, and the points of the half dents rising should be $\frac{3}{4}$ in. below the harness yarn. As the harness falls and the reed rises, the yarn in the former will pass down at the opposite sides of the half-dents to which it was before being raised; a ground shot is then thrown in (this is the second ground shot), and the reed descends, taking the yarn in it down level with that in the harness. The harness is again raised as before for the next flowering shot.

When the reed is raised to form the shed for the ground shot no card is required to pass over the cylinder of the jacquard, and to prevent one passing the sneck or shears is raised for this shot, so that the cylinder is not turned. The reed must be raised in time to have the shed open for the passage of the shuttle, but keeping it a little late requires less lift to be given to the second shed which is being raised to get the bottom yarn clear of the half dents of the reed. The above description is intended for weaving fabrics with one cover, or one colour of flowering shot, as when the pattern is in white or a single colour, as it often is; but when two or more colours of figuring weft are used, the flowering sheds might be opened with one griffe working the machine single-acting, and constructing and timing the tappets to suit. One tappet would then open two or more sheds for the flowering; the second and third tappets would act on the bottom yarn and reed as before. It is, however, usual to work the machine double-acting, and to construct the tappets to raise the griffes alternately for two covers. No. 1 tappet would raise one griffe, No. 2 tappet would raise the other griffe; then a small wing on No. 1 tappet would lift the bottom yarn, and No. 3 tappet would raise the reed, the sneck being lifted at the last beat of the cylinder to prevent it from turning. For three or more covers the tappets would require to be arranged to suit in a similar manner. Fig. 151 A is a front view of the position of the yarn in the reed when the flowering shed is drawn. Only a portion of the harness would be raised for each shot, as, say, the threads 1, 1, the remainder 2, 2, being sunk. After the flowering shots are thrown in, the bottom yarn in the harness 2, 2 has to be shifted to the other

Digitized by Google

side of the half dents for the gauze shed. It is therefore raised up to meet the threads 1, 1 coming down. All are then shifted together, and when the reed is raised the position of the harness yarn is shown at the crosses; 0000 shows the position it was in at the previous

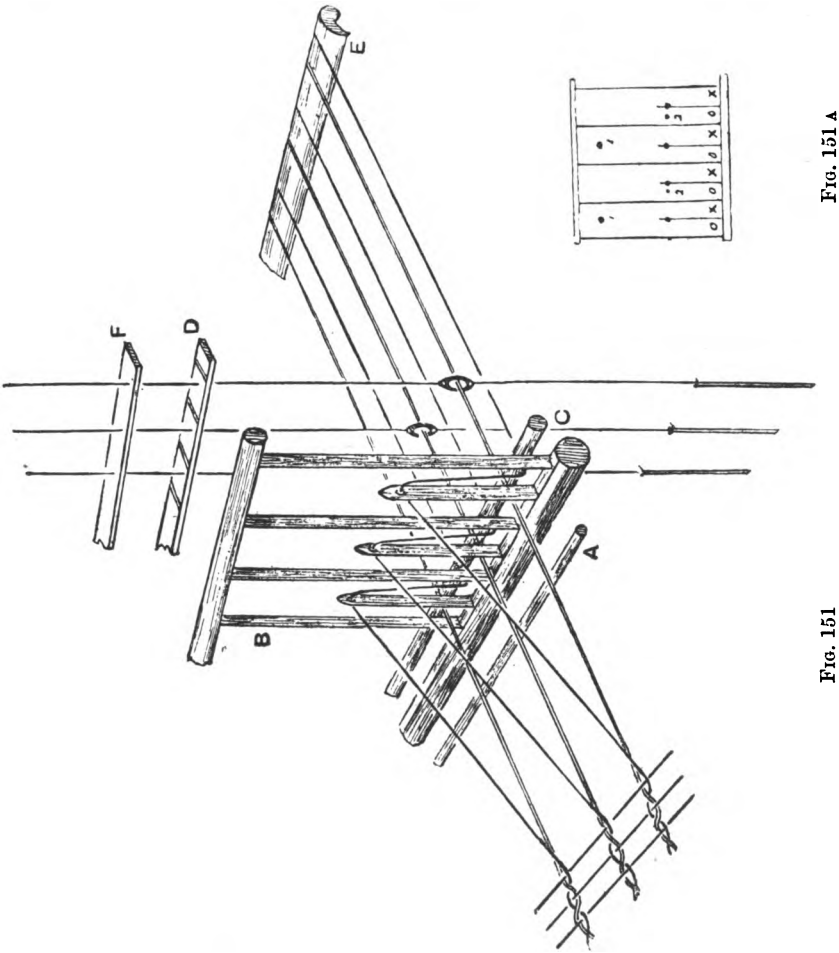


FIG. 151 A

FIG. 151

ground shot. The dots on the half dents show the position of the yarn in them in relation to that in the harness 2, 2 when the reed is at rest, the yarn in both reed and harness being on a level. The reed could be wrought turned upside down with a harness, but all the loose

Digitized by Google

flowering weft would require to be below. In this case there is no necessity for getting the under shed clear of the gauze dents for changing it with the ravel to form the ground shed; but this is an objectionable method of working, particularly with a light pattern, on account of the heavy shed that has to be raised. If the flushed yarn was thrown to the top and the reed turned upside down, the only way to work the heck would be on the harness below the mails, which would require it to be as deep as a reed or cumber board, in order to let the lingoes fall, and this would not answer very well.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER VIII

DOUBLE CLOTH

DOUBLE CLOTH AND QUILTING HARNESSES

A VERY great variety of cloths come under the heading of double cloth; in fact, almost every description of coloured cloth figured in the loom, excepting coloured damasks and the commoner descriptions of dress goods, as well as many uncoloured fabrics, are generally woven more or less on this principle. Quiltings are mostly made on the double-cloth principle, and have nothing to specially distinguish them, except that some makes of cloth appear to be more suitable for goods of this description, though frequently other fabrics of a much more costly nature are woven in the same way; as, for instance, matelasses may be made in the richest silk and worsted for jackets, as well as in coarse cotton for quilts. One of the largest sections of double cloth is carpetings, but these will be described in a separate section.

For figuring double cloths the same principles of the structure of the cloth, &c., hold good as when weaving them plain, or in fancy texture. Any suitable pattern can be put upon any description of double cloth with a full harness mounting mounted in the ordinary manner; but the pattern must be spread over the design paper to suit the description of cloth to be made, which often necessitates its being in a very distorted form, unless it can be arranged in different colours so that the card-cutter can cut several cards from each line of the design paper. For instance, if three colours are required to form one complete weft line, then three lines of the design paper would be taken up with these, unless the colours could be arranged that the three cards could be cut from the one line, as frequently can be done; and the

Digitized by Google

same for the warp when there is a face and back warp, or several colours to be brought up for one warp line. When there are two warp threads, one for the face and one for the back, two hooks of the jacquard are required to weave them, and two lines on the design paper are also required, unless two colours are painted on one line to guide the card-cutter in cutting the cards.

It is a great saving of work to the designer when the pattern has not to be spread over the paper so as to give each line separately, as doing so generally puts the pattern so much out of shape that it requires first to be designed square, or of the proper dimensions, on suitable design paper, and afterwards transferred to the working design for the card-cutter. When goods are being largely made this can often be avoided by special mechanism or mounting, to act instead of the cards, it being then worth the trouble of having a specially prepared mounting, and it is in these cases where double-cloth mountings are used. Perhaps the simplest class of the double-cloth range, though not really a double cloth, is figuring with extra weft. The figuring weft may be thrown in as a spotting intermittently, or may be every alternate shot, a ground shot following each figure shot.

Suppose the cloth to be a plain ground and a twill figure, and that 500 cards would be required to weave the figure if it were plain damask; it is then evident that 1,000 cards would be required if every alternate shot is ground, and the others for figure, and that the 500 plain cards for the ground would be two cards repeated 250 times. Now, instead of this, if we use a double-cylinder jacquard, and put the figuring cards on one side and four plain cards on the other side, we can save 496 cards, as the four cards on the cylinder will work the plain at every alternate shot. Or suppose a single-cylinder machine to be used, then shafts might be put through loops in the harness; or the cumber board might be made in sections, with knots on the harness twines above it, so that in either case the harness could be raised in rows to form plain cloth.

The plain shed could be formed with a tappet and levers, as in journal weaving, and the griffe would only be raised for every figuring shot. Plain cloth might also be wrought with a twilling motion on the machine, such as is used on twilling jacquards. A pair of pressure

Digitized by Google

heddles in front of the harness is a common method of accomplishing this in the hand loom. The harness is drawn for one shot, then let down, and one of the pressure heddles sunk and the other raised for the second shot. For the third shot the harness is again drawn, and for the fourth shot the plain shed is crossed with the heddles. A twill or any figure may be used, as well as a plain ground.

The next step in double cloth is perhaps double-weft-faced cloth—that is, when the surface of the cloth on both sides is formed by weft, the warp lying in the centre, and merely acting as binders to bind the two wefts together. The warp may occasionally be brought to the surface to give additional effect, or to add a third colour; or the body of the weft may be kept on one side, the warp forming the ground on the other side, with a weft figure on it, producing a one-sided cloth.

This class of work is best wrought in a pick-and-pick loom; but a check loom—that is, one with extra boxes at one side only—can frequently be used, and gives much less trouble. For a check loom two fine shots may be used as one, having each pair of cards alike, except at the selvage, and throwing two shots into each shed. Of course this takes twice the number of picks and cards (unless two picks be given to each card), but in some cases, as for borders, this may be an advantage in comparison with working pick-and-pick. Often two succeeding cards of the pattern for the same colour are made to follow each other, as may be found in tapestries, &c., and the weft knocks up into its place without showing any defect; but in a heavy cloth, with a thick or stiff warp, the weft could not be knocked close together on this principle. With a fine binding, warp of cotton and a thicker weft of woollen or worsted, there is no difficulty in this working.

For double-weft-faced patterns the simplest method of designing is to paint the pattern as if for plain damask, and then cut two cards for each line of the design paper, one card being cut exactly the reverse of the other; that is, the cutter cuts the painted squares for one card and the ground squares for the next card. In lacing these two cards are kept together, a ground and a flowering card coming alternately. There is, however, an objection to this method of binding the texture of the cloth, though in many cases it works very well. The objection is that

Digitized by Google

the warp has to be brought from the face of one side through to the face of the other side for the succeeding shot to form the binding, instead of being brought from the centre only to the face as it should be.

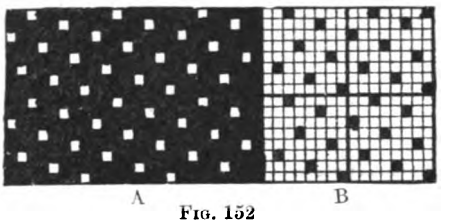


FIG. 152

Fig. 152 shows a portion of a stripe pattern designed to produce 8-end twilled stripes. If a black and a white weft are used pick-and-pick, the white pick coming first, A would be a solid black stripe and B a solid white stripe, or the appearance would be as on the design paper, but much reduced in size. On the under side of the cloth the colours would be reversed.

The first card would be cut as the painting, cutting black, and the second card would be exactly the reverse of this, cutting the white or ground squares on the same line of the design paper. The texture formed on the cloth by these cards is shown in Fig. 153, each line of the design paper representing one card.

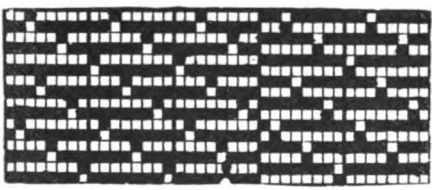


FIG. 153

The correct method of binding is shown in Fig. 154, where it will be observed that the binding of two succeeding weft shots does not fall on the same warp thread, and that the binding dot will be covered by the floats of the preceding and succeeding weft shots when the weft is knocked up close. There are other squares on which the binding dots might be placed as well as those in Fig. 154, one check to the left of where they are being frequently used. A stripe pattern, as Fig. 152, can be put upon design paper with each line representing two

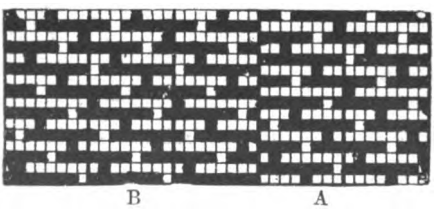


FIG. 154

Digitized by Google

cards, and be twilled to give the texture in Fig. 154, as is shown in Fig. 155.

When cutting this the cutter cuts the shaded squares and black dots for the first card, and for the second card he cuts white and crossed squares on the stripe B, and the solid black squares on the stripe A, which it will be seen is exactly the same as cutting the black for the first two lines of Fig. 154.

When painting the design the shaded squares may be red, the black ones black, the black dots yellow or white, and the crosses green; or any other convenient colours may be adopted. It will be observed that in Figs. 152 and 155, where the raised and sunk twills come together at the junction of the two stripes, there are no binding dots on the two threads lying beside each other. It is not necessary to have any bind-

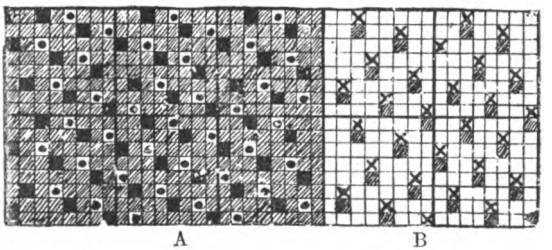


FIG. 155

ing for these threads, as the two wefts crossing bind them sufficiently. Any desired figure may be woven on cloth on this principle, which is a very convenient one, as the colours can be so readily changed, and three or more colours may be used as well as two; but in this case there is generally a right and a wrong side to the cloth, the body of the wefts being at the back and each colour brought through to the face to form the figure. Instead of the body of the weft, or that portion not required for the figure, being at the back of the cloth, it may be in the centre of the warp, and an equally good face made on both sides of the cloth; but this requires more wefting, makes a thicker and harder cloth, and is more expensive and more troublesome to weave.

Warp figuring may be done in exactly the same way as described for weft figuring, and the pattern turned sideways shows how it would

Digitized by Google

be for warp ; the only difference in the work all through is to treat the warp as explained for weft. Of course, in the designing and card-cutting, cutting two cards, one the reverse of the other, from a design painted as if for a damask, would not fall in, but the designs that are wrought fully out on the design paper would be all right. A contrac-

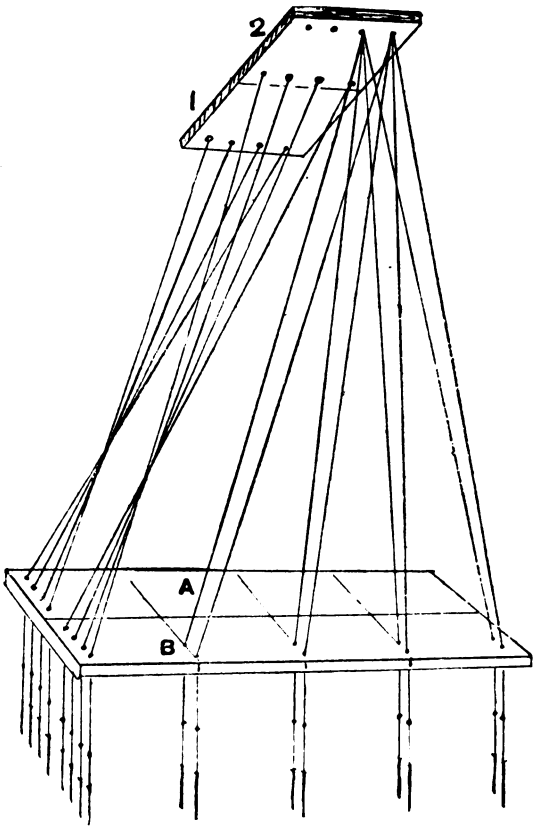


Fig. 156

tion of the work similar to cutting two cards from one line of the design paper would have to be sought for in the mounting in the first place, and in the card-cutting, to suit it.

Suppose the design to be as in Figs. 152 and 155, and to be painted for a 200-jacquard, then to allow for double the quantity of

Digitized by Google

warp a 400-jacquard would be required, the machinery being increased instead of the number of cards. Now, to mount a loom for this class of work the simplest plan is to divide the machine and cumber board into two divisions, one half being used for one warp, which may be called the face warp, and the other half for the other warp, which we may call the back warp. A mounting of this description is shown in Fig. 156, in which the machine is divided into two portions, 1 and 2, with 200 hooks in each ; the cumber board is also divided into two sections, marked A and B. Here only four rows of needles are given, but any number can be used. The cords from the hooks 1 to 200 are taken through the back cumber board A, and those from the hooks 201 to 400 through the front cumber board B.

When entering the yarn, one thread is taken from the back warp and drawn into the first mail of the back harness, and the next thread is taken from the face warp and drawn through the first mail of the front mounting. Now, in reference to the card-cutting : instead of cutting two cards one the reverse of the other, one half of the card must be cut the reverse of the other half, the card-cutter cutting the coloured squares of the design (200 checks) on the first half of the card, and going back again and cutting the blank squares on the second half of the card ; or, when there is any variation in the twill, the pattern for the face may be painted on 200 checks, and that for the back on 200 checks, and when cut on the card the threads of the warp will be raised in proper order by the mounting.

Fig. 157 shows this principle of mounting with a straight or Norwich tie, for which it is not so suitable as for the London tie (Fig. 156) on account of the crossing over of the harness, though it is not very objectionable if a narrow cumber board be used. Instead of having two separate cumber boards with four or eight rows in each, one broad board with eight or sixteen rows is better for the Norwich tie ; then let the first row of the back harness pass down through the back row of the cumber board, and the first row of the front harness pass through the second row of the cumber board, and so on, the back harness filling the odd rows and the front the even rows ; and when drawing in the yarn, taking an end from the back and face warps alternately and drawing

Digitized by Google

them regularly over the harness causes them to fall correctly on their respective mountings. Instead of dividing the card in this way and reducing the machine to half its figuring capacity, a double-cylinder machine might be used, the hooks from one set of needles being used for one mounting, and those from the other set of needles for the other

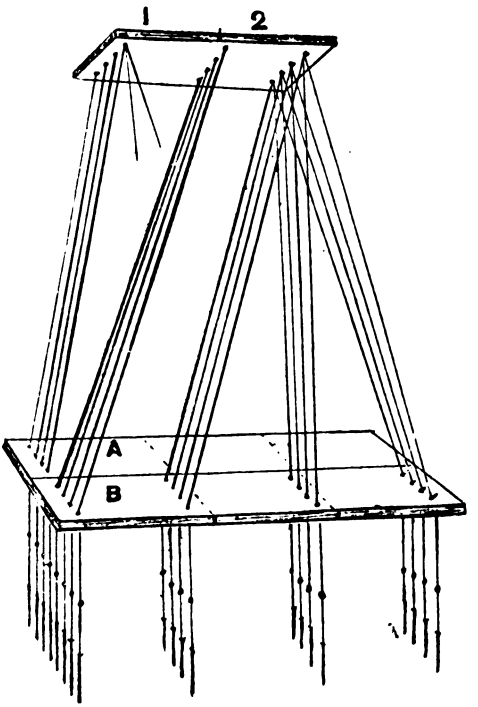


FIG. 157

mounting ; then cutting the face pattern on one set of cards and hanging them on one cylinder, and using a second set of cards containing the back pattern for the other cylinder, should attain the same results, and give double the extent of pattern on the same size of machine, both griffes being raised and sunk together, and both cylinders being also brought in and out together.

A modification of cutting the back and face pattern on its own half of the card is to be found in the double-cloth quilting mounting

Digitized by Google

common about Paisley. These quilts are generally of a plain texture, and the figuring is formed by passing one cloth up and down through the other. The machine generally used is an improvement on the old French draw loom, and is shown in Fig. 158 as it is made, principally of wood, for hand looms. In this sketch the needles and cords in lieu of hooks are not shown, but one row of them is shown in Fig. 159 with only four hooks to each section instead of eight. H and K are the two lifting levers for raising the griffes or trap-boards A and A^1 (Fig. 159). Nos. 1, 2, 3, and 4, and 1*a*, 2*a*, 3*a*, and 4*a* are the cords in lieu of hooks to which the harness is connected. A and A^1 are two per-

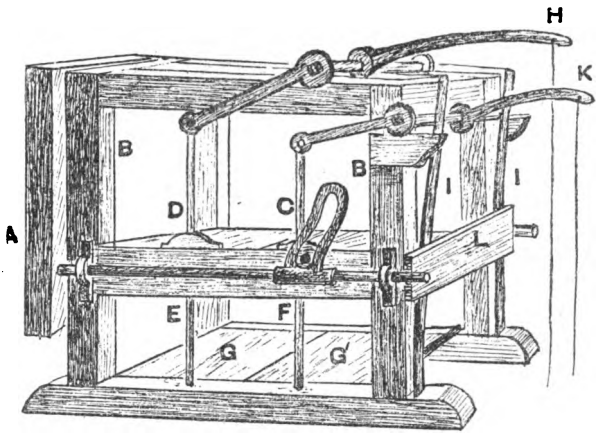


FIG. 158

forated boards with the slotted holes through which the cords pass, turned in the reverse direction in one from what they are in the other. Each needle is connected to two of these cords—one through each hole-board—and the knots on the cords above the holes stand over the slots or saw-cuts of the holes in the board A and over the round or open portion of the holes in the board A^1, clearly shown at F (Fig. 159), so that if the lever H (Fig. 158) were pressed down and the board A raised without any card acting upon the needles, all the harness tied to this portion of the machine would be lifted, and if the board A^1 were raised by the lever K, none of the harness tied to this portion of the machine would be lifted. Now, if a blank card were placed on the

Digitized by Google

cylinder, the reverse of this would be the case, and anything between these two extremes can be got by cutting the cards.

The cylinder is connected with the back griffe only, and remains in for two shots. The griffe A is first raised, and a shot thrown in; it is then lowered, and the griffe A^1 raised, which presses out the cylinder and changes the card; a second shot is thrown in, and so on. E and F (Fig. 158) are two slide rods or spindles to steady the griffes or trap-boards when rising: G and G^1 are bottom hole-boards to steady the cords; L is a clap-board for pressing back the needles instead of springs

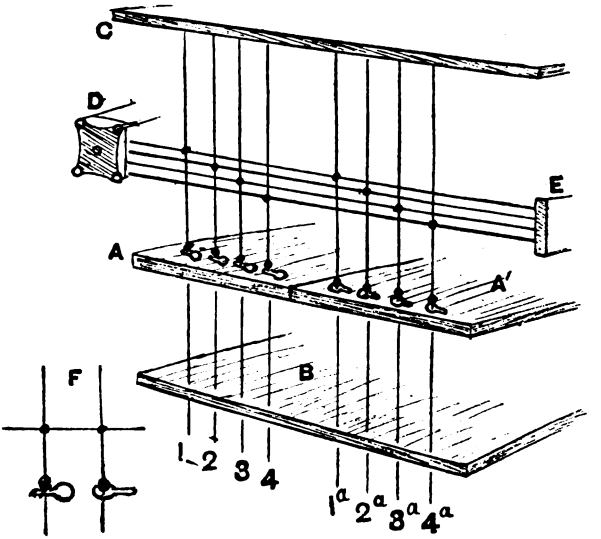


FIG. 159

(it is fastened on springs I I, which hold it out a little from the needles, and these springs are fastened from the top by cords to the cylinder frame, which slides out with the cylinder, and draws in the clap-board, pressing forward all the needles). Now to mount this machine for double cloth. Suppose each frame to have 400 cords, and that there are 400 needles, the same as an ordinary 400-machine. Let the texture of the cloth be plain, and to work this 80 needles may be set off, leaving 320 for figuring. These 80 needles will be connected to 80 upright cords in the trap-board A, and the same in A^1. The harness for

Digitized by Google

the face cloth is tied to the remaining 320 cords in the trap-board A, and that for the back cloth to the 320 cords in the trap-board A^1, and this portion of the harness works the figuring only without the texture. The texture is wrought by the 80 cords in each board connected to the first 80 needles. To each of these upright cords a number of harness twines are tied, one of which is fastened to each twine of the harness from the 320 cords, just above the cumber board ; but in doing so the twines from the 80 hooks on the cords in the trap-board A must be connected with the twines of the harness from the trap-board A^1, and the reverse for the other set. In this way all the back harness could be raised with either griffe, and the same with the front harness. Either griffe could raise one warp with the plain harness, and the other with the figuring harness. When cutting the cards plain texture is cut on each card for the first 80 needles, and the figuring portion without any texture is cut on the remainder of the card. The 80 cords open the texture or plain shed, and the 320 cords keep the two warps in their proper places, raising what should be above the weft, and leaving down what should be below it for each shot according to the pattern. In these mountings the cards hang over the side of the loom.

The same method of working can be applied to a jacquard with upright hooks, by having the heads of the hooks for each machine or set turned in opposite directions, as shown in Fig. 160. One set of hooks stand with their heads over the knives in the usual way, as at A, and the others require to be pushed back by the card to bring them over the knives, as shown at B, so that pushing any needle back pushes the front hook connected with it off the knife and the back one over the knife. The mounting may be made up as before, or a twill or any smaller texture may be used instead of plain ; or a different texture may be made on face and back cloths.

This description of cloth is much used for other makes of goods as well as quilts. Kidderminster or Scotch carpets are woven on the same principle, and curtains, cotton vestings, &c., are frequently woven with the same texture. It can always be woven with a full harness mounting by preparing the design to suit it. Fig. 161 is a pattern for

Digitized by Google

a diagonal figure in plain texture for this class of work. The black squares represent the face warp raised to the face of the cloth, and the shaded squares represent the back warp raised to the face also. The blank squares represent weft on the face of the cloth. This would give

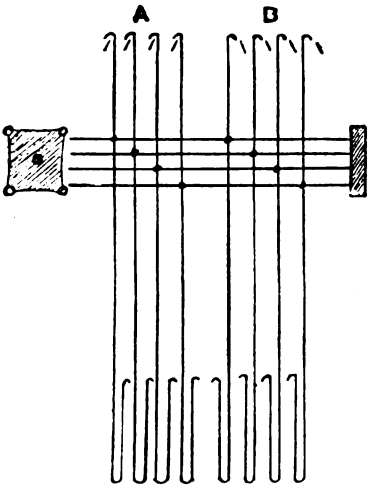


Fig. 160

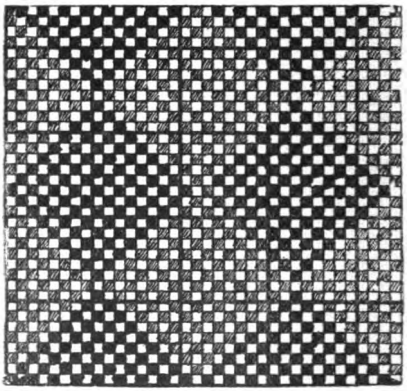


Fig. 161

a magnified view of the face of the cloth if it were woven with a black face warp, a grey back warp, and a white or light-coloured weft. If each warp had a weft of its own colour the effect would be as shown in Fig. 162, which would be the way the pattern would be painted on the design paper if intended for weaving on looms specially mounted, or with special machines as described; but if a full harness is to be used, then the pattern must be spread over the design paper so as to give a line of the paper for each thread of warp and pick of weft. Fig. 163 is the same pattern arranged in this way. The black and grey squares represent the face and back warp raised for the pattern. The crosses show where the back warp is raised for the texture of the back cloth at the back of the face cloth, and the dots represent the face warp raised for the texture where the face cloth

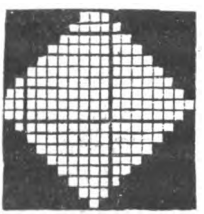


Fig. 162

Digitized by Google

goes behind the back cloth, or where the back cloth comes to the face. Of course, on a cloth of this kind the warps are alike, face and back.

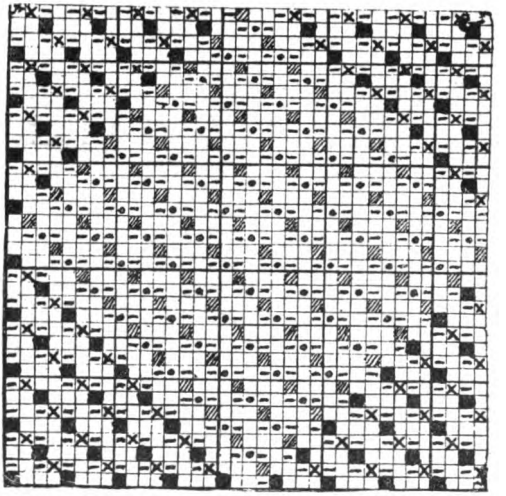


Fig. 163

It will be understood that, when the threads of the back cloth are being raised to form a shed, all the face threads of the corresponding portions must also be raised to clear them out of the way of the shuttle, and the raising marks for these are the short dashes on the painting. Fig. 164 is the same pattern arranged for two threads face to one of back, which admits of a heavy backing with a fine face, and is suitable for quilts, &c. The markings are similar to those in Fig. 163, but the number of threads is not such as to admit of the plain texture repeating on the back cloth. It is therefore broken round the edges of the figure where it would least show.

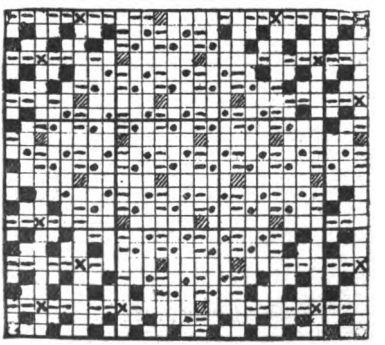


Fig. 164

Instead of having the extra harness for working the plain texture

Digitized by Google

as explained in connection with the quilt harness, Fig. 159, it might be done with four leaves of long-eyed heddles in front of the harness, or by having shafts through loops in the harness to act as heddles, or by having the cumber board divided into strips for each row of the harness, and knots on the harness twines above them, so that raising any strip will raise a row of the harness, or the machine may act as a twilling machine to work the texture.

A Marseilles quilt is a double cloth with a fine face and a coarse back, both stitched together round the edges of the pattern, and a wadding shot thrown in between them, which causes the pattern to be embossed or to rise up full and rich. The face is usually a plain texture, and the back the same; but the face has double the number of threads in it that the back has, and the yarn for the face is proportionately finer than that for the back. Two picks of fine and two of coarse weft are thrown in alternately—one pick of the fine goes into the face cloth only, and the other, also a face pick, stitches the face to the back. One of the coarse picks is thrown in between the two fabrics, and is called the wadding, and the other pick goes into the back cloth. In these fabrics a very fine effect can be produced by covering the ground with a small bird-eye pattern, stitching the back and front closely together, then having a bold floral pattern for the figuring, which, being only bound round the edges of the pattern and along veins, &c., is comparatively loose and produces a rich embossed effect. These fabrics may be woven with a twilled as well as a plain ground.

Matelasses are a similar description of fabric, but usually more ornamented, the face fabric being any fancy texture. When used for ladies' jackets or mantles they are made of fine worsted or silk for the face, with perhaps a woollen back and a woollen or cotton wadding. The binding of the face and back cloths together takes place round the edges of the figure, and in any other portion, such as veins of leaves, &c., that may be thought desirable. The binding may be effected either by leaving down a portion of the face warp when the back pick is being thrown in, or by raising a portion of the back warp when the face pick is being thrown in, this depending upon the pattern and the counts of yarn used. The finer threads should be used for stitching,

Digitized by Google

so as not to injure the face by bringing any coarse threads through to it. If the face of the cloth is a warp pattern it will be best to stitch by raising a back thread over a face pick, but if the face is a weft pattern then sinking the face warp for the back picks will probably be more satisfactory. If the cloth is made, as is frequently done, with a mohair or lustre worsted warp face with a cotton weft, and a cotton warp back with a woollen weft, and a woollen wadding, then the binding would be effected by raising some of the back warp thread over the face picks. One pick (woollen) for wadding would be thrown into a shed formed by raising all the face warp; the next pick would be for the back, thrown into a shed formed by raising all the face warp and that portion of the back warp required to form the texture of the back cloth; the third pick would be for the face, thrown into a shed formed by raising the portion of face warp required for the pattern, as well as those ends of the back warp that are to form the stitchings.

Quiltings.—A great variety of the cheaper description of quiltings, toilet covers, &c., consist of a face cloth with an additional thick weft. This thick weft is woven into the ground, which may be a twill, mat, &c., but flushed loosely at the back of the figure, which is a plain texture. Sometimes there is a small quantity of thin warp for binding the thick weft loosely at the back of the figure, making a double cloth in this portion, but all working together for the ground, making it a solid cloth.

Of more recent origin are the satin quilts made by Messrs. Barlow and Jones, of Bolton, and some other firms. They consist of two plain cloths, intimately bound together; one cloth has a fine warp and a very coarse weft, and the other has a fine weft and a coarser warp. When binding, the fine warp is made to catch on the fine weft, and the thick warp and weft cover the bindings. Suppose the fine warp to be white and the thicker warp to be blue, and let the warping be two threads blue and one white. Let the white warp be wefted with a thick twist weft—say four times as thick as the warp—and this coarse weft will form the figure. Let the blue warp be wefted with a blue weft perhaps double the count of its warp, and in binding this weft

Digitized by Google

catches on the fine white warp. The thick white weft, which is fully double the thickness of the thick warp, effectually covers the tie, and when the yarns are properly proportioned the pattern stands out, producing a clear stamped or embossed effect. These cloths may be made with a twilled ground, and either all white or white and coloured. They are a good firm fabric and wear well, but are liable to have a coarser appearance after being washed. (See also Terry-Pile Quilts.)

Woollens and Worsteds.—Weaving woollen and worsted cloths in the jacquard loom is merely an extension of the patterns produced with shaft mountings, or sometimes the same patterns are woven on small jacquards by those who prefer the jacquard to working a larger number of healds when the cloth is not so heavy as to require the latter to be used, healds as a rule making a firmer and heavier cloth than a jacquard will. Light worsted goods for dress fabrics, &c., are figured like damask, or as double weft or double warp-faced cloths, or may be as double cloths.

Curtains and Tapestries.—These, though sometimes of damask, are usually made on some principle of double cloth, as indeed all cloths must be when a rich brilliant effect of colours is required. One of the simplest methods of making these fabrics, and which produces a very good effect, is to employ a fine binding warp of twist cotton and produce the pattern on it with two, three, or more coloured wefts of worsted, mohair, or silk—say a spun silk ground weft and a mohair or fine worsted figure. A small portion of a diamond pattern, greatly reduced for want of space, is given in Fig. 165. It is intended for three colours of weft—one for the ground and two for the figure. The ground weft might be black or gold, and the figure wefts olive green and dull red, or claret, the warp to be black or a deep navy blue.

For this pattern three cards must be cut from each line of the design paper—one for the ground weft and one for each colour of the figure. The design is painted in various colours, which are here represented by different markings on the squares. Let the black squares represent the olive and the dotted squares the red of the figure. The white squares represent the ground weft, and the shaded

Digitized by Google

squares on it are for binding the face weft down, while the crosses are for binding up the weft at the back. The cutting of the cards is as follows:—For the ground shuttle cut all the shaded, black, and dotted squares—that is, the shaded squares on the ground and all the figure. For the first figure shuttle (olive) cut all the ground except the crosses (that is, the white and shaded squares) and the dotted squares of the figure. For the second figure shuttle (red) cut all the

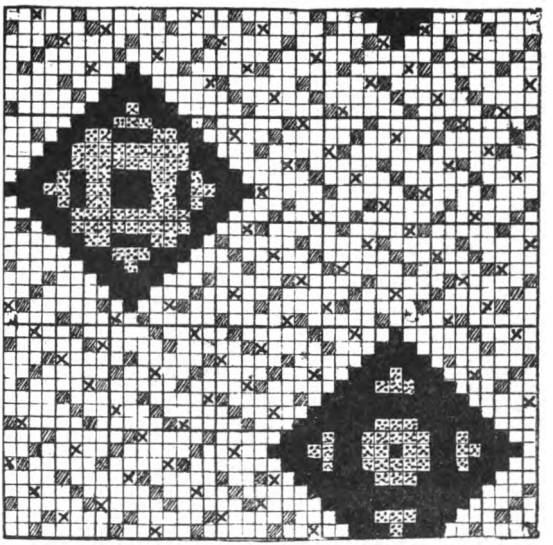


Fig. 165

ground except the crosses, as before, and the black squares of the figure.

In this example the figure is so small as not to require binding dots over it, but for a large figure the ground weft threads would require to be bound up at the back of the figure in the same way that the figure threads are bound up at the back of the ground in the design given. The figure wefts might also require to be bound at both face and back. On the design these binding marks would be dotted over the figure in the same way as they are dotted over the ground on the design given, using any suitable texture that may be desired.

Digitized by Google

To make the cutting clear, five lines of the pattern (Fig. 165) are put upon design paper in Fig. 165 A, as they would be cut on the cards, beginning with the ground weft, olive and red following, in all making 15 lines or 15 cards. This cutting would make the upper side of the cloth in the loom the right side or face; but it may, in some cases, be desirable to weave the cloth with the face down to avoid heavy lifts in the harness. This pattern would suit for a warp of about 50 threads of warp per inch, and say 60 to 80 shots per inch of each colour.

For the convenience of the designer and card-cutter, a much better plan of working this class of fabric is to have an additional binding warp, which may be in heddles or in a front row of the harness. This warp can work plain twill or satin as required, and, being light and openly set, can bind the back weft up and the face weft down, or the

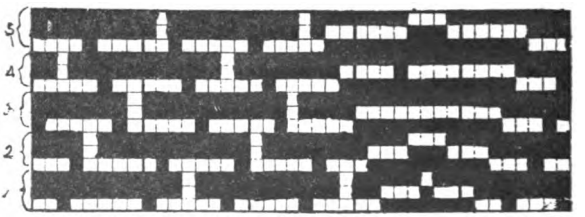


FIG. 165 A

face may be bound by the warp in the harness and the back bound by the binding weft; but in this case there should be a fine thread of weft thrown in every fourth pick, which should pass over the warp in the harness, or a portion of it, and under that in the heddles, so as to bind both warps together. In this case the twilling dots on the design are omitted, which simplifies the cutting and designing of the pattern. If the face is to be twilled with the harness warp, the dots for binding must, of course, be put on the design, or the figure only may be twilled on the design, and let the ground be bound by the binders. Shafts mounted in this way may be wrought from tappets if the loom is mounted with them, or may be wrought by strong hooks at each side of the jacquard and sunk with springs. The principle of working fabrics of this description has been given in detail, as from it many other

Digitized by Google

varieties can be wrought out, and any number of shuttles used to suit the colours wanted.

Figuring with two warps and one weft is a common method of working, and gives three colours on the face of the cloth. An extra warp of fine yarn may be used for binding the wefts, admitting of the coloured weft being more used for figuring. Extra warps cannot be used to so great an extent as extra wefts, as they crowd up the reed and prevent proper shedding, particularly when soft or hairy yarns are used; but when properly suited to the reed they make a firmer and more regular cloth than a weft cloth, and on account of less picking the weaver gets over the work much faster. Two warps, each having its own weft, are a good method of figuring, but unless for goods with a large number of threads and picks per inch, so that fine yarn can be used, it makes a heavy cloth. Two warps and two wefts, all of different colours, with a fine binding warp in addition, to admit of the colours of the wefts being kept comparatively pure, gives a still richer effect. In this case the binding warp may be of fine black cotton, the two figure warps of thicker cotton, and two threads drawn into each mail; the colours may be, say, dark blue and dark citrine, or clear sage. The wefts are soft wool or worsted, say light gold and deep dull red. In this method of weaving, pure red and pure gold can be got from the wefts, as the black binders show but little. Pure blue and pure citrine can be got in small quantities by floating the warps, and an admixture of the warps and wefts can be got in any place desired.

A very handsome curtain fabric can be made as follows:—There are 120 to 140 threads of warp per inch; every second or every fourth thread of the warp is used for binding the ground, which may be a plain texture or a three-shaft twill. The binders may be an extra warp, wrought with heddles, forming plain all over the cloth, or may be in the harness and be portion of the ordinary warp working plain for the ground, but rising to assist in forming the figure, which may be bound as desired, say 8- or 10-end satin. The warp is of fine silk yarn loosely twisted, and may be one or more ply, of a rich olive-green or deep scarlet colour. There are two wefts, one a rich silk, say a golden colour, of twist yarn; the other is a backing weft of the same colour

Digitized by Google

as the warp, and of cotton yarn, about the same thickness as the silk weft. There are from 50 to 60 threads of weft per inch of each colour. The gold weft forms the ground of the pattern, and the warp the figure, which is bound with an 8-end satin binding. The cotton weft goes to the back when the silk weft is on the face, forming the ground of the pattern, the warp lying between them ; but when the warp is on the face for figuring, the gold weft goes to the back and the cotton weft lies under the warp face, binding it and giving an embossed effect to the figure. The gold weft is bound up by sinking a portion of the warp. The ground may be formed with the warp, and the figure with the weft, if desired, producing a sunk figure on a raised ground ; but this is just a reversal of the process, or making the ground in this case as the figure in the previous case. This makes a light, close, and very rich fabric.

Figured Poplins are among the richest description of curtain fabrics ; they may be made of all silk, or silk and fine wool, the latter forming the weft. The ground is a clean, sharp cord running across the cloth, and the figure is formed by flushing the warp over the cords, binding it with a long twill or satin binding. The weft may also be used for figuring ; but in this case it should be a silk weft put in for the purpose of figuring.

Two portions of patterns of good makes of figured poplins or repps are given in Figs. 166 and 167. Fig. 166 is warped two threads of rich crimson silk and one thread of rich golden yellow silk, 180 threads per inch. The weft is pick-and-pick, 50 picks per inch, one thread a round, firm cord of firmly twisted worsted of the same colour as the warp, and the other yellow silk, the same as the warp. This thread passes over the crimson warp and under the yellow, the crimson cord reversing this, thus producing a very fine yellow line between each pair of cords. The method of forming the figure can easily be seen from the pattern. Instead of a thick cord being put in for the weft to form the rib, several fine shots could be thrown in as one, as in repp figuring, and these threads could be brought out for figuring as well as the warp ; but they would in this case require to be of silk, which would make the cloth very expensive.

Digitized by Google

Fig. 167 makes a very rich and handsome fabric. It is warped all a rich purplish-brown silk, 180 threads per inch. There are four weft picks in the pattern. The first is a clear olive-green silk about double the thickness of the warp silk, the second shot is a round, firmly twisted worsted cord of the same colour as the warp, the third is the same as the first, and the fourth is silk of the same colour as the warp. There are 100 picks per inch, but the two green silks go along with the cord to form the complete cord or ridge. These silk picks can be brought out to the surface for figuring, as shown by the shaded squares in the pattern, which are not cut on the cards. The black squares are

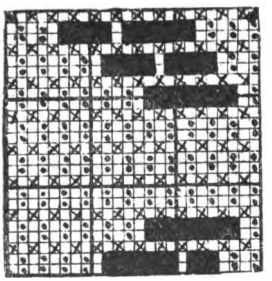


Fig. 166

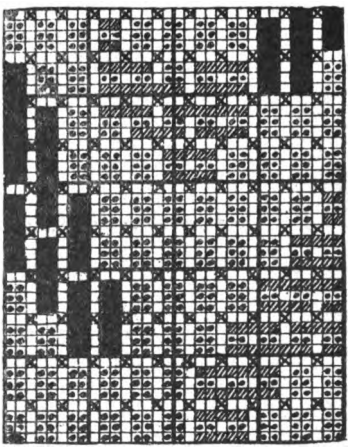


Fig. 167

the warp figuring, the dots the warp raised for the ground, and the crosses the warp of the binding threads raised. These binding threads rise over the brown silk pick, and are similar to the yellow warp in the previous pattern.

For richer fabrics than these we must go to pile work, which is, perhaps, the most exquisite production of the loom. Curtains or hangings can be made extremely rich by figuring a rich corded silk ground with a pile of different lengths and colours. The long pile can be cut to form a plush or velvet pile, and the shorter pile may be left uncut to form a looped or terry pile. By a judicious arrangement of colours and length of pile, fabrics of extreme beauty can be made (see

Digitized by Google

Pile Work). For curtains of a heavy description chenille is much used, and makes a very rich, warm-looking fabric; but it is too heavy and of too coarse a nature for small rooms unless they are very well lighted. It is very suitable for screens, or curtains dividing two portions of a room (see Chenille).

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER IX

TAPESTRY AND PILE WORK

Tapestry.—What are generally known in trade as tapestries, are figured fabrics for curtains, hangings, &c., not damask, which is distinct, being woven with only one warp and weft. Real tapestry is a hand-made fabric of very ancient origin, being in use since the days of the ancient Egyptians, who wove or worked it in a manner very similar to that employed at the present time. It does not belong to 'jacquard weaving,' but being the first in point of the excellence of its patterns amongst figured fabrics, a short description of it may not be out of place. Henry VIII. tried to establish tapestry weaving in this country, but failed, but James I. had a flourishing factory at Mortlake. Tapestry weaving appears to have been introduced into France about the ninth century. The Flemish were celebrated for it from the twelfth century. Arras work surpassed all the others, and tapestry was commonly known as arras work. The sixteenth century gave a new impulse to the trade in France. Francis I. founded the manufactory of Fontainebleau, and Henry IV. re-established tapestry making in Paris in the years 1595 to 1606. About the year 1666 Louis XIV. bought the Gobelins Works (which take their name from the original owners, a rich family of wool dyers), and established the Royal Gobelins Tapestry Manufactory, which is now one of the sights of Paris.

There were two methods of working tapestries—one known as 'basse lisse,' or low warp, the threads of warp being placed in a horizontal position in the loom; the other was called 'haute lisse,' or high warp, as the threads of warp were placed in an upright or vertical position. It is the latter method of working that is now adopted.

The loom consists of an upright frame of wood of a size to suit the

Digitized by Google

cloth to be made. There is a strong roller at the top, which acts as a warp beam, and another at the bottom for the cloth beam. Both these rollers have ratchet wheels on one end, and are held with pawls or catches so as to allow the warp to be wound off and the cloth to be wound up when required, and then hold the stretch of warp steady to be woven. The warp is coarse, but a clean, regular thread of twist, cotton, or linen, about 12 to 18 threads per inch (more or less, as desired,) and of such a thickness that the spaces between the threads are somewhat less than the diameter of the threads. The weft is usually of fine wool but a fairly thick thread, say 4's or 6's worsted. This is generally used alone, of whatever shade of colour is required, and there is no end to the shades used; but in some places, to give brilliancy and richness of effect, silk is used along with the wool, and sometimes tinsel or gold cord. These are put in separate threads along with the woollen or worsted weft. The silk is much finer than the worsted, say about equal to 12's or 16's cotton, and, of course, can be regulated to give the effect required. The gold is sufficient to give sparkle to the portion it is employed in.

After leaving the warp beam the warp is divided by two thick glass lease rods. Then every alternate thread, those to the front of the frame, is drawn through a doup of a half-leaf of heddles which is fixed in a horizontal position above the weaver's head. This enables a plain shed to be formed, as the thick lease rod divides the threads and forms one shed. Then, when the weaver, sitting at the back of the loom, draws back the half-leaf of heddles, all the front threads or any portion of them can be drawn back past the back set, and form a cross shed. As the doups of the heddles are long and strong, the weaver can take any number of them he requires and draw the front warp back; then putting his fingers into the shed thus formed, clear it down to the fell of the cloth and insert his bobbin.

The pattern is painted on design paper, shaded in the way it is to appear on the cloth, and the weaver must have a bobbin of weft to suit each tint or shade of colour on the design. The outline of the pattern is traced on the warp to guide the weaver, and the painted pattern is fastened up either before him or to one side of him, so as to be con-

Digitized by Google

venient to read the stitches off it. When ready for work he looks at the pattern and finds perhaps 20 stitches of blue; then he selects a bobbin of the correct shade and passes it through the open shed of the warp round 10 threads; then he draws the 10 doups of the heddles that are round the 10 threads intermediate with and in front of these, pulling them back through the others and forming a cross shed. The same bobbin is now passed through this shed, and the weft pressed down with a pin or comb, both of which articles the weaver uses for straightening and beating up the weft. This covers 20 threads of warp with blue weft. The texture of the cloth is plain throughout, the weft being bent round the warp and pressed close together, forming a rib. Now, instead of completing this weft line all along the cloth, as is usual in coloured weaving, the weaver goes on working with the bobbin he has taken up, following the colouring on the pattern, and may change his bobbin when required for a new shade or colour, and go on working this portion for some distance upwards, and then begin an adjoining portion and work it up in the same way. This will come all right when the outlines of the portion he is working run obliquely; but if they should run upright for any distance in the same direction as the warp, it is plain there would be two selvages coming together without any connection between these portions of the cloth, as shown in Fig. 168. When the pattern runs in a diagonal direction, the weft threads passing across from one warp thread to the next one make a sufficient binding or connecting link between the two colours, as may be seen at the upper portion of this figure, which would be quite sufficiently connected when it is considered that the weft threads are pressed so closely together as to entirely cover the warp. To remedy the objection of a slit or division between the two portions of

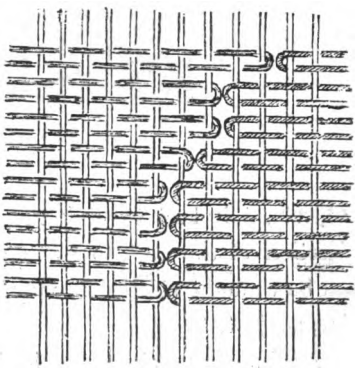


Fig. 168

Digitized by Google

a pattern in the case of a vertical line, it is customary to tack the bobbin of one colour of weft round the first warp thread of the adjoining colour, at intervals of, say $\frac{3}{16}$ in. This produces a toothed appearance, but is not very remarkable. The only other remedy would be to link the two wefts on each other occasionally. In many of the old tapestries it may be seen that this was neglected, even when the distance was as much as 3 in. or 4 in. Sometimes they were stitched afterwards in these places with a needle and thread. When there are many long straight lines running in one direction, as in architectural

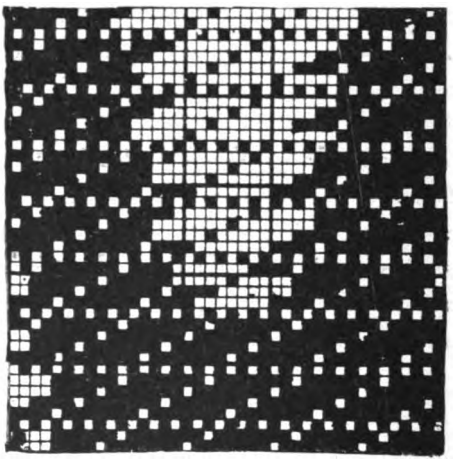


Fig. 169

subjects, it is best to work the pattern so that these will run in the direction of the weft, to avoid any joining being required. Patterns can be wrought sideways or upright on the cloth as desired to suit the size, subject, &c.

As the weaver sits at the back of his frame or loom when working, he has to come round occasionally to examine the face of his work. Sometimes he keeps a looking-glass in front to show him how he is getting on. He has also a rough pattern on the back of the cloth similar to that on the front, as the nature of the weave must give him the same on both sides were it not for the loose ends at each change

Digitized by Google

of bobbin, which have to be tacked up at the back. Tapestry weaving is a very tedious process of working, but in skilful hands very beautiful, and artistic results can be produced.

Figured Pile Fabrics.—When we come to pile work we have a great scope for the ornamentation of fabrics, but the nature of the work is such that it is only suited to heavy or moderately heavy cloth, and a large number of either threads or picks per inch are required.

Forming stripes of plain or figured pile alternately with twilled or figured stripes can easily be accomplished with either a weft or warp pile, but when we come to figure indiscriminately over the cloth there is more trouble. For a length of time there was a difficulty in cutting weft-pile figured fabrics, as the knife or cutter would not always enter the proper 'race' round the edges of the figure, and the floats were cut irregularly. This has now been overcome by arranging the design to suit. Fig. 169 is a common velveteen designed for a weft pile figure. Only a portion of the pattern is given, but enough to show the method of arranging the design. It will be seen that the figuring is produced by flushing the weft on one side of the cloth, and for the ground it passes to the other side. The edges of the pattern are moved across the design paper in steps of two, and no flush or float is less than over four threads. In addition to this the figure should be turned in the centre on an odd number of ends, which in cutting keeps the race end on the inside of the step into which the knife enters. The knife is run up on all the odd numbers of ends moving across in steps of two, and, leaving no flushes of less than four, gives it a better chance of entering in the proper place along the edges of the pattern.

Fig. 170 is another make of velvet for a heavier fabric, with 60 threads of warp per inch, and from 350 to 400 picks. It makes a good firm cloth, suitable for curtains or furniture coverings. The principle of designing is the same as for Fig. 169. Both these patterns are portions of a diamond figure.

When the figure is produced with a warp pile, it is only necessary to raise the proper warp threads with the jacquard for the insertion

Digitized by Google

of each wire, but the difficulty to contend with is that there will be an irregular take-up of the warp pile threads, and this can only be remedied by having a number of small warp beams. In some cases a separate spool for each warp thread may be required, which, of course, for a fine velvet means a very intricate arrangement, though it suits very well for pile carpets. Different heights of pile can be formed through a pattern in this way—say, a short pile to be left looped, and a longer pile to be cut, which, in suitable colours of pile and ground, forms a very beautiful though costly fabric.

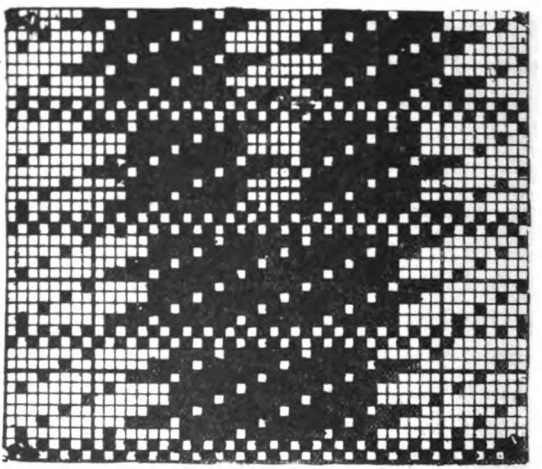


FIG. 170

Another method of warp pile weaving, more easily accomplished, is that known as terry, or Turkish towel weaving. It is largely used for quilts, toilet covers, towels, &c., and any bold figure can be woven on it with almost as much ease as on ordinary damask work.

There are two methods of forming figures on the cloth in this style of weaving, one by having two colours of pile warp and changing them from one side to the other to form the figure or ground—that is, supposing the one pile warp to be red and the other white—pile would be thrown up on both sides of the cloth at the same time; on one side the figure would be formed by the red pile and the ground by the white

Digitized by Google

pile, and the other side would be the reverse of this. Fig. 171 is a portion of a pattern of this style. The black squares represent, say, the red warp-forming loops on the face of the cloth, and the shaded squares the same for the white warp. The crosses are the ground or binding threads; and the dots represent the pile threads of the colours

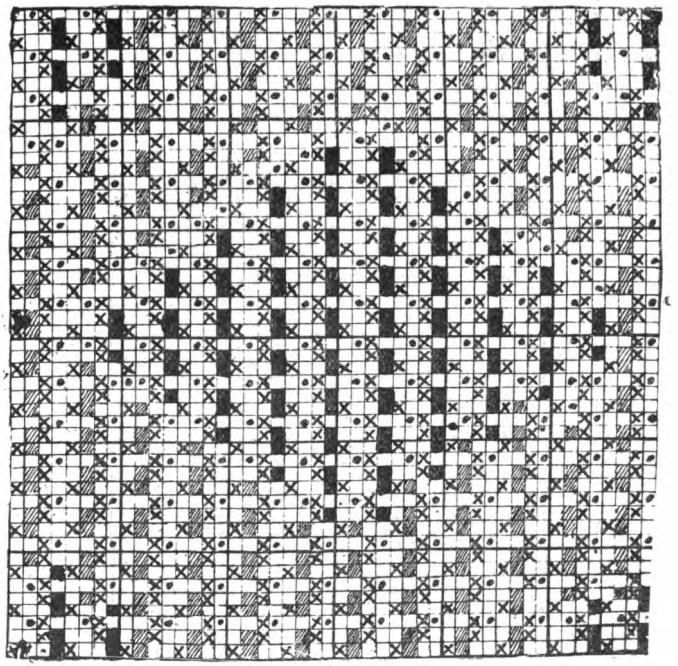


Fig. 171

they are on, raised to bind with the weft, when these threads are forming pile on the underside of the cloth.

The other method is to have only one colour of pile warp—in fact, to have only one pile warp, it might be said, instead of two, as in the previous case. The cloth consists of a pile figure and a plain or solid ground on one side, and the reverse of this on the other side. The pile and ground may be of the same colour, or of different tints if desired—say a rich cream ground and a white pile. This style of

Digitized by Google

working is very suitable for quiltings, toilet covers, &c. Fig. 172 is a portion of a pattern for weaving in this way. The black squares represent the pile-warp raised to form loops, and the round dots are also pile-warp raised, but only for binding when the loops are being formed at the other side of the cloth. The shaded squares show the ground warp raised to form the body texture. This cloth has about 60 threads of warp per inch, and the same or a little more weft.

Figs. 173 and 174 are two examples of six-shot pile cloth for quilts; it is made with 50 to 60 threads of warp per inch, and double that quantity of weft. The same method of marking the design paper is

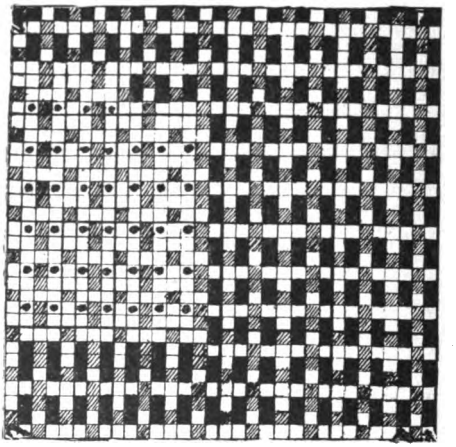


Fig. 172

used as that for 172 pattern. It will be seen that in Fig. 173 the loops or flushes of pile are over five and under one, and in Fig. 174 they are over two, under one, over one, and under one, thus making a fast pile fabric, whereas the floats of five in Fig. 173 would be rather loose unless the cloth is over-wefted. Both these piles may be used in the one cloth, one for the face and the other for the back, as is given in the figures; the light portion of Fig. 173 being of the same texture as the dark portion of Fig. 174. One pattern may be taken as the face of the cloth and the other as the back. Of course they may also be used separately if desired. Any full-harness mounting that will suit

Digitized by Google

the pattern will answer for these fabrics, the loops being thrown up in the usual way, by leaving a few shots standing out from the fell and then knocking all up, drawing forward the pile warp, which is slackened at this beat, but sliding on the ground warp, which is held firm.

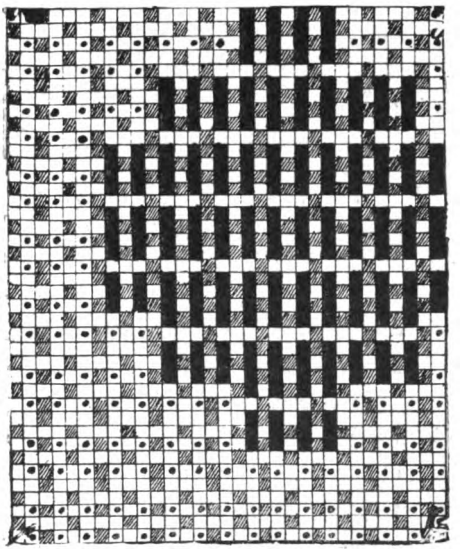


FIG. 173

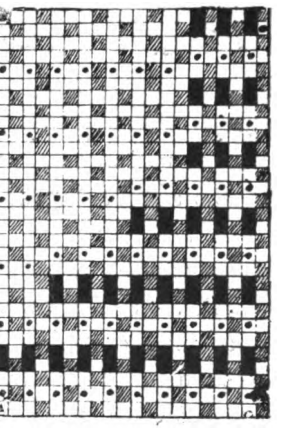


FIG. 174

Another method of forming figure pile is to weave a plain pile, and when cut press or stamp a pattern on it with heated blocks cut to the pattern; the standing pile is then shorn off, and afterwards that which was pressed down is brushed up again, forming a full-pile figure on a shorn-pile ground.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER X

CARPETS

THE manufacture of carpets has been in existence since the days of the ancient Egyptians, who made rugs and carpets of various kinds and ornamented them with animals and various devices. The manufacture passed on to the East, and we find India, Turkey and Persia celebrated for the richness of their carpets in early times. The Moors of Spain introduced the Oriental floor coverings into Western Europe, and the Belgians and French took up the manufacture and produced excellent imitations of them. Even in the Middle Ages carpets were only used as a luxury by the rich. Queen Elizabeth had a carpet spread upon rushes, while Queen Mary had rushes only. These rushes were the *Acorus Calamus* (sweet reed of Norfolk), which were the usual floor coverings down to about this time.

Tapestry weaving was started in this country in the beginning of the seventeenth century, but the first we hear of carpet manufacturing in England was at Kidderminster about 1735, the carpets then made being, no doubt, the Kidderminster or Scotch carpet. The making of Brussels carpet was introduced about 1750; they were first made in this country at Wilton, near Salisbury.

The Axminster carpets take their name from being first made in the town of Axminster about 1755. They rivalled the work of the Eastern looms for beauty, durability, and colour; but owing to the cost of their manufacture, and the introduction of the cheaper Brussels and patent tapestry carpets, the demand became very small, and the work was removed to Wilton in 1835. The patent Axminster or chenille carpet was brought out by Messrs. Templeton, of Glasgow, in 1889.

Digitized by Google

In the early ages carpets or rugs were used for spreading on the floor or grass to lounge upon. It is recorded that in Babylon the guests of despotic sovereigns lounged on rich carpets, and walked over priceless works of textile art; also how figured carpets made of the finest wool were strewed under golden couches, and rugs richly embroidered with figures were spread over daïs, stool, and table.

The Egyptian carpets may have been tapestries and embroidered fabrics. They also had a method of making tufted carpets by drawing a portion of the weft threads out of a piece of coarse linen and sewing tufts of coloured worsted to the warp threads, enough of the weft being left in to bind the warp threads together.

Persian and Indian carpets were made of wool; the latter were occasionally made of silk, and sometimes an inferior description of carpet was made of cotton. These, as well as Turkey carpets, are made on a very simple loom consisting of two posts fitted at a suitable distance apart to form a vertical frame. There is a roller at the top and another at the bottom between which the warp threads are stretched, much in the same manner as in tapestry weaving. The weaver sits in front of the loom with a design before him, and is provided with a quantity of bobbins of the colours required for the pattern; he looks to the design for the colour, and, taking a bobbin of the colour required, forms a loop round two of the warp threads with the weft, cutting it off as shown in Fig. 175. After having completed a row along the cloth forming one weft line of the design, he opens a shed and inserts a ground shot all across the web, each ground shot going into a shed the reverse of the preceding one, forming a plain texture ground with a row of tufts between the ground shots. The ground shots are beaten down with a comb. Instead of going across in even rows of tufts, where there is a patch of colour several rows of tufts may be put in at this place with a ground thread between the rows, leaving the ends of these threads projecting so that they can be carried across when the remaining portions of the rows are completed. The ends of the tufts are cut

Fig. 175

Digitized by Google

off roughly at first, and afterwards shorn level with a pair of shears. Persian carpets are sometimes very costly, a small-sized carpet, when made of fine cashmere wool, costing 500*l.* or 600*l.*

Axminster carpets are made on the same principle, and other art carpets are being made similarly. There are about sixteen or twenty warp threads per inch of strong cotton or linen thread; the weft is of fine wool, three or four ply being put into each tuft; the ground weft is soft hemp or flax, eight ply of yarn going to each shot. This makes a full soft cloth. These carpets are about three-quarters of an inch thick, and, like tapestries, there is no end to the variety of pattern or colour that can be introduced.

Kidderminster or Scotch Carpet.—This carpet, also called ingrain carpet, is the oldest machine-made carpet in this country; it was originally made at Kidderminster, but the chief centre now is Scotland. Originally it was a two-ply cloth, the pattern being formed by passing the two cloths, which were of different colours, through each other. Mr. Morton, of Kilmarnock, improved on this by making it a three-ply cloth, which enabled it to be made a thicker cloth with a richer pattern. It is now made both two- and three-ply, and when made of all-wool is a rich and durable article, taking a position between the jute and felt carpets and the tapestry and Brussels; it is, however, sometimes made with cotton warps and woollen wefts, and is in this case an inferior article.

Both two- and three-ply carpets may be woven with only one colour of weft, in which case the pattern is formed by the warp threads, which must be much thicker so as to close in over the weft and hide it as much as possible; on the other hand, there may be two warps and four colours of weft, two of which are the same colours as the warp, and in this case the weft is much thicker than the warp. The best of these carpets are made with as many colours of weft as warp, as, in order to get a pure effect, it is necessary to have wefts traversing warps of their own colour; but a variety of effects can be produced by using additional colours in both warp and weft.

One advantage in this style of carpet is that it is reversible; for when one cloth rises to the face the other passes to the back, making

Digitized by Google

the pattern on both back and face alike, but of different colours. This is the case when the carpet is two-ply cloth woven in the ordinary way, but sometimes the back has to a certain extent to be sacrificed to give more ornamentation to the face, at least in the ordinary method of weaving. Whether woven two- or three-ply, the principle of working is the same. Take a two-ply carpet. The fabric is a double or two-ply plain cloth, figured in the usual way by passing the two cloths through each other, there being no binding between the cloths except what is formed by the one passing through.

The warps are of different colours—as, say, scarlet and black, green and black, &c.—and each warp should have a weft of its own colour if pure effects in the cloth are required. Usually four sets of warp threads are employed instead of two—that is, two colours, end-and-end, for each warp—and each colour of warp has its own colour of weft. Say we take red and black for the face or figuring warp, and white and olive for the back or ground warp. Various effects can be produced from this arrangement—viz. the effect of the figuring cloth, formed by weaving the red and black warps and wefts together, which in plain texture with one weft will produce a rich brown effect; the ground cloth produced by the white and olive warps and the weft will be of a light olive colour; then lined, or what are known as 'shot-about' effects can be produced by throwing in a light and a dark shot alternately—as white and black, olive and red—and binding them on the face by warps of the same colour. All the weft on the face of the cloth should be bound by warp of its own colour in order to give pure effects. When a thread of one cloth is raised, the corresponding thread of the other cloth goes to the back (white and red and olive and black correspond in this case), but the red weft will be bound with black warp on the under side of the cloth, and the black weft will be bound with red warp, and the same with the others, as in the system of working the harness with journals to form the texture, all the black warp is controlled by one of the journals and must all rise with it. Therefore when the black shot is being thrown in, the black warp must be raised to make the pattern correct on the face of the cloth, and this will also cause it to be raised for that portion of the cloth that goes to the back, and when the black

Digitized by Google

is up the red is down ; therefore the black weft must be bound by red warp on the under side of the cloth, and the same with the other colours. It is easy to understand that if an end-and-end warp—black and red—be wrought plain on two shafts or leaves of heddles, and shot pick and pick of the same colours, when the black weft is bound with the black warp on one side it must be bound with red (which is the other half of the warp) on the other side, and if the red is bound with red on one side it must also be bound with black on the reverse side. To apply this to the double cloth or carpet weave it is only necessary to consider this piece of cloth as passing up and down through another one of a different colour. Had we the power of raising any portion of the black or red warps required, we could bind a portion of the black weft with black on one side, and any other portion of it with black on the other side ; to do this we require a full or thread harness.

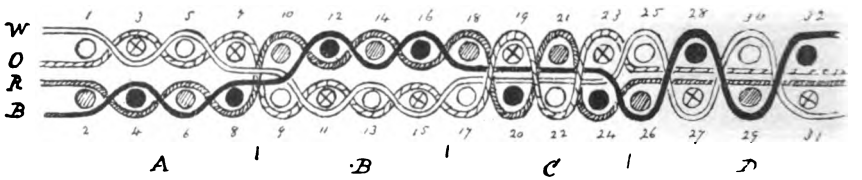


Fig. 176

A section through the weft of a piece of two-ply carpeting is given in Fig. 176, showing the position of the threads when arranged to give the different effects of face cloth up as at A, back cloth up as at B, shot-about effect of red and olive on the face as at C, and shot-about effect of white and black on face as at D. The warp threads are marked W, O, R, B, the initial letters of the colours ; and the numbers 1 to 32 give the order of picking. The shot-about effect is here produced with the opposite threads—that is, the first thread of one warp and the second thread of the other warp—as white and black ; but it might be preferred to produce the effect the corresponding or mate threads (white and red, or olive and black) would give. In working with journals, two picks face and two picks back would be required to obtain this, and the needles of the jacquards would require to be acted upon by the cards for each shot, thus requiring double the number of cards. With a full

Digitized by Google

harness any effect desired can be produced. Extra colours of weft may also be used (as drab) in addition to the white and olive—to work, say, white, olive, drab, olive, &c.; and dark green or blue in addition to the red and black, which would come in as red, green, black, green, &c., a shot of the light and one of the dark colours following each other in succession. Stripes of a bright colour may be introduced into the warp or weft and kept in the back cloth, only being brought to the face in small portions, at intervals, to sparkle up the centres of flowers, &c.

Ingrain carpets are made 36 in. wide, and with, say, 832 or 1088 threads of warp, according to quality. The former can be woven on a 200 jacquard (say 208=416), as the machine is double ; and as there are two repeats of the pattern in the width of the cloth, $416 \times 2 = 832$ threads of warp. For the latter 272 needles are required $= 544 \times 2 = 1088$ hooks.

When woven with journals, the jacquards used for figuring these carpets are similar to those explained under 'Quilt Weaving'—that is, double machines with trapboards and knot cords; and when the card is pressed against the needles it is held in for two shots, one trapboard raising the harness for the first shot, and the other reversing the shed for the second shot. The journals are four sections of the cumber board, as shown in Fig. 177; each section contains two rows of the harness and one colour of warp. No. 1 journal controls the white warp, No. 2 the olive, No. 3 the red, and No. 4 the black; the draft is shown by the numbers 1 to 8 alongside the harness cords. These eight cords only represent half a row from each machine, as there are eight rows of hooks to the machine. One row of the two machines fills two rows across the journals, or 16 holes. A represents the trapboard of the machine for the ground or dark warp, and B that of the machine for the figuring or light warp.

The harness twines are furnished with large knots above the cumber board or journals, so that when one of the journals is raised the harness will be lifted with it. The journals may be raised by strong cords or wires from the machine, or by a tappet or shedding motion working either above or below them. If the machine is divided into two parts, four hooks in succession going to each colour of warp

Digitized by Google

for each cloth, the cords from these four hooks making two rows of the journal, there will be no crossing of the harness in a straight or Norwich tie.

The order of working for the section Fig. 176 would be as follows:— For the first pick, which is white, raise the trapboard B and the first journal; for the second pick, which is red, raise the trapboard A and the third journal; for the third pick, raise the trapboard B and the second journal; for the fourth pick, raise the trapboard A and the fourth journal. This is the general order of lifting for a pattern; but

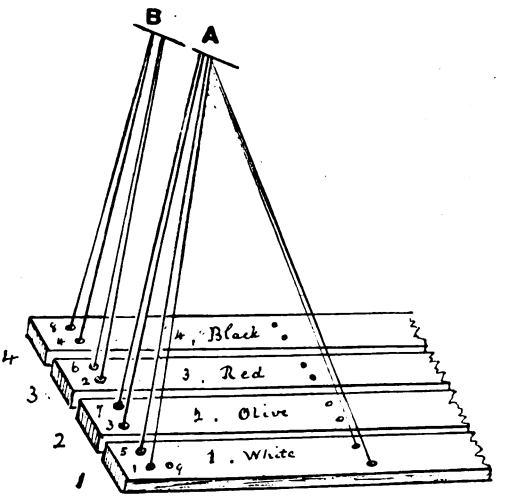


FIG. 177

a simple lined effect across the cloth as the section could be wrought with the journals without the machine, using them as heddle shafts. It could also be wrought by the machine without the journals. The use of the journals in conjunction with the machine is to pass the cloths through each other and make a pattern. For figure work, when a card is pressed in against the needles, all the warp for the figure on the design paper is raised by the trapboard B, which clears this portion of the red and black warps out of the way of the ground shed; and as the first pick of the ground is white, the white journal is raised to bind the white pick, leaving the olive warp down to bind it at the back. For

Digitized by Google

the next shot the same card acts, and the trapboard A is raised, which lifts all the white and olive warp corresponding with the portion of the red and black that was left down at the last shot, so as to clear this portion out of the way of the face shed. As a red pick follows white, the red journal (No. 3) is raised to bind the red on the face, leaving the black warp down to bind it on the back. The other picks follow similarly. This shows the defective binding common to journal weaving, the white being bound with olive and the red with black at the under side of the cloth. To have pure binding, instead of all the white or red being raised by a journal as above, only as much of either should be raised as is required to bind its own colour of weft on the face of the cloth. The olive or black in respective cases should be raised for the remainder of the shed, leaving the white and red down to bind their own wefts where these colours come out on the back or under side of the cloth, thus giving pure colours on both sides of the cloth, and letting the mixed or impure binding be in the centre between the two cloths. This, however, is beyond the range of journals, and requires a harness.

Fig. 178 gives a neat pattern on a small scale for a two-ply cloth with, say, a red and a pale olive warp for ground and figure cloths respectively, the shaded squares being red and the ground or white squares olive; the weft for each cloth to be the same colour as the warp, or sometimes a tint one or two shades lighter and brighter, or deeper and duller, according to the colours or shades of colours used, gives a good effect. A further effect in this can be produced by having the 6th to 10th and 18th to 22nd threads black, brown, or dark green, end-and-end with pale olive, for the back warp, and picking similarly on the 5th to the 9th picks for the ground cloth. This would, of course, make a striped effect on the under side

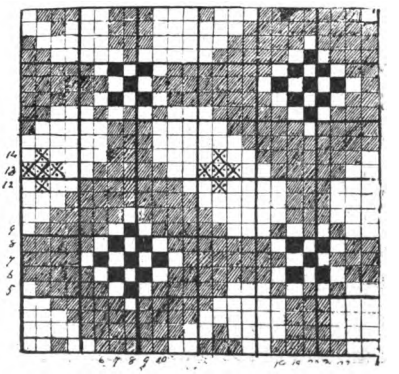


Fig. 178

Digitized by Google

of the cloth, as where the additional colours do not show above they must appear below. A still better effect can be produced by having an additional weft lying between the two cloths which can be flushed on the face in spots as at picks 12, 13, and 14, and of course a three-ply cloth will be a step farther in advance; lined effects can then be produced anywhere desirable, in portions to suit the nature of the design, to vary and enrich it, at the same time the breadth of effect is maintained by working the greater portion of the pattern in masses of pure colour, whether they be large or small. For full-harness work the harness is divided into two sections, four rows for the back cloth and four rows for the face cloth, on an 8-row machine; no journals are used, the machine doing all the work. The harness is tied up in the usual way, the cord from the first hook passing through the first hole of the cumber board, and the cord from the second hook passing through the second hole, and so on.

The harness is nominally divided into two sections, the front four rows being for the face cloth and the back four for the back cloth; when drawing the warp into the harness the mails are taken in the following order: 1, 5, 2, 6, 3, 7, 4, 8, the back or ground warp coming on 1, 2, 3, 4 mails, and the face or figure warp on 5, 6, 7, 8.

Suppose the pattern to be a dice, as Fig. 179, the warps to be white and olive, and red and black, with the same colours of weft. Each upright line of the design represents two threads of warp, one of which will be drawn on the front half of the harness and the other on the back half; and each horizontal line of the design represents two weft shots, for which there must be two cards cut. Let the order of drawing the warp into the harness be as Fig. 180. The white is on the odd and the olive on the even numbers of the four back rows of the harness, and the red is on the odd and the black on the even numbers of the four front rows.

Now to cut the cards:—Take the first line of the design Fig. 179, cut the odd numbers of holes (that is, the first and third) on the first half, or first four holes, of the card, and cut the white and olive on the second half of the card. For the second card, from the same line of the design cut red and black on the first half of the card, and the

Digitized by Google

odd numbers of holes on the second half of the card. For the third card, take the second line of the design and cut even numbers of holes on the first half of the card, and white and olive on the second half of the card. For the fourth card, from the second line of the design cut red and black on the first half of the card, and the even numbers

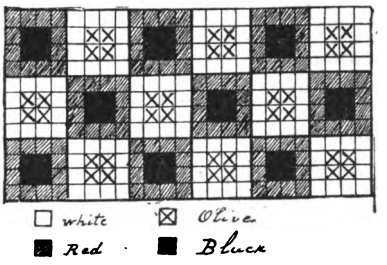


FIG. 179

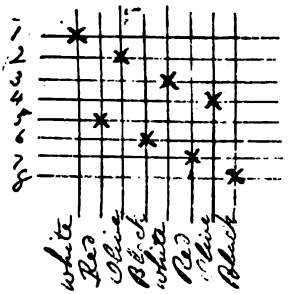


FIG. 180

of holes on the second half of the card. Of course when there is none of a colour raised, as in the first line there is no black, no notice is taken of it. For the pattern in Fig. 178 the cutting would be the same, except that there are only two colours of warp to be dealt with instead of four. No. 1 card: cut odd numbers of holes on the first

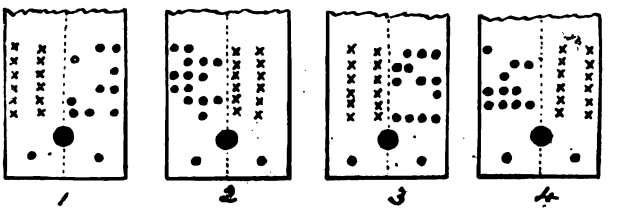


FIG. 181

half of the card, and olive on the second half of the card. No. 2: cut red on the first half of the card, and odd numbers of holes on the second half of the card, &c.

The cutting of four cards is given is Fig. 181. The crosses indicate the cutting of the odd and even holes in the cards, and the dots are the figure. It will be seen that the crosses in No. 3 card would reverse

Digitized by Google

the shed formed by those in No. 1 card, thus working plain texture on the back cloth, and the same would take place with Nos. 2 and 4 cards for the face cloth. This is simply the action of the journals included in the harness, which it will be seen requires double the number of needles in the machine, and double the quantity of cards; but an ordinary machine and mounting will answer, instead of having to get a double machine and journals.

The above cutting acts the same as journals, and is all right in both cases when one warp with its own weft is used for each cloth; but it has been pointed out that when each warp is end-and-end of different colours with wefts to match, the under side of the cloth is defective when wrought with journals, and so it would be with the full harness if the cards were cut as above. To get each colour of weft bound with its own colour of warp on both sides of the cloth, the following change must be made:—Take the small piece of pattern given in Fig. 182, and let the warps be as before—white and olive, red and black. The card cutting for this pattern will be as follows, the warp being drawn through the harness as before:

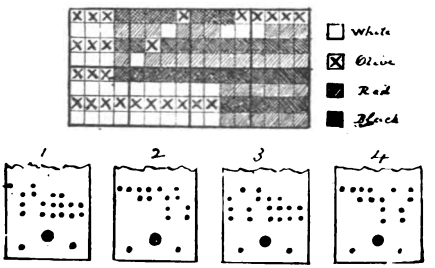


Fig. 182

For the first card, cut odd numbers of red and even numbers of white on the first half, or first four holes, of the card, and white solid on the second half. This will form a shed for the red shot.

Second card: Cut from same line of the design red solid on the first half of the card, and even numbers of white and odd numbers of red on the second half of the card. This is for the white shot.

Third card, for black shot: Cut from the second line of the design even numbers of black and odd numbers of olive on the first half of the card, and olive solid on the second half of the card.

Fourth card, for olive shot: From the same line cut black solid on

Digitized by Google

the first half, and odd numbers of olive and even numbers of black on the second half of the card.

These four cards are shown in Fig. 182, from which the cutting may be traced. It must not be supposed, however, that cutting odd numbers of red and even numbers of white as on the first card, means that these colours of threads are to be raised; the colour has no reference to the threads—only to the coloured checks on the design paper.

For the first card the white checks on the design paper are cut solid on the second half of the card; this raises the white and olive warp corresponding to the white portion of the design. Then, to form the plain shed in the other warp, the even numbers of the white checks and the odd numbers of the red checks are cut on the first half of the card, which acts on the other warp. As the black warp is drawn on the even numbers of harness twines it will be raised for that portion of the design that is white, and the red will remain down to bind the red weft; but passing along the design till the red weft is above, it will be seen that the red warp should here be up to bind it, and the black should therefore be down, so, as the red warp is on the odd numbers of the harness and on the second half of the card, the odd numbers must be cut on the card for the red portion of the design. This gives a pure binding on both sides: and the same applies to the other colours. It will be seen that the first halves of the 1st and 3rd cards together work a broken plain texture, and the second halves of the 2nd and 4th cards do the same.

In case the card-cutter cannot follow this method of cutting, and if the design is so varied in order of weaving that a gamut or index for cutting cannot be arranged, then it will be necessary to paint the full texture of the pattern on the design paper in the same manner as is done for double cloth. The first row of designs of the pattern given in Fig. 178 is painted out in full in Fig. 183. The shaded lines underneath represent the back warp, and the white lines the face warp. The black squares are the figure, and the large crosses the ground, or the white squares in Fig. 178. The dots are the rising marks for the texture of the back cloth, as would be formed by the back warp journals, and the small crosses are the same for the face warp.

Digitized by Google

This method of weaving is not confined to carpets, but is equally applicable to quilts, curtains, &c., and a plain texture need not be adhered to; a twill or any simple fancy texture may be used. With 80 to a 100 threads per inch, one warp peacock green in satin texture for the figure, and the other warp gold for the ground in a crêpe or mottled texture, all shot peacock, a handsome curtain can be made.

Brussels Carpets.—Brussels carpets, with their less expensive allies, the tapestries, are the commonest of the better class of carpets. They are a loop-pile fabric, the pile being formed by the figuring warp, which is wool, the ground warp and weft being hemp or flax. As the pattern is formed by raising the figuring warp threads of the required colours, and as any thread of any colour may require to be raised, it follows that all the threads must be on separate spools or small warp rolls, so that any one thread can be drawn forward without slackening

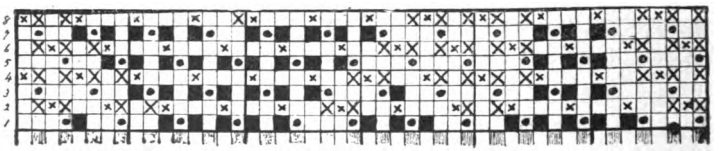


Fig. 183

any of the others. Large frames are therefore made to hold the number of spools of each colour, and these are placed one above the other in a slanting position, at the back of the loom, and when filled with spools the whole set of threads are brought forward to the harness as if from a warping creel or bank. According to the number of these frames used the carpet is styled a 3, 4, or 5-frame carpet, the greater the number of frames the richer the carpet both in colour (generally speaking) and in body of warp. Sometimes 6 frames are used; but 4 or 5 are more frequent, 3 and 4 frame being the lower qualities.

The texture of a Brussels carpet is shown in Fig. 184, which is a section through the weft. A and B are two of the ground warp threads, a pair of these coming between the rows of pile loops, a portion of one row being shown in the section. The weft threads are

Digitized by Google

shown in section coming under the loops of the ground warp at the top, and above them below. Both this warp and weft are of coarse hemp, about 3's: the weft is steeped in glue size before being thrown into the cloth, which makes it stiff and firm when dry. The pile warp threads are numbered, 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5; they are of soft-spun worsted, about 2/24's, 2 and sometimes 3 threads being drawn in together as one through the mails and reed. These five warp

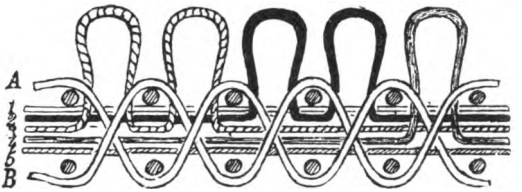


FIG. 184

threads go to form one line of loops, being raised over the wires as is required for the pattern, and lying straight between the weft threads when not raised. By considering this it will easily be understood that each thread must be on a separate bobbin so as to admit of being drawn forward independently of any of the others. In low qualities of these carpets one or two threads of hemp warp are used to each splitful or row of pile threads; the hemp thread lies in a straight line below the

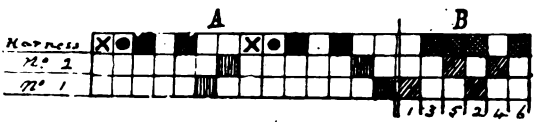


FIG. 185

worsted threads in the same way that No. 5 thread is shown in the section. These stuffing threads add to the weight and thickness when the worsted is reduced in quantity, but make a harsher and stiffer carpet. This warp, when used, is put on a beam or warp roll, as is also the ground warp of the carpet.

Fig. 185 is the plan of drawing-in and weaving a carpet similar to that shown in section in Fig. 184. The draft is given at A, and the

Digitized by Google

treading and cording for a hand loom at B. A 10-row jacquard should be used for a 5-frame carpet, as twice over the 5 threads makes one row of the cumber board. Five threads are drawn into the harness, one from each frame, then two ground warp threads are brought through and drawn on two leaves of heddles. In weaving, one ground thread is raised and a shot thrown in; then all the pile warp and the same ground thread are raised for the next shot; the third tread raises the harness and a wire is inserted to draw up the pile; the fourth tread crosses the ground warp threads; the fifth tread raises this thread again, as well as all the pile warp, and the sixth tread raises the harness for the insertion of the second wire; this completes the order of treading. For the second and fifth treads it will be observed that all the warp in the harness must be raised; this was usually done by having shafts through the harness or by raising the cumber board to act as a journal in the manner explained for Scotch carpet weaving; but now jacquards are made with bottom boards or gratings that can be raised or lowered to form these sheds.

The pile wires are now commonly inserted at the time the adjoining pick is being thrown in, a double shed being formed, and both the wire and shuttle passed across at the same time, the former being uppermost; in power looms the wires are both inserted and withdrawn by machinery; about twenty-five are inserted before any are drawn out, to prevent the loops from slipping. Jacquard machines are made specially for the purpose of forming this double shed, the grating raising the hooks from the bottom to the centre position, thus raising the worsted or figuring warp above the shuttle, while the griffe carries the figuring hooks on to the top, making a second or upper shed for the wire. The old method was to form the lower shed by raising the cumber board, and the upper one by the griffe. Jacquards with cords instead of hooks are frequently used.

Brussels carpets are made 27 in. wide, with nominally 260 loops or rows of pile in the width; but 256 rows are commonly used instead of 260 for the better classes of goods, and a further reduction of 30 or 40 loops is made for lower classes, the reduction going to cheapen the goods or to the credit of the manufacturer. Although only 256 loops

Digitized by Google

are on the surface of the cloth, it must be remembered that for a 5-frame carpet there are 5 times this number of threads, and that 1,280 cords will be required for the harness, and an equal number of needles in the jacquard when the pattern is single, or not repeated on the cloth ; but the design only covers 256 spaces on the point paper, each space or check across it representing 5 threads. In Scotland a reed with 350 splits on 37 in. is used, one row of pile warp with its ground warp going into each split. A carpet known as Axminster Brussels is made in Scotland. It is similar in structure to the common Brussels, but has in addition a woollen weft, which is thrown in pick-and-pick with the usual hemp weft. The addition of the wool weft adds to the softness and thickness of the carpet, giving more elasticity or spring to it, and making it wear better.

Designs for Brussels carpets are sketched out and coloured in the usual way; the method of repeating the patterns is much the same as is adopted for wall papers. Usually there is one repeat in the width of the cloth (27 in.), and the length of the repeat may be shorter or longer to suit the pattern, expense, &c.; 256 checks, = $\frac{3}{4}$ths of a yard, is a common length, and $1\frac{1}{2}$ yard for bolder effects. The number of colours must be regulated to suit the frames to be employed in the weaving, unless the frames can be made to suit the pattern. Say five frames are to be used, this would suggest five colours; but it does not follow that only five colours can be used. A clever designer may work out most patterns so that six or more colours may be used on five frames, by arranging the design so that two colours may be put to one or more of the frames, which process is called ' planting.' But it may be that an extra number of colours will not improve the design, in which case they should not be used. The process of ' planting ' or striping the warp—which is on the same principle as ' chintzing ' by striping the weft in other makes of goods—will be best understood by referring to Fig. 186, which is a Brussels carpet pattern on a small scale for working with five frames. The colours are indicated by different markings on the squares of the design-paper, as shown by the index or gamut below the design. On the first line of the gamut there are two varieties of markings, and as this line indicates reds, there are

Digitized by Google

two colours of red used on this frame. Following up the design above these markings, it will be seen that one colour of red is used in one of the sets or rows of octagonal figures, and the other colour on the intermediate rows, and that the two colours of red are not required in the same portions of the design, the gamut showing where each is required.

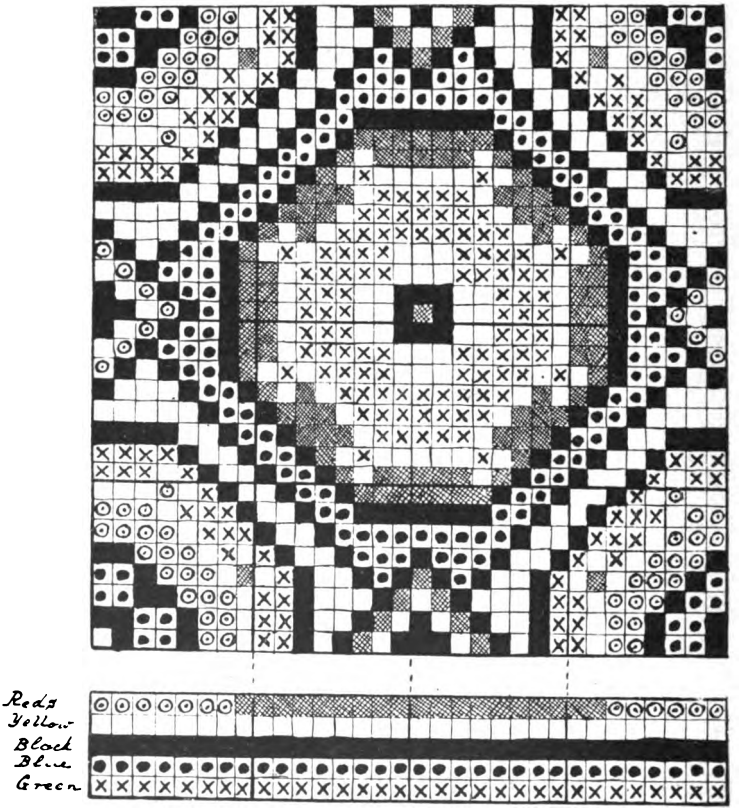


FIG. 186

It is only necessary to arrange the spools on the frame in the loom and draw the threads through the harness, as shown by the gamut, to make this fall in correctly.

What the designer must guard against is giving the pattern a striped appearance, which would be the case if the planted colours

Digitized by Google

were brought to the surface too frequently; but if they are judiciously brought up at intervals, the effect of a 5-frame can be made almost as good as that of a 6-frame pattern, and this can be carried still further if desired; every frame may contain two colours, or one frame may contain several colours.

Carpet patterns are sometimes painted on small-sized design paper —that is, the ordinary paper with, say, two designs per inch; but before working it is more satisfactory to have them put on large-sized paper, so as to show the exact effect they will have on the cloth, the design-paper giving the pattern full-cloth size.

When painting patterns that are as large or larger on the cloth than they are on the design-paper, much more care and skill are necessary than when the pattern is one that is much larger on the design-paper than it will be on the cloth, as is usually the case; and in consequence of the large size of the checks required for carpet design-paper, it is evident that representations of any small objects—unless those of a very simple nature—cannot be put on it without being greatly enlarged. After the sketch is made the forms should be carefully adapted to suit the paper, so as to give a satisfactory effect on it, rather than be a rigid adherence to the sketch. Natural floral forms should not be attempted unless to satisfy the demands of trade, and when they must be used they should be made on so large a scale as to be fairly represented in a semi-conventional manner. Large wild-floral patterns are frequently to be seen on carpets, but they are rarely, if ever, satisfactory. Persian, Indian, and other geometric or conventional forms that lend themselves readily to a harmonious admixture of colours so that the carpet will, when on the floor, present a rich glow of colour instead of obtrusive masses of floral misrepresentations, are much to be preferred. Dull colouring is not essential to good taste—rather the reverse; but it is less obtrusive and more easily managed, particularly in the hands of an inferior artist. No matter how brilliant the colours are, if properly blended and broken up into masses in proportion to their intensities in the spectrum scale they need not be in the least offensive; but it requires skilful hands to do this.

The pattern given in our last figure (186) is a simple repeating pattern,

Digitized by Google

so that two pieces of the carpet laid side by side will join correctly together. Another method of arranging patterns so that they will repeat is shown in Fig. 187. In this figure it will be seen that the two sides will not join as an ordinary repeat, but if two pieces are taken the right-hand side of one will, if turned round, join against the left-hand side of the other, and two pieces thus joined will form a repeat. This is objectionable in the case of cut pile, which usually has a slope in one direction; and when two pieces are joined, one running one way and the other the reverse, the effect will be that of shaded stripes, somewhat similar to that of a grass field when rolled. Another method of forming repeating patterns is by making what is known as a 'drop repeat,' which is shown in Fig. 188; though the two sides will not join in against each other, as in an ordinary repeat, if two pieces of the carpet be laid side by side, and one of them drawn a little down, the point A in the figure of one piece will fall in against B and B¹ of the other piece, and repeat.

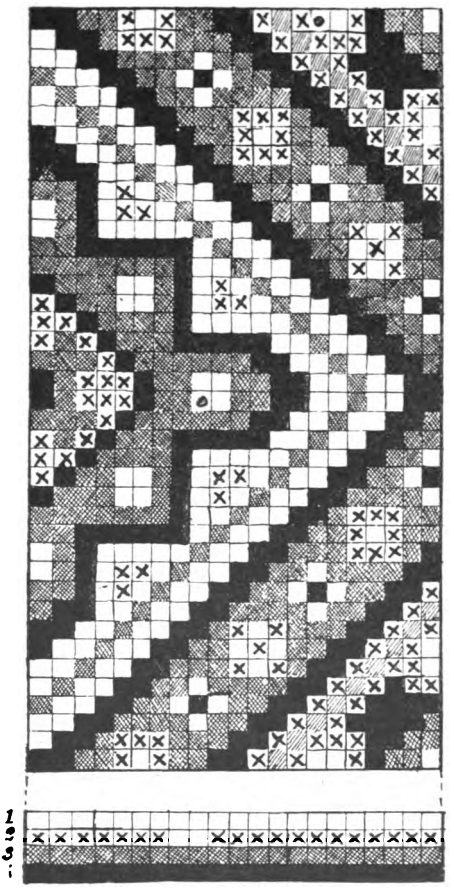


FIG. 187

These show the usual principles on which repeats are based, and of course it is for the ingenuity of the designer to form the best arrangements of pattern he can to suit them, or any other method he may think of.

Digitized by Google

When cutting cards for carpet patterns the usual method of picking out the various colours for each cutting must be adopted by the card-cutter. Refer to Fig. 186 for the pattern, and to Fig. 185 for the draft. The order of drawing is green, blue, black, yellow, reds, which gives five rows of holes on the card, and this twice over makes the ten rows; therefore, green would be cut on the first and sixth rows; blue on the second and seventh; black on the third and eighth; yellow on the fourth and ninth; and reds on the fifth and tenth rows. These may be all cut when passing the card once along the cutting machine, giving more than one tramp, if necessary, to each shift of the card index; or the cutter, if not accustomed to this, may pass the card along once for each colour, working two of the punches at each passage of the card, and of course remembering to select the punches which correspond to the colour being read.

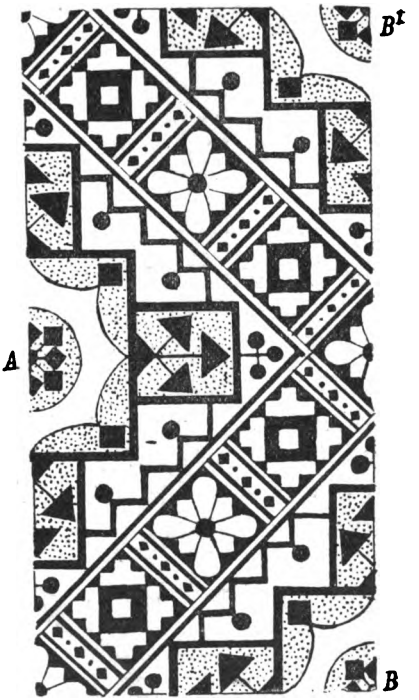


Fig. 188

It must be remembered that two checks on the design-paper correspond with a row of ten holes on the cards, as each check may have any of five colours on it in the case of a 5-frame carpet pattern, and there must be a space for a hole in the card for any of these colours; therefore the designs or large squares on the design-paper would consist of two checks each. Suppose one of these checks—the first one—to be green, the first hole in the card would be cut for it; if the second check is also green, the sixth hole on the card would be cut; but if it is black, the eighth hole in the card would be cut, not the third hole, as it, being the second check, comes on the second half of the card. The first check stands

Digitized by Google

against the first five rows of holes in the card, and the second check against the second five rows, each check on the design-paper representing five threads, five mails and five needles, or five spaces on the card; but only one hole is cut on the card for it, and that must suit the colour the check is painted.

Wilton Carpets.—These carpets are made much in the same manner as Brussels, but the pile is cut, and they are of a better quality of

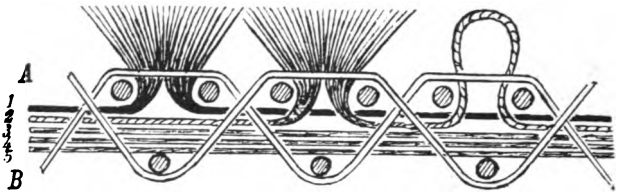


FIG. 189

wool with a longer pile, and altogether a superior article. As the pile is cut, the method of binding it into the ground is somewhat different from that adopted for Brussels, in order to secure a firmer binding. A section of the cloth through the weft is given in Fig. 189, showing two pile loops cut and one uncut, and also the method of binding the pile warp threads Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5, with the ground warp A and B, and the weft is shown in section, or end view.

The warp or pile threads are cut similarly to velvet by drawing the

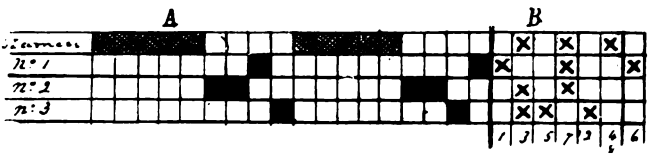


FIG. 190

wires out of the loops and having each wire furnished at its end with a cutting edge. Fig. 190 shows the draft and treading of a Wilton carpet arranged for a hand loom. The back is the harness, and Nos. 1, 2, and 3 the shafts. No 2 shaft is only required when an extra or silent warp is used for the purpose of giving weight and thickening the fabric. This warp, if used, lies straight between the weft, and must be on a separate beam from the ground warp.

Digitized by Google

Tapestry Carpets.—These carpets, though they do not require a jacquard to weave them, are so closely allied to Brussels, and patterns so similar can be produced on them, that it is thought desirable to give a short description of them. Though figured weaving, they are not so in the strict sense of the term, as the pattern is printed on the warp instead of being formed by various coloured warps; they are simply an imitation of figured weaving in colours. Any pattern that can be put on a Brussels carpet can also be put on a tapestry, and with further variation if desired. The effect is not so sharp and rich on the tapestry, as the colours, being printed on the warp, run into each other more or less, and produce a slight blurring round the edges of the pattern; whereas the pattern on the Brussels is so sharp and clear round the edges as to make it harsh if two very contrasting colours come together,

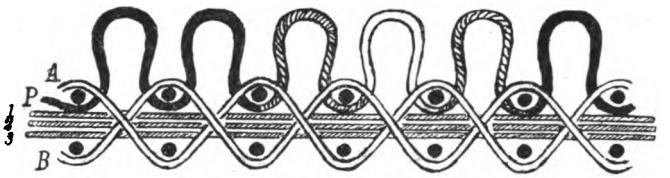


FIG. 191

so that in some cases the tapestry patterns are softer and more pleasing.

Fig. 191 shows the texture of a tapestry carpet. A and B are the ground warp threads which bind the weft, the same as in Brussels; these threads go on one warp roll. 1, 2, and 3 are the lying or filling warp threads of linen, hemp, or jute, used for giving weight and thickness to the cloth; these threads go on a second roll. P is the pile, which, it will be observed, is of various colours and looped all along the cloth, or passes over every wire that is inserted, and the pattern is formed entirely by the colours that these threads are printed. The pile goes on a third warp roll. All the pile can go on the one roll, as every thread is looped alike by each wire inserted. A pair of shafts for the ground warp—one for the lying warp and one for the pile—is all that is required for weaving the cloth. The pile consists of two or three ends of two-fold worsted yarn, according to the quality of the

Digitized by Google

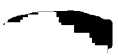
carpet. As the fabric is made up to a great extent with the three lying ends of stiffened hemp or flax to each row of pile loops, the carpet is of a harder and less pliable nature, with less spring in it than a Brussels (which has the five pile worsted threads in it), and it is also less durable. The number of pile loops in the width of the cloth is the same as for a low-class Brussels carpet, say 216 to 225, and the width of the cloth is the same—about 27 in. Five threads go to each split of the reed —viz. one pile, two ground warp, and the three lying or filling ends.

In these carpets, as well as in Brussels, it will be seen from the sections that one weft thread is above a lower one, with a straight tightly-stretched warp between them. A method of weaving has been adopted on the Continent in which both sheds are formed and both wefts picked at the same time. One shed is raised above the centre warp, and one is sunk below it, and both shuttles are driven through simultaneously; then a pile shed is raised and a wire inserted; and this repeated, reversing the ground sheds, makes the order of weaving for tapestry carpets. Another method is to have double mails, one mail above the other on the same harness cord or heald; the wool warp goes to the upper mail, and the lying warp to the lower one. When the mails are raised a double shed is formed, and a pile wire and a pick can be inserted at the same time. The ground or binding warp is in two additional leaves of healds. To apply the former method to Wilton carpets, two picks are put in below to balance with the two above, instead of one pick below, as shown in Fig. 189.

For tapestry carpets the pattern is prepared in the same way as for Brussels. The repeat of the pattern may be of any length, but 27, 36, or 54 in. are usual lengths. The pattern, though prepared as if for the jacquard, is only a guide for the printer when printing the colours on the warp.

The pattern is printed on the warp in an elongated form, the amount of elongation coinciding exactly with the reduction the pile loops make in the length of the warp when it is woven.

The pattern was originally printed on the woven cloth by means of blocks; next it was printed on the warp in an elongated form in the same manner; now it is printed by means of small rollers. The yarn



Digitized by Google

for each thread of the warp, or of a number of warps, is wound separately on a large reel or drum, of such a size as will hold a suitable quantity of yarn (about 18¾ feet in circumference). Six or eight threads are wound on together, so as to lie closely together side by side and not overlap each other, till the drum is full, or the required length is wound on it. This has now to be printed with the pattern in an elongated form.

The right-hand edge of the drum is divided into as many divisions as a length of yarn equal to the circumference of the drum will make loops on the cloth. This is called the index, and 648 is a common number of divisions for it to have, or 864 for a larger size. Of course the number of loops any length of yarn will make depends upon the size of them, and the reduction in length from the yarn to the cloth depends upon the height of the pile and the number of loops in a given space. The number of loops per inch varies with the quality of the cloth; 7 or 8 is usual for loop pile, and 9 or 10 for cut or velvet pile. The design must contain such a number of checks in length as will divide evenly into the index number, such as 108, 162, 216, 324. When painted the design is cut into strips in the direction of its length, one line or row of checks in each strip. When the yarn is wound on the drum, and the printer is ready to begin work, he takes one of these strips and pins it up before him to guide him in the colours he is to print. The printing is done by means of a trough of colour with a roller in it, set on a carriage beneath the drum, so that when passed across the roller will press firmly on the yarn. The printer finds the first colour on the design, and setting the drum to the first tooth of the rack or index, he passes a trough of the proper colour across the drum and back again; if the second check on the design is the same colour, he turns the drum round a tooth of the index and passes the same colour across; if the third check is a different colour, this requires a second colour trough, and passing another tooth on the index this colour is passed, and so on with the remainder; or, all one colour is printed first, then the drum revolved again with the second colour, and so on. When this is all printed the yarn is taken off the drum and marked No. 1 thread, and the beginning and end of

Digitized by Google

the thread should be marked in some way as a guide for the setters. A fresh lot of yarn is wound on for the second thread, which is printed according to the second strip of the design. This must be continued for all the threads in the warp. After being printed, the colours are fixed by a steaming process, and afterwards wound on bobbins and marked to their numbers. The design may be cut into strips of two checks each, instead of one check, which will be less liable to get torn. One side of the strip can then be printed first, and the other after.

The warp is made up by 'setters,' who arrange the threads together in proper order in a frame for the purpose, and set them so that the colours of each thread come together at the proper place to form on the warp a correct elongated copy of the pattern; when correct it is wound on the beam for the loom.

In printing and steaming, the colours are liable to run into each other; some colours are worse in this respect than others, but it is reduced to a minimum by the use of an absorbent in steaming; and sometimes the designer makes a little allowance on the design-paper for such colours as he knows will be liable to run and injure the pattern. The pile of tapestry carpets is usually left uncut; but sometimes it is cut, forming a velvet pile. In this case the carpet is made of a better quality, and the pile is longer.

The present method of preparing tapestry warps was invented by Richard Whytock, of Edinburgh, in 1832, and perfected by Messrs. Crossley, of Halifax.

Axminster Carpets.—Real Axminster carpets, as already said, are made by hand much in the same manner as Turkish or Persian carpets, and attempts have also been made to produce them by machinery, several patents having been taken out for the protection of the inventions. These carpets, with other art carpets now being made, may be classed with tapestry as works of art.

The Axminster carpets of commerce are the Royal Axminster or Moquette carpets, and the patent Axminster or chenille carpets.

Royal Axminster carpets are made by a peculiar process of weaving and tufting on a loom made specially for the purpose. A number of little funnels carrying from spools threads of the different colours of

Digitized by Google

yarn required for the pattern are fixed on the loom above the reed, and these threads, by suitable mechanism, are brought down and bound into the backing cloth by the weft. These threads, which form the pile, are cut off, and afterwards the surface of the carpet is shorn level.

The texture of Moquette carpets is shown in section in Fig. 192, two varieties of texture being given, one at A, the other at B. In both these textures the pattern shows through on the back of the cloth.

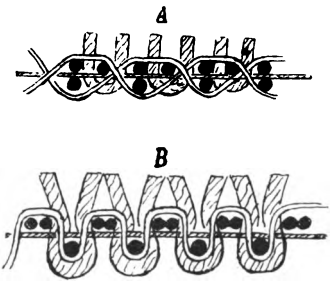


FIG. 192

Another variety is given in Fig. 193. A is the section through the weft, B the texture, C D E F shows the interlacing of each of the four warp threads in the pattern with the weft, and G shows the pile. Similar numbers in these figures represent the same threads in the cloth.

Patent Axminster Carpets.—These were invented by Mr. Jas.

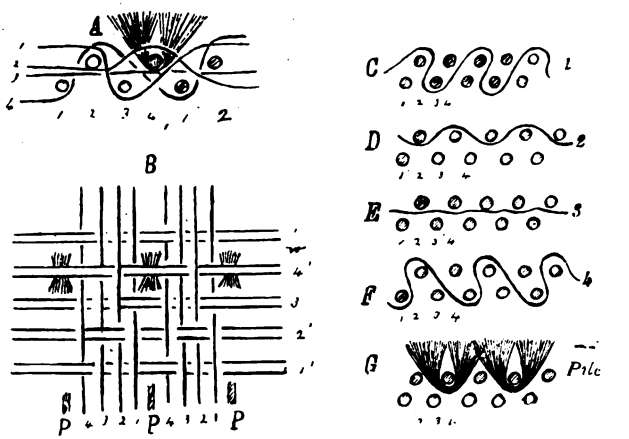


FIG. 193

Templeton, of Glasgow, about 1839, and are a description of chenille weaving. They do not require to be wrought by a jacquard any more than the other Axminster carpets, but as the figures formed on them are so similar to those produced by the jacquard, and as the method

Digitized by Google

of designing the patterns is the same for both them and other classes of chenille as it is for jacquard work, it may not be considered out of place to give a full description of chenille here.

Chenille is made by a double process of weaving. First the weft or chenille thread is woven, if for a figured pattern in various colours, which corresponds to the printing of the warp in tapestry carpet weaving, which gives a warp figure, whereas chenille gives a weft figure. When the weft is woven in a piece it is cut up into strips and twisted, if for curtains or any fabric on which the chenille weft is to show on both sides; but for carpets, where all the pile is raised to one side, the weft is doubled up, bringing all the pile in one direction. Twisting machines are now in use for making the weft for plain chenille fabrics, but for figured ones it is still woven. If twisted for figured work it would afterwards have to be printed somewhat similar to tapestry carpet warps, but without elongating the pattern, and the uneven surface is a difficulty in the way.

The method of weaving chenille weft is as follows:—A loom fixed for working gauze is supplied with a thinly laid warp, which, according to the class of chenille required, is drawn through the heddles either as plain gauze, two threads working plain with one crossing them, or this doubled, as is shown in Fig. 194. The two, three, or six threads of the draft are drawn into one split of the reed, which is finer or coarser to suit the fabric required. For shawls or curtains there would be six to eight full splits of the reed per inch; say in a reed of thirty to forty splits per inch, four splits empty to one full. For carpets there would be two or three full splits per inch; say in a reed of ten to fifteen splits per inch, four empty and one full, coarser or finer to suit the length of pile required.

For plain work this is tied up and woven as gauze, the warp being cotton of a dark colour, and the weft woollen, noil silk, or other fibre if desired; but it should consist of several ends and be of such a nature as will divide easily to form a rich pile. If for figured work, the pattern must be woven in stripes across the piece, which will be explained after the designing.

When the piece is woven it will be as shown at A, B, or C (Fig. 194)

Digitized by Google

and must next be cut into strips midway between the ribs. Sometimes this is done in the loom as the cloth is being woven, by having cutting knives arranged to divide it as it passes over the breast beam; but it is usually taken off in the piece and cut afterwards in a machine for the purpose. The piece is fed through rollers in the cutting machine over a grooved roller, shown at B (Fig. 195), the grooves being at such a distance apart that the ribs of the piece will fall into them. Above this roller is a set of cutting blades fixed in a spiral form round a roller; one of these blades is shown at A (Fig. 195), with a section of the roller. The blades are set at such a distance apart that when revolving they fall into the cuts in the roller B, and running at a high speed they sever the piece into strips as it passes through the machine.

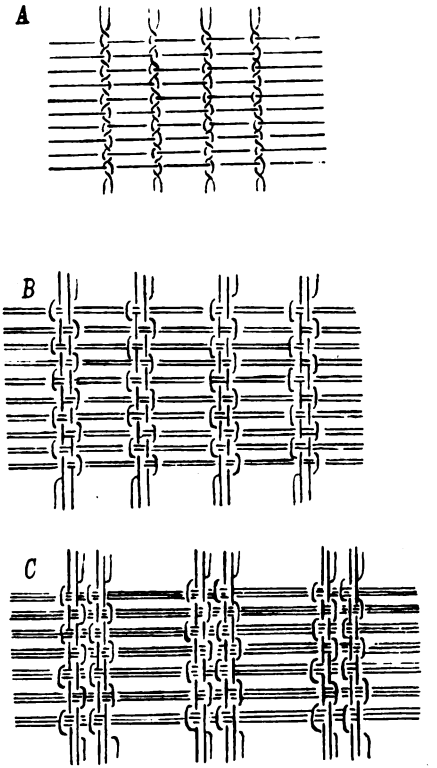


FIG. 194

So far the process is alike for all classes of chenille work. The weft is now in strips similar to that shown at A (Fig. 196) if for carpets, and much smaller if for curtains or shawls. For ordinary chenille the weft is next twisted so as to make the projecting fibres stand out round the rib or core, and when finished it has the appearance shown at B (Fig. 196). If for carpets, the fibres are turned up so that all will project in one direction, as shown at C and in the cross-section at *d*. This is done by running the strips over a grooved roller, as C (Fig. 195), which is heated with steam, and as the projecting ends

Digitized by Google

are doubled up by the grooves in the roller the heat sets them in this position. The weft is now prepared, and is wound on bobbins and woven in large shuttles.

The texture for chenille is the same as for plain cloth. A fine black warp of cotton is used, with twenty to twenty-five threads per inch (more or less, to suit the fabric required), and twelve to sixteen shots per inch of the chenille weft are used, which must also be varied to suit circumstances and the thickness of the weft used. The fibres or

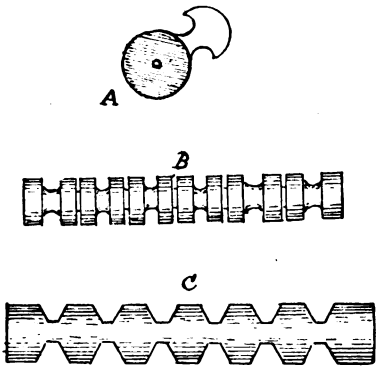


FIG. 195

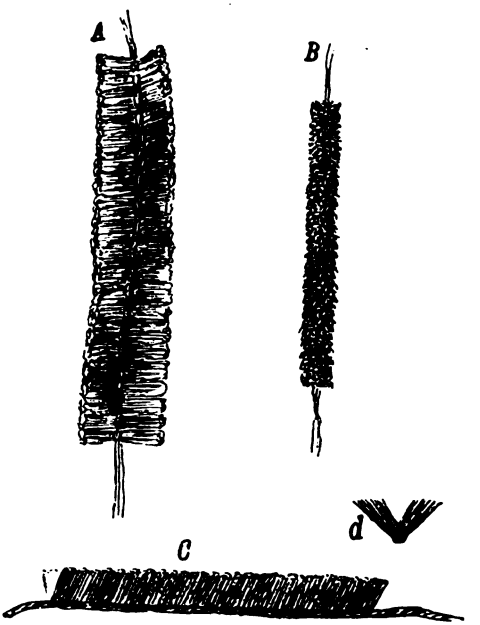


FIG. 196

points of the thread of weft project through the warp, and a pile fabric is produced which should entirely conceal the warp on both sides of the cloth. For carpets the pile is, as a rule, only allowed to project on one side, though some rugs are made with a twisted chenille weft, and the colours on it are shown partly through the backing as the fibres of the thread get mixed up with the ground or backing in weaving, but usually all the pile projects through to the face.

The texture for patent Axminster carpets is shown at A (Fig. 197),

Digitized by Google

and sections of the cloth through the weft are shown at B and C in the same figure. B is a section of the texture A with two picks between the pile or chenille picks, and C is for a coarser description of work with four ground picks between the pile picks. In A only the ground texture is given complete ; the pile weft P lies over the picks *f f*, and is bound down by a fine black stitching thread C, which passes over it

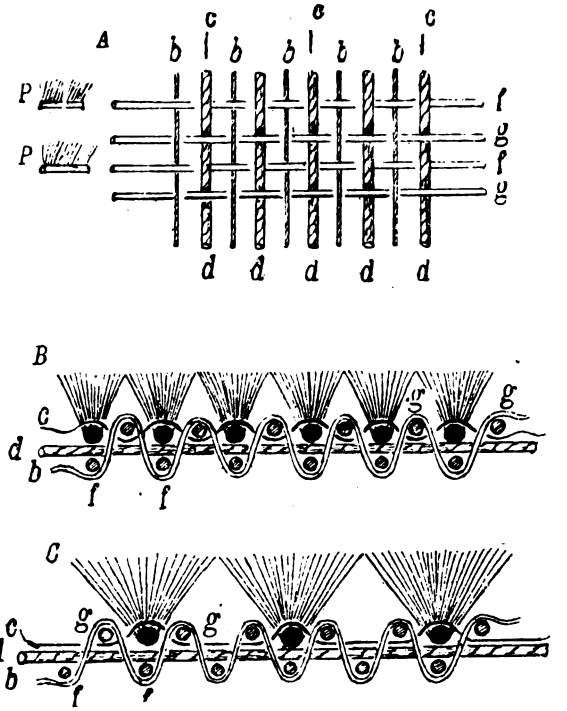


FIG. 197

and under the picks *g g*. The different thicknesses of the threads are represented in the drawing : C are cotton, and the others hemp, flax, or jute. There are about ten thick and ten fine warp threads per inch, and five binding threads, and about seven chenille picks per inch, with two ground picks between these. When there are four ground picks between the pile picks the pile is coarse, and only about four picks per inch are used. The chenille weft is wound on large wooden needles

Digitized by Google

like huge netting needles, about 4 ft. long, so that it may come off without any twist in it, and the weaver pushes these through the shed, laying the weft nicely in and combing it forward so as to get it straight and even and have all the pile standing upright; he then knocks in two ground picks and puts in another pile thread, as before.

This is all hand-loom work, but power looms are sometimes used for the purpose. The ground of the fabric can be woven with heddles, as before, but the binding warp threads are through needles, somewhat like gauze dents inverted, and not through the heddles; and the beam or spools containing them is above the loom in front. The chenille weft is wound on a reel, and is through a guide or carrier. When the chenille weft is to be laid in, the needles carrying the binders are raised and the guide passed along, laying in the weft. The loom stands stationary for a short time to give the weaver time to comb up the pile, and then moves on and throws in the ground picks. Everything is done automatically but the combing up of the pile.

The foregoing is a description of chenille weaving provided no pattern has to be attended to; we must now consider the pattern.

The design paper used is the same as for ordinary work, with a greater number of warp than weft threads, but it is ruled on a large scale so that the pattern will be exactly cloth size. Fig. 198 is a sample of this design-paper for seven picks per inch. The small checks, or what in ordinary weaving would represent the warp threads, have here no reference to them, nor do the warp threads require any consideration when preparing the pattern. The narrow way of the checks is a guide to the weaving of the weft threads. This paper might have been square, seven by seven, and would thus suit for such a pattern as is shown in Fig. 199—supposing seven shots of chenille weft per inch to be correct; but there is an advantage in many cases to have it as it is, or even more off the square, say seven by twenty, which is one of the papers used. This will be most readily understood by following the working out of the pattern.

The pattern given (Fig. 199) is necessarily very simple for want of space. The different markings on the squares are to indicate different colours. Here nine are used, but there may be any number

Digitized by Google

—say from eight to twenty—the only restriction on the number of colours employed is that so many shades of yarn are required to match them, and that the weaver has a greater number of shuttles to pass over when weaving the weft. When the pattern is painted it is cut crossways into strips, as A, B, two rows of checks in each strip; one row of checks may be in each strip if desired; but this is unnecessary, and besides, they are more easily torn. These strips are a guide to the weaving of the weft, just in the same way as the pattern in tapestry carpet work is a guide to the printer.

The weaver takes a strip of the pattern and puts it through a widened

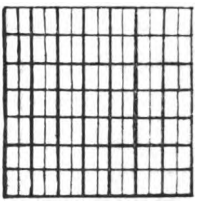


FIG. 198

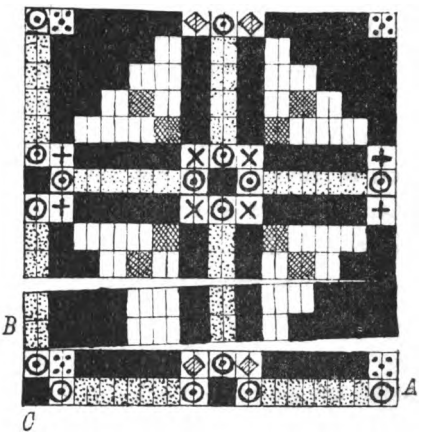


FIG. 199

split in the reed and pins one end of it to the cloth; to the other end he attaches a cord and light weight, which he hangs over the back rail of the loom so that the strip of design will be held steady and move forward as the cloth is drawn up. The strip must be pinned to the cloth so that the first check of the design projects over the fell of the cloth. Suppose the strip to be A, Fig. 199: C is the first check; the weaver sees that this is black, and proceeds to weave the gauze with black weft for the length of this check (one-seventh of an inch). The next check, moving along the strip in the loom, or from left to right on the design, is a different colour, say scarlet; the weaver changes his shuttle and weaves as many checks as there are of this colour, which

Digitized by Google

in this case is only one. Another change of shuttle is made, and so on till the end of the strip is reached; it is then turned, the other end of it being brought to the fell of the cloth, and the checks on the second line of the design are woven in order as before, only they must run from right to left on the design instead of from left to right, as the first line did, which will be caused by the turning of the strip of paper; for it must be borne in mind that if the first shot of chenille weft is put into the carpet from left to right, the next one will be put in from the reverse side or from right to left, so that all the odd numbers of lines on the design-paper should be begun by the weft weaver at the left-hand side, and all the even numbers at the right-hand side, provided the weaver works in this way; in any case one must be the reverse of the other. When all the strips of the pattern are woven, each rib of the piece of weft will be long enough to weave as many shots as are in one repeat of the pattern, and if there be 40 ribs in the piece, it would, when cut up, furnish weft for 40 repeats of the pattern. For weaving this weft large needles are used, somewhat similar to netting needles, which are about 4 ft. long for wide looms; the chenille is wound on these, free from twist, and must be put on so that it will come off correctly to suit the pattern. The strips of chenille are marked to show which end is to be put on the needle first. These needles are pushed through the shed by the weaver when weaving the carpet—put in at one side and drawn out at the other. He lays in the weft as correctly as possible, combing it up to the fell of the cloth, and makes the colours fall in nicely together, drawing it tighter or leaving it slacker as is necessary. Now the advantage of using the special design-paper will be more readily understood. It is plain that if 14 by 7 design-paper be used, instead of 7 by 7, any of the colours may be changed in $\frac{1}{14}$ in. on the design; and also in the chenille weaving, when it is desirable to do so, instead of in each $\frac{1}{7}$ in. when 7 by 7 paper is used. And if 20 by 7 paper were used, the changes might be still more frequent; besides, in flowing patterns the advantage also comes in to assist in getting the forms more correct, in the same way as paper over square in either warp or weft assists in getting the form of the figure in damask designing over that where only the coarser way of the paper

Digitized by Google

square is used; though the effect is not by any means so satisfactory as if the paper were finer both ways, and square. Yet when one way is fixed by circumstances it is in many cases preferable to alter it in the other way than to leave both alike coarse; but not always so, as, for example, the pattern given in Fig. 199. When these carpets are woven they are passed through a shearing machine, which makes the surface of the pile quite level. They are rich handsome carpets, as well as very durable.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XI

LAPPETS AND SWIVELS

Lappet and Swivel Weaving.—The only classes of figured weaving of any importance not already mentioned are lappet and swivel work, both of which are very limited, but produce good effects. With lappets, figures can be put on light fabrics without requiring any cutting off of the surplus yarn. It is principally in the muslin trade that they are used, for figuring Indian fabrics with gay colours. The principal seat of the manufacture in this country is about Glasgow. The figure is formed by an extra warp drawn through one or more frames of gauzing needles set in the lay in front of the reed, which can be moved to either side as desired. The pattern is cut on a large wooden wheel or disc, in the face of which a groove is cut to form the pattern, and a traveller working in this groove, and connected with the needle frame, slides the needles to either side and stitches the figuring warp into the cloth, the needles rising and falling as the cloth is being woven. The figure is rather loose and only suited for simple effects. A description of the process of working can be found in Murphy's or Gilroy's works on weaving, and is interesting, though rather out of date. Swivel work is of a much better class, though not so suitable for getting small figures, as spots short distances apart. But it gives a much better bound figure —in fact, it may be bound in any way—and is very suitable when a few are required on the fabric, such as crests, or any figures in the corners or centres of handkerchiefs, napkins, etc. These are weft figures and usually of a different colour to the ground of the fabric, which may be either plain or figured. These figures could be formed with an ordinary box loom, cutting off the loose weft or binding it up to the ground cloth;

Digitized by Google

but the latter is useless for light fabrics, and the former leaves the figure unbound round the edges. If the figure is large enough it can be made in an ordinary check or pick-and-pick loom, and bound as with swivels. The swivels are small shuttles similar to those used for weaving silk book-markers and such like fabrics, and are usually attached to the hand rail of the lay of the loom. The swivel attachment is fixed so that when a shed is opened the shuttle falls to pass through it, or a second high shed may be opened for the swivel shuttle. The shuttle is driven by means of a rack and pinion, the former being in the shuttle, and the pinions fixed to revolve in the frame. When the pinions are revolved the shuttle is drawn across. The breadth of the figures must be considerably less than the length of the shuttle, so that for large-sized figures this method of working is not suited.

CONCLUSION

Since the foregoing was written up to the present time (Sept. 1894) nothing new worth describing has made its appearance. A few card lacing machines have been brought out and several patents have appeared in print, but most of these disappear shortly after.

No mention has been made in this work of Count Sparres' patent card-cutting machine, which was to have done away with the necessity of putting patterns on point paper by cutting the cards direct from the sketch embossed on a metallic plate. This was a highly ingenious machine, and under suitable conditions produced very fair work, but so far it has proved rather expensive to the company that took it up.

Another process to obtain similar results, patented by Messrs. Dawson and Adams of Macclesfield, was described in the 'Textile Manufacturer' in 1893. In this process a perforated plate is filled with small pins; a piece of strong paper is laid over this, and over the paper another plate. The pattern is formed by pushing the pins through the paper between the plates. A large portion of this work can be done by mechanical means. When all the pins required for the pattern are pressed through the paper, the top plate with the sheet of paper is turned upside down, the pins sticking in the paper. By run-

Digitized by Google

ning a roller over the paper the pins can be pressed out of it and into the plate. This plate is then put into a reading and punching machine, and by suitable mechanism the pins can be brought to act on either a card-punching apparatus or on the harness of a pattern loom; so the manufacturer can have a sample of the cloth woven without any cards and can have the cards cut for the factory loom afterwards if he requires them. The cards can be punched at the rate of 2000 per hour.

By means of a pattern cut out of a plate of wax, and a reading in machine, the filling of the pins into the plate, or the hand reading as it is called, can be dispensed with.

It has since been stated that this firm are now trying to perfect a process which was tried thirty years ago, viz. to paint the pattern with electric paint which is to act on needles charged with electricity.

These are all highly ingenious inventions, and are interesting to those who do not lose too much by them; but it will require a nice machine to produce all the variations in a pattern that an experienced designer can, though in many patterns this could be dispensed with, and suitable mechanical means may yet be devised to take a share of the work.

Digitized by Google

INDEX

Axminster carpets, 266, 288

Barrel or cylinder loom, 17
Beeting a harness, 89
Bessbrook machine, 185
Border design, 97, 100, 115, 134
— mountings, 105
Bouchon's loom, 18
Brussels carpets, 276

Cards, 51, 147
Card cutting, 139
— — machines, 143
— — — (Count Sparres'), 299
— — — (French), 167
— frames, 47, 156
— lacing, 139
— — machines, 148
— repeating machines, 149
Carpets, 264
— chenille, 290
— Axminster, 266, 288
— Brussels, 276
— Indian, 265
— Ingrain, 269
— Kidderminster, 266
— patent Axminster, 289
— Persian, 265
— royal Axminster, 288
— Scotch, 266
— tapestry, 285
— Turkish, 265
— Wilton, 284
Centred tie, 97
Chenille, 290
Comb draw loom, 16
Comber boards, 82, 103
Cross-border jacquard, 155
Cross's counterpoise harness, 14
Cumber boards, 82, 103
Curtains and tapestries, 248
Cylinder motions (horizontal), 44
— (self-acting), 36
— (slide), 43, 57, 61
— (swing), 33, 56, 58
— to set a, 40, 43

Designing and draughting, 110
— hints on, 120
Design paper, 112
— to prepare a, 115
Designs, 94, 97, 100
— for dress goods, 122
— for gathered borders, 97
— for single borders, 100
— (repeating), 94, 122
— (texture), 124
Double cloth, 233
— — jacquard, 241
— warp faced cloth, 237
— weft faced cloth, 235
Draughting a pattern, 115
Draw loom, 3
— — French, 24
Drawing in a warp, 99

Falcon's loom, 19
French card, 51
— — cutting machine, 167
— draw loom, 24
— jacquard, 49
Full harness, 69
— — mountings, 69

Gathered tie, 97
Gauze, 196
— to design a pattern, 215
— harness (hand-loom), 203
— — (power-loom), 205

Digitized by Google

Gauze, jacquard, 214, 223
— patterns, 197, 198, 217
— reed, 225
Griffes, 37, 52

Hair-line patterns, 129
Half-harness, 69, 169
Harness, drawing warp into, 99
— illustrations of, 96, 98, 102, 191
— to prepare a, 71
— to tie up a, 87
— (double cloth), 233
— (full), 69
— (gauze), 203, 205
— (half), 69, 169
— (muslin), 169
— (pressure), 70, 174
— (quilting), 233
— reeds, 82
— (split), 62, 172
— twine, 75
Hecks, 77
Hole board, 83
Hooks for jacquard, 38, 39, 52, 59
— in double-acting jacquard, 55, 59

Indian carpets, 265
Ingrain carpets, 269
Introduction, 1

Jacquard's machine, 23
Jacquard machines, 27
— (cross-border), 155
— (double-acting), 52
— (double cloth), 241
— (double-acting with two cylinders), 58
— (French), 49
— (gauze), 214
— (Karl Wein), 192
— (leno), 214
— (open-shed), 161
— (quilting), 241
— (twilling), 185
— (Verdôl), 163
— cards, 59
— cylinder, to set a, 40, 43
— hooks, 38, 39, 52, 59
— interior of, 38
— needles, 38, 39, 52, 59
— shedding, 60, 62
— stop motion, 64
— to set a, 43, 46, 76

Karl Wein jacquard, 192
Kidderminster carpet, 266

Lacing cards, 139
— machine, 148
— twine, 147
Lappet weaving, 298
Lashing a pattern, 9
Leno jacquard, 214
Letters, mottoes, &c., 136
Levelling frames, 85
— the mails, 86
Lingoes, 72, 74
London tie, 96

Marking off a cumber board, 103
Marseilles quilt, 246
Matelasses, 246
Mottoes and letters, 136
Mountings, 69
Muslin harness, 169

Neck of harness, 79
Needles, 38
Norwich tie, 95

Open-shed jacquard, 161

Paints for patterns, 116
Parrot machine, 11
Patent Axminster carpet, 289
Pattern, to draught a, 115
Patterns (carpet), 280, 282–3
— (gauze), 197, 217
— (hair-line), 129
— (spot), 130
— (texture), 124
Persian carpets, 265
Piano machine, 145
Pile work, 259
Point paper, 112
Poplins, 252
Pressure harness, 174

Quilting, 247
Quilting harness, 233

Reading a pattern, 9
Repeat of a pattern, 94
Repeating machines, 149
Reversing motions, 45
Royal Axminster carpets, 287

Scotch carpets, 266
Set of harness (to vary), 106

Digitized by Google

Setting a jacquard, 43, 46, 76
Shading floral forms, 118
Shedding of jacquards, 62
Simple (draw loom), 3
Slabstock, 85
Sleepers, 73
Slips (comber board), 83
Split harness, 172
Spot patterns, 131
Spring box, 42
Stop motion, 64
Suggestions on design, 120
Swivel weaving, 298

Tail cords, 54
Tapestry (real), 255
— carpets, 285
— curtains, 248
Terry pile, 260
Texture patterns, 124
Tie of a harness, 93
Trap board, 15
Turkey carpets, 265
Turkish towels, 260
Twilling designs, 117, 133
— jacquards, 185
Twills for damask, 181
Tying up a harness, 87

Varnishing a harness, 92
Varying the set of a harness, 106
Vaucanson's loom, 22
Verdôl jacquard, 49, 163

Wilton carpets, 284
Wiring cards, 153
Woollens and worsteds, 248

PRINTED BY
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE
LONDON

Digitized by Google

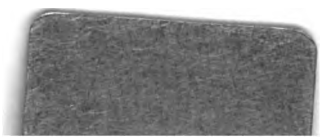
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

3 2044 019 832 401

HARVARD COLLEGE
CONSERVED
JAN, 2004
LIBRARY



Digitized by Google